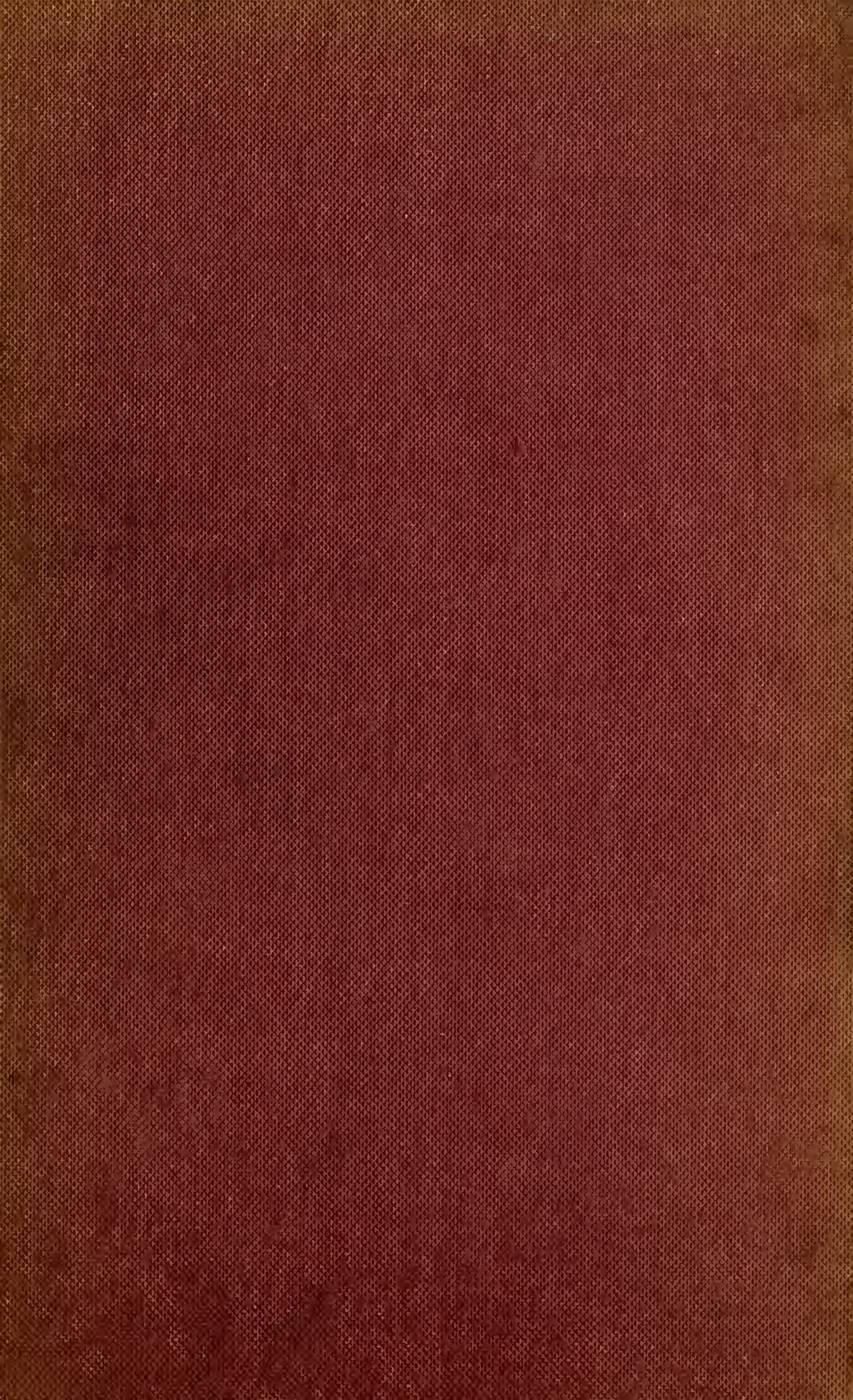



The Institute of Mediaeval Studies
LIBRARY
Toronto

Library of Old Authors.



La Mort d'Arthure.

THE

HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR

AND OF THE KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.

COMPILED BY SIR THOMAS MALORY, KNT.

EDITED FROM THE TEXT OF THE EDITION OF 1634,

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY THOMAS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A., F.S.A.,

HON. M.R.S.L. ETC. CORRESPONDING MEMBER

OF THE INSTITUTE OF FRANCE.

VOL. II.



LONDON:

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,

SOHO SQUARE.

1858.





CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.



HISTORIE OF KING ARTHUR

AND HIS NOBLE KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.

CHAP. I.—How sir Tristram de Lyones was borne, and how his mother dyed at his birth, wherefore shee desired that his name should be Tristram.

HERE was a knight[1] that hight Meliodas,[2] and he was lord and king of the countrey of Lyones,[3] and this king Meliodas was as likely a man as any was at that time living. And by fortune hee wedded king Markes sister of Cornewaile, whose name was Elizabeth, and shee was a right faire lady and a good. And at that time king Arthur raigned, and hee was all whole king of England, Wales, and Ireland,[4] and also of Scotland, and of many other

[1] *A knight.—A kyng*, Caxton.

[2] *Meliodas.*—Meliadus of Léonnois, the father of sir Tristram, was the subject of a separate romance, written in French by a rather celebrated medieval writer, Rusticien de Pise, a more modern French compilation from which was printed at Paris in 1528.

[3] *Lyones.*—The native country of Tristram was evidently the Léonnois in Britany, though some have imagined it to have been a district of Cornwall so named, which is said to be now buried under the sea. Marie de France, in the Lai de Chèvre-feuille, makes him a native of South Wales,

En Suht-Wales ù il fu nez.

[4] *Ireland.*—Caxton's text omits Ireland.

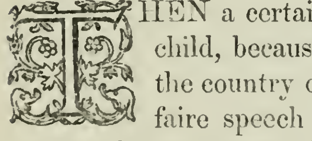
realmes; how bee it there were many kings that were lords of many countries, but all they held their lands of king Arthur. For in Wales were two kings, and in the north were many kings, and in Cornewaile and in the west were two kings; also in Ireland were two or three kings; and all were under the obeysance of king Arthur, and so was the king of France and the king of Britaine,[1] and all the lordships unto Rome. So when this king Meliodas had beene a certaine time with his wife, within a while shee waxed great with child, and shee was a full meeke lady, and well shee loved her lord, and he her againe, so there was great joy betweene them. Then was there a lady in that countrey that had loved king Meliodas long and by no manner of meanes shee could never get his love; therefore upon a day she let ordaine for him as hee rode on hunting, for hee was a great hunter, and there by enchauntment shee made him chace an hart by himselfe alone till that he came to an old castle, and there anon he was taken prisoner by the lady that loved him. When Elizabeth, king Meliodas wife, missed her lord, she was nigh out of her wit, and, great with child as shee was, shee tooke a gentlewoman with her and ranne straight unto the forrest for to seeke her lord and husband. And when shee was farre within the forrest, she might goe no farther, for she began fast to travaile of her child, and shee had many grimly throwes, and her gentlewoman holpe her all that she might. And so by miracles of our Lady of Heaven shee was delivered with great paines, but shee had taken such cold for default of helpe, that the deepe draughts of death tooke her, that needs shee must die and depart out of this world, none other boote[2] there was. And when this queene Elizabeth saw there was none other boote, then she made great moone and sorrow, and said unto her gentlewoman: "When yee see my lord king Meliodas, recommend me unto him, and tell him what paines I endure for his love, and how I must die heere for

[1] *Britaine.*—i. e. Britany. [2] *Boote.*—Remedy; help.

his sake, and for default of good helpe, and let him wit that I am full sorry to depart out of this world from him, therefore pray him to bee good friend unto my soule.

"Now let mee see, I pray you, my little child for whom I have had all this sorrow." And when shee saw him, thus shee said, "Ah, my little sonne, thou hast murthered thy mother, and therefore I suppose thou that art a murtherer so young, thou art full likely to bee a manly man in thine age. And because I shall die of the birth of thee, I charge thee, gentlewoman, that thou beseech my lord king Meliodas, that when my son shall be christened let him be named Tristram, that is as much to say as sorrowfull birth."[1] And therewithall this queene Elizabeth gave up her ghost, and died in the same place. Then the gentlewoman laid her under the shadow of a great tree, and then shee lapped the child as well as she might for cold. Right so forth withall there came the barons following after the queene, and when they saw that the queene was dead, and understood none other but that the king was destroyed;

CHAP. II.—How the step-mother of sir Tristram had ordained poyson for to have poysoned young Tristram.



THEN a certaine of them would have slaine the child, because they would have beene lords of the country of Lyones. But then through the faire speech of the gentlewoman, and by the meanes that she made, the most part of the great barons and lords would not assent thereto, and then they let cary home the dead queene, and great mone was made for her. The meane while Merlin delivered king Meliodas out of prison, on the morrow after his queene was dead. And

[1] *As sorrowfull birth.*—The circumstances of the birth of Tristram, and the origin of his name, are nearly the same in all the versions of the romance. According to the French prose romance, which calls the queen Isabella, she was accompanied into the wood not by a gentlewoman, but by her esquire, Gouvernail, who assisted in her delivery.

so when the king was come home, the most part of his barons made great joy; but the sorrow that the king made for his queene no tongue can tell it. So then the king let bury her full richly. And after hee let the child be christened as his wife had commanded afore her death. And then he let call him Tristram, the sorrowfull borne child. Then the king Meliodas endured seaven yeares without a wife, and all this time the young Tristram was well nourished. Then it befell upon a time that king Meliodas wedded king Howels daughter of Britaine, and anon shee had children of king Meliodas, then was shee heavie and wroth that her children should not rejoyce[1] the countrey of Lyones, wherefore this queene ordained for to poyson young Tristram. So she let poyson to be put into a peece of silver in the chamber where as Tristram and her children were together, to the entent that when Tristram were thirstie he should drinke that drinke. And so it befell upon a day that the queenes son as he was in that chamber espied the peece with poyson, and hee wend it had beene good drinke, and because the child was thirstie he tooke the peece with poyson and dranke fiercely,[2] and therewith sodainly the child brast and died. When the queene wist of the death of her sonne, wit yee well shee was passing heavie. But yet the king Meliodas understood nothing of her treason. Notwithstanding the queene would not leave this, but efte shee ordained more poyson and put it in a peece.[3] And by fortune the king Meliodas her husband found the peece with the wine where as the poyson was in, and hee that was most thirstie tooke the peece for to drinke thereof, and as hee would have drunken thereof, the queene espied him, and then she ranne unto him and pulled the peece from him sodainly. The king mervailed why she did so, and remembred him how her sonne was sodainly slaine with poyson. And then hee tooke her by the hand and thus said to her:

[1] *Rejoice.*—Used here as an active verb, in the sense of to enjoy.
[2] *Fiercely.*—Caxton, *frely.* [3] *Peece.*—An old name for a cup.

"Thou false traitresse, thou shalt tell me what manner of drinke this is or else I shall sley thee." And therewith he pulled out his sword, and swore a great oath that he would sley her but if she told him truth. "Ah! mercy, my lord," said she, "and I shall tell you all." And then shee told him why that shee would have slaine Tristram, because her children should rejoyce the land. "Well," said king Meliodas, "therefore shall yee have the law." And so shee was damned[1] by the assent of the barons to be burnt; and then there was made a great fire, and right as shee was at the fire for to take her execution, young Tristram kneeled down before king Meliodas, his father, and besought him to give him a boone. "I will well," said the king. Then said young Tristram, "Give me the life of your queene, my step-mother." "That is unrightfully asked," said his father king Meliodas, "for she would have slaine thee with that poyson and shee might have had her wil, and for thy sake most is my cause that she should die." "Sir," said Tristram, "as for that I beseech you of your mercy that ye wil forgive it her, and as for my part, God forgive it her, and I doe, and so much it liketh your highnesse to grant me my boone, for Gods love I pray you hold your promise." "Sith it is so," said the king, "I will that yee have her life and give her to you, and goe ye to the fire and take her, and doe with her what yee will." So young Tristram went to the fire, and by the command of the king delivered her from the death. But after that king Meliodas would never have to doe with her as at bed and at board. But by the good meanes of young Tristram hee made the king and her accord. But then the king would not suffer young Tristram his sonne to abide no longer in his court.

[1] *Damned.*—Condemned to death.

CHAP. III.—How young Tristram was sent into France, and had one to governe him named Governale, and how hee learned to harpe, hawke, and hunt.

AND then he let ordaine a gentleman that was wel learned and taught, his name was Governale,[1] and then hee sent his sonne Tristram with Governale into France to learne the language, and nurture, and deeds of armes; and there was Tristram more then seaven yeares, and then when hee could well speake the language, and had learned all that hee might learne in that countrey, then he came home againe to his father king Meliodas, and so Tristram learned to be an harper passing all other, that there was none such called in no countrey. And so in harping and on instruments of musike hee applied him in his youth for to learne, and after as hee growed in his might and strength, he laboured ever in hunting and hawking, so that we never read of no gentleman more that so used himselfe therein. And as the booke saith, hee began good measures of blowing of blasts of venery and of chase, and of all manner of vermeins, and all these termes have we yet of hawking and hunting. And therefore the booke of venery of hawking and hunting is called the booke of sir Tristram.[2] Wherefore as me seemeth all gentlemen that beare old armes, of right they ought to honour sir Tristram for the goodly termes that gentlemen have and use, and shall unto the worlds end, that thereby in a manner all men of worship may dissever a gentleman from a yeoman and a yeoman from a villaine.[3] For he that

[1] *Governale.*—This individual, who is called in the French romance Gouvernail, is there said to have been an esquire of the queen of Léonnois before Tristram's birth.

[2] *Booke of sir Tristram.*—There was a book of authority in hunting which went under the name of Tristram, but it does not appear to have had really any connection with the name of the hero of our romance. The well-known Boke of St. Albans is supposed to represent this "booke of sir Tristram."

[3] *Villaine.*—A peasant; a person of ungentle birth.

is of gentle blood will draw him unto gentle tatches,[1] and to follow the custome of noble gentlemen. Thus young Tristram continued in Cornewaile untill he was big and strong of the age of nineteene yeares, and then king Meliodas his father had great joy of Tristram his son, and so had the queen his wife, for ever after al her life, beecause Tristram saved her from the fire, shee never hated him more after, but loved him ever after, and gave him many great gifts, and every estate loved him wheresoever he went.

CHAP. IV.—How sir Marhaus came out of Ireland for to aske truage of Cornewaile, or else he would fight therefore.

THEN it befell that king Anguish of Ireland sent to king Marke of Cornewaile for his truage, which Cornewaile had payed many winters afore time, and all that time king Marke was behind of the truage for seven yeares. And king Marke and his barons gave unto the messenger of Ireland this answere, and said that they would none pay, and bad the messenger goe unto his king Anguish and tell him "that we wil pay him no truage; but tell your lord, and hee will alwayes have truage of us of Cornewaile, bid him send a trustie knight of his land that wil fight for his right, and we shall finde an other to defend our right." With this answere the messenger departed into Ireland. And when king Anguish understood the answere of the messenger, he was wonderous wroth; and then he called unto him sir Marhaus[2] the good knight that was noblie proved, and a knight of the round table. And this sir Marhaus was brother unto the

[1] *Tatches.*—See before, vol. i. p. 61.

[2] *Sir Marhaus.*—We have already had some anecdotes of this personage in the first part of this work (see vol. i. pp. 144—148, 158—163). He is very celebrated in this cycle of romance, under the variations in his name of Marhaus (as here) or Morhaus, Moraunt (as in the English metrical romance of sir Tristrem), Morholf, &c.

queene of Ireland. Then the king said thus unto him: "Faire brother sir Marhaus, I pray you goe into Cornewaile for my sake, and doe battaile for our truage that wee of right ought to have, and whatsoever yee spend yee shall have sufficiently more then yee shall neede." "Sir," said sir Marhaus, "wit yee well that I shall not be loath to doe battaile in the right of you and your land with the best knight of the round table, for I know them for the most part what their deeds bee, and for to advance my deeds and to encrease my worship, I wil right gladly goe to this journey for our right." So in all the hast there was made purveiance for sir Marhaus, and he had all things that to him needed, and so hee departed out of Ireland and arrived up in Cornewaile even fast by the castle of Tintagill. And so when king Marke understood that there was arrived for to fight for Ireland the noble knight sir Marhaus, then made hee great moane and sorrow, for he knew no knight that durst have to doe with him. For at that season sir Marhaus was called one of the famoust and the most renowned knights of the world.

And thus sir Marhaus abode still in his ship on the sea, and every day he sent unto king Marke for to pay the truage which was behind of seven yeare, or else to find a knight to fight with him for the truage. This manner of message sir Marhaus sent daily unto king Marke. Then they of Cornewaile let make many cries in every place, that what knight would fight for to save the truage of Cornewaile, hee should so be rewarded, that hee should fare the better as long as he lived. Then some of the barons of Cornewaile said unto king Marke, and counsailed him to send unto the court of king Arthur for to seeke sir Lancelot du Lake, which was at that time called the marvailous knight of the world. Then there were some other barons that counsailed the king not to doe so, and said that it were labour lost and in vaine, because sir Marhaus was a knight of the round table, therfore any of them will be loth to have adoe with other, but if it were any knight at his owne re-

quest would fight disguised and unknowen. So the king and all his barons assented that it was no boote to seeke a knight of the round table. The meane while came the language and the noyse unto king Meliodas, how sir Marhaus abode battaile fast by the castle of Tintagill, and how king Marke could find no manner of knight to fight with him. When young Tristram heard this hee was wroth and sore ashamed, that there durst no knight in Cornewaile have to doe with sir Marhaus of Ireland.

CHAP. V.—How sir Tristram enterprised the battaile to fight for the truage of Cornewaile, and how and of whom he was made knight.

THEREWITH sir Tristram went unto his father king Meliodas, and asked him counsaile what was best to doe for to recover the countrie of Cornewaile for truage, "For as me seemeth," said sir Tristram, "it were shame that sir Marhaus, the queens brother of Ireland, should goe away, unlesse that he were not fought withall." "As for that," said king Meliodas, "wit ye wel, my sonne Tristram, that sir Marhaus is called one of the best knights of the world, and knight of the round table, and therefore I know no knight in this countrie that is able to match with him." "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "that I am not made knight, and if sir Marhaus should thus depart into Ireland, God let mee never have worship, and I were made knight I should match him; and sir," said sir Tristram, "I pray you to give me leave to ride unto mine uncle king Mark, and so yee be not displeased, of king Marke will I bee made knight." "I will well," said king Meliodas, "that yee be ruled as your courage will rule you." And then sir Tristram thanked his father much, and so made him ready to ride into Cornewaile. And in the meane while there came a messenger with letters of love from the daughter of king Faramon[1] of

[1] *King Faramon.*—Faramond, the fabulous head of the line of the kings of France, is introduced here very clumsily. He also acts an important part in the romance of Meliadus.

Fraunce unto sir Tristram, which were full pittious letters, and in the letters were written many complaints of love. But sir Tristram had no joy of her letters, nor regard unto her. Also shee sent him a little bratchet that was passing faire. But when the daughter of the king of Fraunce understood that Tristram would not love her, shee died for pure sorrow. And then the same squire that brought the letters and the bratchet came againe to sir Tristram, as yee shall heare after in the historie. So this young Tristram rode[1] unto his uncle king Marke of Cornewaile, and when he came there he heard say, that there should no knight fight with sir Marhaus. And so Tristram went unto his uncle and said, "Sir, if yee will give mee the order of knighthood, I shall doe battaile to the uttermost with sir Marhaus of Ireland." "What are yee?" said the king, "and from whence come yee?" "Sir," said Tristram, "I come from king Meliodas that wedded your sister, and wit ye wel that I am a gentleman." King Marke beheld Tristram and saw that he was but a young man of age, but he was passing well made of body and big. "Faire sonne," said the king, "what is your name, and where are ye borne?" "Sir," said he, "my name is Tristram, and in the countrey of Liones was I borne." "Yee say well," said king Marke, "and yee will doe this battaile, I shall make you knight." "Therefore I come to you," said Tristram, "and for none other cause." And then king Marke made him knight. And forthwith when he had made him knight, he sent a messenger with letters unto sir Marhaus, which said thus, that hee had found a young knight ready to take the battaile unto the uttermost. "It may well be," said sir Marhaus, "but tell unto king Marke that I wil not fight with no knight, but if he be of the blood

[1] *Rode.*—All these repetitions of *ride* and *rode* would seem to intimate that the Léonnois was on the same land with Cornwall, and that either Mark's kingdom was Cornouaille in Britany, or that Léonnois was in England. But the geography and topography of our romance is not very comprehensible.

royall, that is to say, either a kings sonne or a queenes sonne borne, or else of a prince or a princesse."

When king Marke understood that, he sent for sir Tristram de Liones and told him what was the answere of sir Marhaus. And then sir Tristram said, "Sithence he sayeth so, let him know that I am come, both of fathers side and of mothers side, of as noble blood as he is. For now shall ye know that I am come of king Meliodas sonne, and borne of your owne sister dame Elizabeth, that died in the forrest in the birth of mee." "Oh, Jesus," said king Marke, "yee are right hartily welcome, faire nephew, unto mee." And then in all the hast the king let horse sir Tristram, and armed him in the best maner that might be had or goten for gold or silver. And then king Marke sent unto sir Marhaus, and did him to wit that a better borne man then hee was himselfe should fight with him, and that his name was sir Tristram de Liones, begotten of king Meliodas, and borne of king Markes sister." And then was sir Marhaus right glad and blith that he should fight with such a gentleman. And so by the assent of king Marke and sir Marhaus, they let ordaine that they should fight within an iland nigh sir Marhaus ships, and so was young sir Tristram put into a little vessell, both hee and his horse and all that unto him belonged, both for his body and for his horse, so that sir Tristram lacked no maner of thing. And when king Marke and his barons of Cornewaile beheld how young sir Tristram departed with such a cariage to fight for the right of Cornewaile, wit yee well there was neither man nor woman of worship but they wept for to see and understand so young a knight to jeopard himselfe for their right.

CHAP. VI.—How sir Tristram arrived into the iland for to furnish the battaile with sir Marhaus.

FOR to make short this tale, that when sir Tristram was arrived within the iland, then hee looked to the further side, and there he saw at an anker sixe ships nigh to the land, and under the shadow of the ships, upon the land, there hoved the noble knight sir Marhaus of Ireland. And then sir Tristram commanded his servant Governale for to bring his horse to the land, and dresse his harneis at all manner of rights. And when he had so done, hee mounted upon his horse. And when hee was in his saddell well apparelled, and his shield dressed upon his shoulder, sir Tristram asked Governale, "Where is this knight that I shall have to doe withall?" "Sir," said his servant Governaile, "see yee him not? I wend yee had seene him, yonder hee hoveth under the shadow of his ships upon horsebacke, and his speare in his hand, and his shield upon his shoulder." "It is truth," said sir Tristram, "now I see him well enough." And then hee commanded his servant Governale to goe againe unto his vessell, and commend him "unto mine uncle king Marke, and pray him that if I be slaine in this battaile, for to bury my body as him seemeth best, and as for me let him wit that I will never yeeld me for no cowardise, and if I be slaine and flee[1] not, then have they lost no truage for me. And if so be that I flee or yeeld me as recreaunt, bid mine uncle never bury me in christian burials. And upon thy life," said sir Tristram to Governaile, "come thou not nigh this iland till thou see me overcome or slaine, or else that I winne yonder knight." And so either departed from other weeping.

[1] *Flee.*—Corrected, in this and the next line, from Caxton; the text of 1634 has *slay*, an evident error.

CHAP. VII.—How sir Tristram fought against sir Marhaus and finished his battell, and how sir Marhaus fled to his ships.

AND then sir Marhaus perceived sir Tristram, and thus said unto him: "Young knight sir Tristram, what doest thou heere? me sore repenteth of thy courage, for wit thou wel I have beene assaied, and the best knights of this land hath beene assaied of my hands, and also I have matched with the best knights of the world, and therefore by my counsaile returne againe to thy ship." "Faire knight and well proved knight," said sir Tristram, "thou shalt well wit that I may not forsake thee in this quarrell, for I am for thy sake made knight, and thou shalt well wit that I am a kings sonne borne and begotten upon a queene, and such promise have I made at mine uncles request and mine owne seeking, that I shall fight with thee unto the uttermost, to deliver Cornewaile from the old truage. Also wit yee well, sir Marhaus, that this is the greatest cause that yee courage me for to have to doe with you, for ye are called one of the best renowned knights of the world, and because of that noyse and fame that ye have, it will doe me good to have to doe with you, for never yet sith that I was borne of my mother was I proved with a good knight, and also sith I have taken the high order of knighthood this day, I am right well pleased that I may have to doe with so good a knight as ye are. And now wit yee well, sir Marhaus of Ireland, that I cast me to winne worship on thy body, and if that I bee not proved, I trust to God I shall be worshipfully proved upon thy body, and for to deliver the countrey of Cornewaile for ever from all manner of truage from Ireland." And when the good knight sir Marhaus had heard him say what him list, then said he thus againe: "Faire knight, sith it is so that thou castest thee to winne worship on mee, I let thee wit that no worship maist thou leese by me, if thou maist stand mee three strookes, for I let you wit that for my noble

deedes proved and seene, king Arthur made mee knight of the round table." And then they began for to futre their speares, and they met so fiersly together that they smote either other down both horse and al to the earth. But sir Marhaus smote sir Tristram a great wound in his side with his speare, and then they avoided their horses and drew out their swords anon, and cast their shields afore them, and then they lashed together as it had beene two wild boores that bee couragious. And when they had striken together a long while, then they left off their strookes and foyned at their brest and visers. And when they saw it might not prevaile them, then they hurtled together like two rams to beare either other downe. Thus they fought still more then halfe a day, and were both sore wounded, that the blood ran downe from them on every side to the ground. By then Tristram waxed more fresher then sir Marhaus, and better winded and bigger, and with a mighty strooke hee smote sir Marhaus upon the helme such a buffet that it went through his helme, and through his coyfe of steele, and through the braine panne, so that his sword stucke so fast in the helme and in his braine pan, that sir Tristram pulled thrice at his sword or hee might pull it out from his head ; and there sir Marhaus fell downe upon his knees, and the edge of sir Tristrams sword abode still in his braine pan. And suddenly sir Marhaus arose, and threw his sword and his shield from him, and so ran unto his shippes and fled his way, and sir Tristram had ever still his owne shield and his sword. And when sir Tristram saw sir Marhaus withdraw him, hee said, "Ah, sir knight of the round table, why doest thou withdraw thee? thou doest thyselfe and thy kin great shame, for I am but a young knight, or now I was never proved, and rather then I should withdraw me from thee, I had rather be hewen in an hundred peeces." Sir Marhaus said no word, but went his way sore groaning. "Well, sir knight," said sir Tristram, "I promise thee thy sword and thy shield shall bee mine, and thy shield shall I weare in

all places where I ride on mine adventures, and in the sight of king Arthur and all the round table."

CHAP. VIII.—How sir Marhaus after he was arrived in Ireland died of the great strooke that sir Tristram had given him, and how sir Tristram was hurt.

THEN anon sir Marhaus and his fellowship departed and went toward Ireland. And as soone as he came unto the king his brother, he let search his wounds, and when his head was searched a peece of sir Tristrams sword was found therein, and might never be had out of his head for no surgions, and so he died of sir Tristrams sword, and that peece of the sword the queene his sister kept it for ever with her, for she thought to be revenged and she might.

Now turne wee againe unto sir Tristram, which was sore wounded and bled full sore, that he might not within a little while when hee had taken cold unneths stirre him of his limmes. And then he set him downe softly upon a litle hill, and bled fast. Then anon came Governale his servant with his vessell, and the king and his barons came with processyon against him, and when he was come to the land, king Marke tooke him in both his armes, and the king and sir Dinas the seneshall led sir Tristram into the castle of Tintagill, and then were his wounds searched in the best manner, and laid in bed. And when king Marke saw all his wounds, he wept right hartily, and so did all his lords. "So God me helpe," said king Marke, "I would not for all my lands that my nephew died." So sir Tristram lay there a month and more, and was like to have died of the strooke that sir Marhaus had given him first with his speare. For as the French booke saith, that speares head was envenimed, that sir Tristram might not be hole thereof. Then was king Marke and all his barons passing heavie, for they deemed none other but that sir Tristram should not

recover. So the king let send after all manner of leeches and surgions[1] both men and women, and there was none that would warrant him his life. Then came there a lady, which was a full wise lady, and shee said plainely unto king Marke and unto sir Tristram and unto all the barons, that he should never be whole, but if sir Tristram went into the same countrey that the venime came from, and in that countrey should he bee holpen or else never. When king Marke had well heard what the lady said, forthwith hee let purvey for sir Tristram a faire vessell, and well vitailed it, and therein was put sir Tristram and Governale with him, and sir Tristram tooke his harpe with him, and so hee was put to sea, for to saile into Ireland, and so by good fortune he arrived up into Ireland even fast by a castle where the king and the queene were, and at his arriving he sat and harped in his bed a merry lay, such one had they never heard in Ireland afore that time. And when it was told the king and the queene of such a knight that was such a harper, anon the king sent for him, and let search his wound, and then he asked him what was his name. He answered and said: "I am of the countrey of Lyones, and my name is sir Tramtrist,[2] that have beene thus wounded in a battaile as I fought for a ladies right." "So God me helpe," said king Anguish, "yee shall have all the helpe in this land that yee may have.

"But I let you wit that in Cornewaile I have had a great losse as ever had king, for there I lost the best knight of the world, his name was sir Marhaus, a noble knight, and a knight of the round table." And there hee told sir Tris-

[1] *Surgions*.—Caxton, *surgens*. I give this reading merely to correct a remark which I believe I have somewhere made, rather hastily, that the word surgeon was more recent than the time of Caxton. It appears to have been a popular corruption of chirurgeon, which existed in conversation before it appeared in writing.

[2] *Sir Tramtrist*.—This rather clumsy attempt at concealing the name by transposing the two syllables of which it was composed, is an incidence in the romance in all its different forms.

tram wherefore sir Marhaus was slaine. Sir Tristram made semblance as hee had been sory, and better knew he how it was then the king.

CHAP. IX.—How sir Tristram was first put to the ward and keeping of La beale Isoude[1] for to be healed of his wound.

THEN the king for great favour made sir Tramtrist to bee put in his daughters ward and keeping, because she was a noble surgion.[2] And so when shee had searched his wound, found in the bottom of his wound that there was poyson, and within a litle while she healed him, and therefore Tramtrist cast great love to La beale Isoude, for she was at that time the fairest lady of the world, and there sir Tramtrist learned her to harpe, and she began to have a great fantesie unto sir Tramtrist. And at that time sir Palomides, that was a Sarasin, was in that countrie, and was well cherished both of the king and the queene, and every day this sir Palomides drew unto La beale Isoude, and he profered her many great gifts, for he loved her passing well. And all that espied right well sir Tramtrist, and full well he knew sir Palomides for a noble knight and a mightie man. And wit yee well that sir Tramtrist had great dispite at sir Palomides, for La beale Isoude told sir Tramtrist that sir Palomides was in will to be christened for her sake. Thus

[1] *Isoude.*—The *u* and *n* in medieval MSS. cannot be distinguished unless we know which the letter ought to be, and not only has our text of 1634 printed Iso*n*de for the Iso*u*de of Caxton, but the same error was made by sir Walter Scott in his edition of the English sir Tristrem. The error is a very inexcusable one in a modern edition, because it is well known that the name which it represents is *Isolde* or, as sometimes written, *Iseult.*

[2] *A noble surgion.*—Surgery and medicine were the great accomplishments of the medieval ladies, and it was this particular class of accomplishments which made them so much dreaded as poisoners and, in popular superstition, sorceresses. We find queens, princesses, and great ladies, figuring in this romance under all these qualifications.

was there great envy betweene sir Tramtrist and sir Palomides. Then it beefell that king Anguish let crie a great justs and a great turneyment for a lady which was called the lady of the launds, and she was nigh cosin unto the king, and what man that should winne her should wed her three dayes after and have all her lands. This crie was made in England, Wales, and Scotland, and also in France and in Britaine. It befell upon a day La beale Isoude came to sir Tramtrist and told him of this turnement. Hee answered and said: "Faire lady, I am but a feeble knight, and but late I had beene dead had not your good ladiship beene. Now, faire lady, what would yee I should doe in this matter? well yee wot, my lady, that I may not just." "Ah! Tramtrist," said La beale Isoude, "why will yee not have to doe at that turnament? well I wot sir Palomides will bee there and doe what he may, and therefore, sir Tramtrist, I pray you to be there, for else sir Palomides is like to winne the degree." "Madame," said sir Tramtrist, "as for that hee may doe so, for he is a proved knight, and I am but a young knight and late made, and the first battaile that I did it mishapped me to be sore wounded as ye see. But and I wist that yee would bee my better, lady, at that turnament will I bee, so that ye will keepe my counsell and let no creature have knowledge that I shall just but your selfe and such as yee will to keepe your counsell; my poore person shall I jeopard there for your sake, that peradventure sir Palomides shall know when I come." Thereto said La beale Isoude, "Doe your best, and as I can I shall purvey horses and armour for you at my devise." "As yee will, so be it," said sir Tramtrist, "I will bee at your command." So at the day of justs there came sir Palomides with a blacke shield, and he overthrew many knights, that all the people had mervaile of him, for he put to the worst sir Gawaine, Gaheris, Agrovaine, Bagdemagus, Kay, Dodinas le Savage, Sagramore le Desyrous, Gunret le Pitie,[1] and Griflet le Fise

[1] *Gunret le Pitie.—Gumret le Petyte*, Caxton.

de Dieu, all these the first day sir Palomides strake downe to the earth, and then all manner knights were adred of sir Palomides; many called him the knight with the blacke shield. So that day sir Palômides had great worship.

Then came king Anguish unto sir Tramtrist and asked him why he would not just. "Sir," said he, "I was but late hurt, and as yet I dare not adventure me." Then came there the same squire that was sent from the kings daughter of France unto sir Tristram, and when he had espied sir Tristram hee fell flat unto his feete. All that espied La beale Isoude, saw what courtesie the squire made unto sir Tristram. And therewithall sodainly sir Tristram ranne unto his squire, whose name was Hebes le Renommés, and praied him heartily in no wise to tell his name. "Sir," said Hebes, "I will not discover your name but if yee command mee."

CHAP. X.—How sir Tristram wan the degree at a turnament in Ireland, and there made sir Palomides to beare no harneis in a yeare.



THEN sir Tristram asked him what he did in that countrey. "Sir," said he, "I am come hither with sir Gawaine for to be made knight, and if it please you that of your hands I may be made knight." "Wait on me secretly to morrow, and in the field I shall make you a knight." Then had La beale Isoude great suspection unto sir Tramtrist that hee was some knight of worship proved, and therewith shee comforted her selfe, and cast more love unto him then she had done before. And so on the morrow sir Palomides made him ready for to come into the field as he did the first day, and there he smote down the king with an hundred knights and the king of Scotland. Then had La beale Isoude ordained and well arrayed sir Tramtrist all in white both horse and harneis, and right so shee put him out at a privie posterne, and so

hee came into the field, as white as it had beene a bright angel. And anon sir Palomides espied him, and therewith he feutred a great speare unto sir Tristram, and sir Tristram to him againe, and there sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides unto the earth. And then there was a great noyse of people, for some said sir Palomides had a fall, and some said the knight with the blacke shield had a fall, and wit ye well that La beale Isoud was passing glad. And then sir Gawaine and his nine fellowes had marvaile what knight it might be that had smitten downe sir Palomides; and then there was none that would just with sir Tristram, but all that were there forsooke sir Tristram most and least. Then sir Tristram made Hebes knight and caused him to put himselfe forth, and did right well that day. And so after sir Hebes held him with sir Tristram. And when sir Palomides had received the fall, wit yee well hee was right sore ashamed, and as privily as hee might hee withdrew him out of the field. And all that espied sir Tristram, and lightly hee rode after sir Palomides, and anon overtooke him, and bad him turne for he would better assay him or he departed. And then sir Palomides turned him and either lashed at other with their swords. But at the first strooke sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides, and gave him such a strooke upon the head that he fell to the earth. And then sir Tristram bad yeeld him and doe his commandement, or else hee would slay him. And when sir Palomides beheld his countenance, he dread sore his buffets, so that he graunted him al his asking. "Well," said sir Tristram unto him, "this shall be your charge. First upon paine of your life that yee forsake my lady La beale Isoud, and in no manner of wise that yee draw unto her, and also these twelve monethes and a day that ye beare none armour nor in like wise no harneis of warre. Now promise me this or heere shalt thou die." "Alas!" said sir Palomides, "now am I for ever shamed." And then he swore as sir Tristram had commanded him. Then for great dispite and anger sir

Palomides cut off his harneis and threw it away. And so sir Tristram returned again unto the castle where as La beale Isoud was, and by the way he met with a damosell that asked after sir Launcelot which wan the dolorous gard so worshipfully, and this damosell asked sir Tristram what hee was, "for it was told her that it was hee that smote downe sir Palomides, by whom the ten knights of king Arthurs were smitten downe." And then the damosell praied sir Tristram for to tell her what he was, and whether hee were sir Launcelot du Lake or not, for she deemed that there was no knight in the world that might doe such deedes of armes, but if it were sir Launcelot du Lake. "Faire damosell," said sir Tristram, "wit ye well that I am not sir Launcelot, for I was never in such prowesse, but in God is all, that he may make mee as good a knight as is the good knight sir Launcelot."

"Now, gentle knight," said shee, "put up thy viser." And when she beheld his visage she thought that she had never seene better mans visage, nor a better faring knight. And when the damosell knew certainely that he was not sir Launcelot, then shee tooke her leave and departed from him. And then sir Tristram rode privily unto the posterne where La beale Isoud kept him, and there shee made him full good cheere, and thanked God of his good speede. So anon within a while the king and the queene understood that it was Tramtrist that smote downe sir Palomides, then was hee much made of and set by more then he was before.

CHAP. XI.—How the queene espied that sir Tristram had slaine her brother sir Marhaus by his sword, and in what jeopardy he was.


HUS was sir Tramtrist long there well cherished with the king and the queene, and namely with La beale Isoud. So upon a day the queene and La beale Isoud made a bayne[1] for sir Tramtrist,

[1] *A bayne.*—A bath.

and when hee was in his bayne, the queene and her daughter La beale Isoud roumed[1] up and downe in the chamber, and there whiles Governale and Hebes attended upon Tramtrist, and the queene beheld his sword whereas it lay upon his bed. And then by unhap the queene drew out his sword and beheld it a long while, and both they thought it a passing faire sword, but within a foote and an halfe of the point there was a great peece brooken out of the edge. And when the queen espied that gap in the sword, shee remembred of a peece of a sword that was found in the braine panne of the good knight sir Marhaus that was her brother.[2] "Alas!" said shee then to her daughter La beale Isoud, "this is the same traitrous knight that slew my brother thine uncle." When La beale Isoud heard her say so, she was then passing sore abashed, for she loved sir Tramtrist passingly well, and right well shee knew the cruelnesse of her mother the queene. And so anon therewith the queene went in all the hast that she might unto her owne chamber, and then she sought in a coffer that she had, and there she found and tooke out the peece of the sword that was taken out of her brothers head sir Marhaus, after that he was dead. And then anon she ran with the same peece of iron unto sir Tramtrists sword which lay upon the bed, and so when shee put the same peece of steele and iron unto the same sword, it was then as fit as ever it might bee when it was first new broken. And so forthwith the queene caught that sword fiersly in her hand, and with all her might shee ranne straight unto Tramtrist where he sat in a bayne, and there shee had runne him through had not sir Hebes gotten her in his armes and pulled the sword from her, and else she had thrust him through. When shee was thus letted of her evil will, she ran to king Anguish her husband,

[1] *Roumed.*—Wandered; roamed.

[2] *Her brother.*—In the French prose romance, it is not Tristram's sword which the Irish queen recognises by the fragment broken from it, but Morhoult's own sword which Tristram had captured and carried with him.

and fell on her knees before him, saying, "Oh, my lord and husband, heere have ye in your house that traitour knight that slew my brother, and your servant, that noble knight sir Marhaus." "Who is that," said king Anguish, "and where is hee?" "Sir," said shee, "it is sir Tramtrist, the same knight that my daughter hath healed." "Alas!" said king Anguish, "therefore am I right heavie, for he is a ful noble knight as ever I saw in field, but I charge you," said the king to the queene, "that yee have not to doe with this knight, but let me deale with him." Then the king went into the chamber to sir Tramtrist, that then was gone unto his chamber, and then the king found him all armed, ready to mount upon his horse. And when the king saw him all ready armed to mount on horsebacke, the king said, "Nay, Tramtrist, it will not availe thee to compare against me. But thus much will I doe for my worship, and for thy love: in so much as thou art within this court, it were no worship for mee to slay thee, therefore upon this condition I will give thee leave to depart from this court in safetie, so that thou wilt tell me who is thy father, and what is thy name, and if thou slew my brother sir Marhaus."

CHAP. XII.—How sir Tristram departed from king Anguish and La beale Isoud out of Ireland for to come into Cornewaile.

"SIR," said sir Tristram, "now shall I tell you all the truth; my fathers name is Meliodas, king of Liones, and my mother hight Elizabeth, that was sister unto king Marke of Cornewaile, and my mother died of me in the forrest, and because thereof she commanded or she died that when I were christned that they should name mee Tristram, and because I would not be knowen in this countrie, I turned my name, and let cal mee Tramtrist; and for the truage of Cornewaile, I fought for mine uncles sake, and for the right of Cornewaile that yee had possessed many yeares. And wit yee well," said

sir Tristram unto the king, "I did the battaile for the love of mine uncle king Marke and for the love of the countrey of Cornewaile, and for to encrease mine honour, for that same day that I fought with sir Marhaus I was made knight, and never or then did I no battaile with no knight, and from me he went alive, left his shield and his sword behind." "So God me helpe," said the king, "I may not say but ye did as a good knight should doe, and it was your part to doe for your quarell, and to encrease your worship as a knight should doe; how bee it I may not maintaine you in this countrey with my worship, unlesse I would displease my barons and my wife and her kinne." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I thank you of your goodnesse that I have had with you heere, and of the great goodnesse that my lady your daughter hath shewed mee, and therefore," said sir Tristram, "it may happen that yee shall winne more by my life then by my death; for in the parties of England it may happen I may doe you service at some season that yee shall be glad that ever yee shewed mee the goodnesse of your lordship. With more I promise you as I am true knight, that in all places I shall bee my lady your daughters servant and knight in right and in wrong, and I shall never faile her to doe as much as a knight may doe. Alsoe I beseech your good grace that I may take my leave of my lady your daughter, and at all the barons and knights." "I will," said the king. Then sir Tristram went unto La beale Isoud, and tooke his leave of her. And then he told her al, what he was, and how he had changed his name because he would not be knowne, and how a lady told him that he should never be whole till he came into this countrey where the poyson was made, "wherethrough I was neere my death had not your ladyship beene." "Oh, gentle knight," said La beale Isoud, "full woe am I of your departing, for I saw never yet man that I ought so good will unto;" and therewith she wept right heartily. "Madame," said sir Tristram, "yee shall understand that my name is sir

Tristram de Liones, begotten of king Meliodas and borne of his queene. And I promise you faithfully that I shall be all the dayes of my life your knight." "Sir, gramercy," said La beale Isoud, "and there againe I promise you that I shall not be marryed of this seaven yeare but if it be by your assent, and to whom ye will I shall be married, him shall I have, if hee will have mee, if yee will consent." And then sir Tristram gave her a ring, and she gave him another, and therewith he departed from her, leaving her making full great moane and lamentation, and hee went straight unto the court among all the barons, and there hee tooke his leave of most and least, and openly among them all he said: "Faire lords, now it is so that I must depart from hence, if there be any man heere that I have offended unto, or that any man bee with mee grieved, let him complaine heere before me or I depart from hence, and I shall amend it unto my power. And if there be any that will proffer me wrong, or to say of mee wrong or shame behind my backe, say it now or never, and heere is my body to make it good, body against body." And all they stood still, there was not one that would say one word, yet were there some knights which were of the queenes blood and of sir Marhaus blood, but they would not meddle with him.

CHAP. XIII.—How sir Tristram and king Marke hurt each other for the love of a knights wife.

SO sir Tristram departed and tooke the sea, and with good wind hee arrived up at Tintagill in Cornewaile. And when king Marke was whole and in his prosperitie, there came tidings that sir Tristram was arrived and whole of his wound, whereof king Marke was passing glad, and so were all the barons. And when hee saw his time, hee rode unto his father king Meliodas, and there hee had all the cheere that the king and the queene could make him. And then largely king

Meliodas and his queene parted of their lands and goods unto sir Tristram. So then by the licence of king Meliodas his father, he returned againe unto the court of king Marke, and there he lived in great joy long time, untill at the last there befell a jelousie and an unkindnesse betweene king Marke and sir Tristram, for they loved both one lady, and shee was an earles wife that hight sir Segwarides. And this lady loved sir Tristram passing wel, and he loved her againe, for she was a passing faire lady, and that espied well sir Tristram. When king Marke understood that, he was anon stricken with jelousie, for king Marke loved her passing wel. So it befell upon a day that this lady sent a dwarfe unto sir Tristram, and bad him say that as he loved her, that he would be with her the next night following, "and charge him that he come not to mee but if hee bee well armed;" for her lord was called a good knight. Sir Tristram answered the dwarfe and said: "Recommend mee unto my lady, and tell her that I will not faile, but will bee with her at the time she hath sent mee." And with this answere the dwarfe departed. When king Marke espied that the dwarf had beene with sir Tristram on message from sir Segwarides wife, then sent king Marke for the dwarfe, and when he was come hee made the dwarfe by force to tell him all, why and wherefore he came on message to sir Tristram. "Now," said king Marke, "goe where thou wilt, and upon paine of death that thou say no word that thou spakest with mee." So the dwarfe departed from the king. And that same night the time was set betweene sir Segwarides wife and sir Tristram, king Marke armed him and made him ready, and tooke two knights of his counsaile with him, and so he rode afore for to abide by the way for to awaite sir Tristram. And as sir Tristram came riding on his way with his speare in his hand, sodainely king Marke came hurling upon him with his two knights, and there smote him with their speares, and king Marke hurt sir Tristram upon the breast right sore. And then sir Tristram feutred

his speare, and smote his uncle king Marke such a strooke that he rushed him to the earth and brused him sore, that he lay still in a sownd, and it was long or he might weld himselfe, and then he ranne to the one knight and oft[1] to the other, and smote them both to the earth, that they lay still. And therewith sir Tristram rode forth to the lady sore wounded, and found her abiding him at a posterne.

CHAP. XIV.—**How sir Tristram lay with the lady, and how her husband fought with sir Tristram.**

AND there she full faire welcomed him, and either haused[2] other in armes sweetly. And so shee let put up his horse in the best wise, and then shee unarmed him, and so they lightly supped and went to bed with great joy and pleasure. And so in his raging hee tooke no care of his greene wound that king Marke had given him, and so sir Tristram bebled[3] both the upper sheete and the nether sheete, and pillowes, and head sheete. And within a while there came one before that warned her that her lord was neere hand within a bowes draught. So shee made sir Tristram to rise, and foorthwith hee armed him and tooke his horse, and so departed. By than was come sir Segwarides her lord, and when hee found her bed troubled and broken, hee went neere and beheld it by candlelight, then saw he there as had layen a wounded knight. "Ah, false traytresse," said he then, "why hast thou betrayed me?" And therewith he drew out his sword, and said, "But if thou tell me who hath beene heere, here shalt thou die." "Ah, my lord, mercy," said the lady, and held up her hands, saying, "Slay me not, and I shall tell you who hath beene heere." "Tell mee anon," said sir Segwarides, "all the truth." Anon for

[1] *Oft.*—*Ofte*, Caxton; doubtless for *efte*, again.
[2] *Haused.*—i. e. halsed; embraced.
[3] *Bebled.*—Covered with blood.

dread she said, "Here was sir Tristram with me, and by the way as he came toward me hee was sore wounded." "Ah, thou false traytresse," said sir Segwarides, "where is he become?" "Sir," said shee, "he is armed and departed on horsbacke, and is not yet hence halfe a mile." "Ye say well," said sir Segwarides. Then he armed him lightly, and gat his horse and rode after sir Tristram, that rode straight the way unto Tintagill, and within a while he overtooke sir Tristram, and then hee bad him "turne, false traytour knight." Then anon sir Tristram turned him against him. And therewith sir Segwarides smote sir Tristram with a speare, that it all to brake in peeces. And then he drew out his sword, and smote sir Tristram full sore strookes. "Sir knight," said sir Tristram, "I counsaile you that you smite no more, how be it for the wrong that I have done you, I will forbeare you as long as I may." "Nay," said sir Segwarides, "that shall not bee, for either thou shalt dye or I." So sir Tristram drew out his sword and spurred his horse unto him right fiercely, and through the wast of the body he smote sir Segwarides, that hee fell to the earth in a sowne. And so sir Tristram departed and left him there, and so he rode unto Tintagill and tooke his lodging secretly, for he would not bee knowne that he was hurt. Also sir Segwarides men rode after their master, whom they found lying in the field sore wounded, and, when they saw him lie so, they tooke him up and brought him home upon his shield, and there he lay long or he was hole, but at the last he recovered. King Marke also would not bee knowne of, that sir Tristram and he had met that night. And as for sir Tristram hee wist not that it had beene king Marke that had met with him. And so the kings assistance came to sir Tristram to comfort him as hee lay sicke in his bed.

But as long as king Marke lived he never after loved sir Tristram, though there was much faire speech betweene them, yet love was there none, and thus it past on many

weekes and dayes, and all was forgiven and forgotten; for sir Segwarides durst no more have to doe with sir Tristram because of his noble prowesse, and also because that hee was nephew unto king Marke, therefore hee let it slip over. For hee that hath a privie hurt is loth to have a shame outward.

CHAP. XV.—**How sir Bleoberis demanded the fairest lady in king Markes court, whom he tooke away, and how he was foughten with.**

THEN it befell upon a day that the good knight sir Bleoberis de Ganis, brother unto sir Blamor de Ganis, and nigh cosin unto the good knight sir Launcelot du Lake, and this sir Bleoberis came unto king Markes court, and there he asked of king Marke a boone to give him what gift hee would aske in his court. And when the king heard him say so, he marvailed of his asking, but because he was a knight of the round table and of a great renowne, king Marke graunted him his whole asking. Then said sir Bleoberis to king Marke: "I will have the fairest lady in your court, the which me list to choose." "I may not say nay," said king Marke, "now choose at your adventure." And then sir Bleoberis chose sir Segwarides wife, and tooke her by the hand, and so went his way with her, and anon he set her upon horsebacke behind his squire, and so he tooke his horse and rode forth on his way. When sir Segwarides heard tell that his lady was gone with a knight of king Arthurs court, then anon hee armed him and rode after that knight for to rescew his wife. So when sir Bleoberis was gone with this lady, king Marke and all the court were wroth that shee was thus gone. Then were there certaine ladies that knew that there was great love betweene sir Tristram and her, and also the lady loved sir Tristram above all other knights. And then there was a damosell that rebuked sir Tristram in the most foulest manner, and called him coward knight,

that he would for shame of his knighthood see a lady so shamefully taken away from his uncles court. But she meant that either of them had loved other with entire heart long time. But sir Tristram answered her in this wise: "Faire lady, it is not my part to have to doe in such matters, while her lord and husband is here present. If it had beene so that her lord had not beene heere in this court, then for the worship of this court peradventure I would have beene her champion. And if so bee that sir Segwarides speede not well, then it may happen that I wil speake with that knight or he passe out of this countrey." So within a while came one of sir Segwarides squires, and told in the court that sir Segwarides was sore beaten and wounded, and in point of death, "for as hee would have rescued his lady sir Bleoberis overthrew him, and hath sore wounded him." Then was king Mark and all the court right heavie thereof. And when sir Tristram heard of this, he was ashamed, and sore grieved, and then was he soone armed and on horsebacke, and Governale his servant bare his shield and his speare. And so as sir Tristram rode, he met with sir Andret his cosin, the which by the commandement of king Marke was sent to bring, and it lay in his power, two knights of king Arthurs court that rode through the countrey to seeke their adventures. When sir Tristram saw sir Andret he asked him what tidings. "So God me helpe," said sir Andret, "it was never worse with me then now, and for here by the commandement of king Marke I was sent to fetch two knights of king Arthurs court, and the one beate mee and wounded mee, and set naught by my message." "Faire cosin," said sir Tristram, "ride on your way, and if I meete them it may happen I shall revenge you." So sir Andret rode into Cornewaile, and sir Tristram rode after the two knights, of whom the one hight Sagramore le Desirous, and that other hight sir Dodinas le Savage.

CHAP. XVI.—How sir Tristram fought with two knights of the round table.

THEN within a while sir Tristram saw before him the two likely knights. "Sir," said Governale unto his master, "I would counsaile you not to have to doe with them, for they be two proved knights of king Arthurs court." "As for that," said sir Tristram, "have ye no doubt but I will have to do with them for to encrease my worship, for it is many a day sith I did any deeds of armes." "Doe as ye list," said Governale. And anon therewith sir Tristram asked them from whence they came, and whether they would, and what they did in those marches. Sir Sagramore looked upon sir Tristram, and had scorne of his words, and said to him againe: "Faire knight, be yee knight of Cornewaile?" "Whereby aske yee?" said sir Tristram. "For it is but seldome seene," said sir Sagramore, "that yee Cornish knights be valiant men of armes. For within these two houres there met us one of your Cornish knights, and great words he spake, and anon with little might he was laide on the earth, and as I trow," said sir Sagramore, "yee shall have the same hansell[1] that he had." "Faire lords," said sir Tristram, "it may happen I may better withstand than he did, and whether yee will or not I will have to doe with you because he was my cosin that yee beate, and therfore here doe your best; but wit yee well but if yee quite you the better here upon this ground, one knight of Cornewaile shall beate you both." When sir Dodinas le Savage heard him say so, hee gat a speare in his hand, and said, "Sir knight, keepe well thy selfe." And then they departed, and came together as it had been thunder, and sir Dodinas speere brast asunder, but sir Tristram smote him with a more might

[1] *Hansell.*—The hansell was, properly speaking, the first gain or profit upon anything. It means here simply that sir Tristram would have no better fortune than the other Cornish knight.

that hee smote him cleane over his horse crouper, that nigh he had broken his necke. When sir Sagramore saw his felow have such a fall, then he mervailed what hee might bee, and dressed his speere with all his might, and sir Tristram against him, and they came together as thunder, and there sir Tristram smote sir Sagramore a great buffet that hee bare his horse and him to the earth, and in the falling he brake his thigh. When this was done, sir Tristram asked them, "Faire knights, will yee any more? Are there no bigger knights in king Arthurs court? It is to you great shame for to say dishonour of us knights of Cornewaile, for it may happen a Cornish knight to match you both." "It is so," said sir Sagramore, "and that have wee well proved; but I require you," said sir Sagramore, "tell us your right name, by the faith that yee owe unto the high order of knighthoode." "Ye charge mee with a great thing," said sir Tristram, "and sithence yee liste to witte, yee shall understand that my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, king Meliodas sonne, and nephew unto king Marke." Then were the two knights gladde that they had met with sir Tristram, and so they prayed him to abide in their fellowship. "Nay," said sir Tristram, "I must have to doe with one of your fellowes, his name is sir Bleoberis de Ganis." "God speede you well," said sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas. So sir Tristram departed and rode on his way, and then was he ware before him in a valey where sir Bleoberis rode, with sir Segwarides wife that rode behind his squire upon a palfrey.

CHAP. XVII.—How sir Tristram fought with sir Bleoberis for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice unto whom she would goe.



THEN sir Tristram rode more than a pace till hee had overtaken sir Bleoberis. Then spake sir Tristram, "Abide, sir knight of king Arthurs court, bring againe that lady or deliver

her to me." "I will not," said sir Bleoberis, "for I dread no Cornish knight so sore, that me list to deliver her." "Why," said sir Tristram, "may not a Cornish knight doe as well as another knight? this day within these three miles two knights of your court met with me, and or we departed they found a Cornish knight good enough for them both." "What were their names?" said sir Bleoberis. "The one tolde mee," said sir Tristram, "that he hight sir Sagramore le Desirous, and that other told mee hee hight sir Dodinas le Savage." "Ah!" said sir Bleoberis, "have yee met with them, so God me helpe they were two good knights, and good men of worship, and if yee have beaten them both yee must needs be a good knight; but for all that it bee so that yee have beaten them both, yet shall yee not feare me, but yee shall beate me or that yee have this lady." "Defend you then," said sir Tristram. So they departed, and came together like thunder, and either bare other down horse and all to the earth. Then they avoyded their horses, and lashed together full egerly and mightyly with their swords, now tracing and traversing on the right hand and on the left hand more than two houres. And sometime they rashed together with such a might that they lay both groveling on the ground. Then sir Bleoberis start backe, and said thus unto sir Tristram: "Now, gentile knight, a while hold your hand, and let us two speake together." "Say on," said sir Tristram, "and I shall answere you againe." "Sir," said sir Bleoberis, "I would wit of whence yee bee, and of whom yee be come, and what is your name?" "So God me help," said sir Tristram, "I feare not to tell you my name; wit yee well I am king Meliodas sonne, and my mother is king Markes sister, and my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, and king Marke is mine uncle." "Truely," said sir Bleoberis, "I am right glad of you; for yee are he that slew sir Marhaus the good knight hand for hand in an iland, for the truage of Cornewaile; also yee overcame sir Palomides the good knight at a turnement in

Ireland, and there yee beate sir Gawaine and his nine felowes." "Now, so God me helpe," said sir Tristram, "wit yee well that I am the same knight; and now that I have told you my name, tell me yours." "With a good will, wit yee well my name is sir Bleoberis de Ganis, and my brother hight sir Blamore de Ganis, that is called a good knight, and wee be sisters children unto my lord sir Launcelot du Lake, which is called one of the best knights of the world." "That is truth," said sir Tristram, "sir Launcelot is called peerlesse of curtesie and of knighthood; and for his sake," said sir Tristram, "I will not with my good will fight no more with you, for the great love that I have unto sir Launcelot du Lake." "In good faith, sir," said Bleoberis, "as for me, I will be loth to fight with you. But sith yee follow me heere to have this lady, I shall proffer you kindnesse, curtesie, and gentlenesse right here upon this ground. This lady shall be betweene us both, and unto whom shee will goe, let him have her in peace." "I will well," said sir Tristram, "for, as I deeme, she will leave you and come to me." "Ye shall prove it anon," said sir Bleoberis.

CHAP. XVIII.—How the lady forsooke sir Tristram and abode with sir Bleoberis, and how she desired to goe unto her husband.

SO when she was set betweene them both, shee said these words unto sir Tristram: "Wit yee well, sir Tristram, that but late you were the man in the world that I most loved and trusted, and I wend thou haddest loved me againe above all other ladies, but when thou sawest this knight lead mee away, thou madest no semblance to rescew me, but suffredst my lord sir Segwarides ride after me; but untill that time I wend thou haddest loved me, and therefore now I will leave thee and never love thee more." And therwith shee went unto sir Bleoberis. When sir Tristram saw her doe so, hee was

wonderous wroth with that lady, and was ashamed to come to the court. "Sir Tristram," said sir Bleoberis, "yee are in the default, for I heare by this ladies words that shee before this day trusted you above all earthly knights, and as she saith yee have deceived her; therefore wit yee well, there may no man hould that will away, and rather than yee should be heartily displeased with me, I would yee had her and shee would abide with you." "Nay," said the lady, "so God me helpe, I will never goe with him, for hee that I loved most I wende he had loved mee againe. And therefore, sir Tristram," said she, "ride as thou came, for though thou haddest overcome this knight as yee were likely, yet with thee never would I have gone. And I shall pray this knight so faire of his knighthood, that or hee passe this countrey that he will leade me to the abbey where my lord sir Segwarides lyeth." "So God me helpe," said sir Bleoberis, "I let you to wit, good knight sir Tristram, because king Marke gave me the choise of a gift in his court, and so this lady liked me best notwithstanding she is wedded and hath a lord, and I have fulfilled my quest, she shall bee sent to her husband againe, and in especiall most for your sake, sir Tristram, and if she would goe with you, I would yee had her." "I thanke you," said sir Tristram, "but for her sake I shall be ware what maner lady I shall love or trust. For had her lord sir Segwarides beene away from the court, I should have beene the first that should have folowed you; but she hath refused me, and as I am true knight I shall know her passing well that I shall love or trust." And so they tooke their leave, and departed one from another; and sir Tristram rode unto Tintagill, and sir Bleoberis rode unto the abbey where as sir Segwarides lay sore wounded, and there he delivered his lady and departed as a noble knight. And when sir Segwarides saw his lady, hee was greatly comforted. And than she told him that sir Tristram had done a great battaile with sir Bleoberis, and caused him to bring her againe. And

these words pleased sir Segwarides right well that sir Tristram would doe so much; and so that lady told of all the battaile unto sir Marke betweene sir Tristram and sir Bleoberis.

CHAP. XIX.—How king Marke sent sir Tristram for La beale Isoud towarde Ireland, and how by fortune he arrived in England.

THEN when this was done, king Marke east alwayes in his hart how he might destroy sir Tristram.[1] And than he imagined in him selfe to send sir Tristram into Ireland for La beale Isoud; for sir Tristram had so praised her beautie and her goodnesse, that king Marke said he would wed her, whereupon hee praied sir Tristram to take his way into Ireland for him on a message. And all this was done to the entent that sir Tristram should be slaine. Notwithstanding, sir Tristram would not refuse the message for no daunger nor perill that might fall for the pleasure of his uncle, but to goe he made him ready in the most goodliest wise that might be devised, for sir Tristram tooke with him the most goodliest knights that he might find in the court, and they were arraied with the guise that was then used in the goodliest maner. So sir Tristram departed, and tooke the sea with all his fellowship. And anon as he was in the broad sea, a tempest tooke him and his fellowship and drove them backe into the coast of England, and there they arrived fast by Camelot,[2] and full faine they were to take the land. And when they were landed, sir Tristram set up his pavilion upon the land of Camelot, and there he let hang his shield upon

[1] *Destroy sir Tristram.*—According to the French prose romance of sir Tristram, king Mark's enmity to the hero of the romance arose from a prophecy which had been made to him that the young Tristram was destined to ruin and dethrone him.

[2] *Camelot* is here placed on the coast. But it would be in vain to attempt to explain the geography of the compiler of this romance. See before, vol. i. p. 59.

the pavillion; and that day came two knights of king Arthurs court, the one was sir Ector de Maris and that other was sir Morganore, and they touched the shield and bad him come out of the pavilion to just, and he would just. "Ye shall be answered anon," said sir Tristram, "and yee will tary a little while." So he made him ready, and first he smote downe sir Ector de Maris, and after hee smote downe sir Morganore, all with one speare, and brused them sore. And when they lay upon the earth, they asked sir Tristram what he was, and of what countrey hee was knight. "Faire lords," said sir Tristram, "wit yee well that I am of Cornewaile." "Alas," said sir Ector, "now am I ashamed that ever any Cornish knight should overcome mee." And then for great despite sir Ector put off his armour from him, and went on foote, and would not ride.

CHAP. XX.—How king Anguish of Ireland was summoned to come unto king Arthurs court for treason.

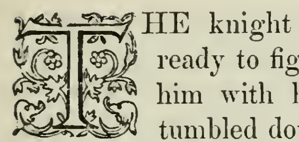
THEN it befell that sir Bleoberis de Ganis and sir Blamor de Ganis his brother had summoned king Anguish of Ireland to come unto king Arthurs court upon paine of forfeiture of king Arthurs good grace. And if the king of Ireland came not at the day assigned and set, hee should leese all his lands. So it hapned that at the day assigned king Arthur neither sir Launcelot might not be there for to give judgement, for king Arthur was with sir Launcelot at the castle Joyous-garde.[1] And so king Arthur assigned king Carados and the king of Scotland to bee there that day as judges. So when the kings were at Camelot, king Anguish of Ireland was come to know his accusers. Then was there sir Blamor de Ganis, and accused the king of Ireland of treason,

[1] *Joyous-garde.*—It is pretended that the castle of Joyous-Garde was Berwick-upon-Tweed, but I know not on what authority. It assumes a more prominent part in a subsequent part of this romance.

that hee had slaine a cosin of his in his court of Ireland by treason. The king was sore abashed of his accusation, for why hee was come at the summoning of king Arthur, and or hee came at Camelot hee wist not wherefore he was sent after. And when the king had heard sir Blamor say his will, hee understood full well there was none other remedy but for to answere him knightly. For the custome was such in those dayes, that if any man were accused of any murther or treason, he should fight body for body, or else to find another knight for him. And all manner of murther was in those dayes called treason. And when king Anguish understood his accusing, he was passing heavy, for hee knew well that sir Blamor de Ganis was a noble knight, and was also come of noble knights. Then was the king of Ireland simply purveyed of his answere, therefore the judges gave him respite by the third day to give his answere. So the king departed, and went unto his lodging.

The meane while there came a lady going by sir Tristrams pavilion making great mone. "What ayleth you," said sir Tristram, "that yee make such mone?" "Ah, faire knight," said the lady, "I am shamed unlesse that some good knight helpe me, for a great lady of worship sent by me a faire child and a rich unto sir Launcelot du Lake, and heereby there met with me a knight and threw me downe from my palfrey, and tooke away the child from me." "Well, lady," said sir Tristram, "and for my lord sir Launcelots sake I shall get you that child againe or else I shall be beaten for it." And therewith sir Tristram tooke his horse, and asked the lady which a way the knight rode. And then she told him. And he rode after them, and within a while he overtooke the knight. And then sir Tristram bad him turne and give againe the child.

CHAP. XXI.—How sir Tristram rescewed a child from a knight, and how Governale told him of king Anguish.


HE knight turned his horse and made him ready to fight. And then sir Tristram smote him with his sword such a buffet that hee tumbled downe to the ground. And then he yeelded him unto sir Tristram. "Come on thy way," said sir Tristram, "and bring the child to the lady againe." So he tooke his horse meekely, and rode with sir Tristram; and then, by the way, sir Tristram asked him his name, and he said, "My name is Breus saunce pite." So when he had delivered that child to the lady, hee said, "Sir, as in this the child is well remedied." And then sir Tristram let him goe againe, which sore repented him afterward, for he was a great enemy unto many good knights of king Arthurs court. Then when sir Tristram was in his rich pavilion, Governale his man came and told him how king Anguish of Ireland was come there, and how he was put in great distresse; and there Governale told to sir Tristram how king Anguish of Ireland was summoned and accused of murther. "So God mee helpe," said sir Tristram, "these be the best tidings that ever came to me this seven yeare, for now shall the king of Ireland have neede of my helpe, for I dare say there is no knight in this countrey that is not of king Arthurs court dare doe no battaile with sir Blamor de Ganis; and for to win the love of the king of Ireland, I shall take the battaile upon me; and therefore, Governale, I charge thee to bring mee to the king." And so Governale went unto king Anguish of Ireland, and saluted him faire. The king welcomed him, and asked him what he would. "Sir," said Governale, "heere is a knight neere hand which desireth to speake with you; and he bad me say that he would doe you service." "What knight is he?" said the king. "Sir," said he, "it is sir Tristram de Liones, that for the good grace that yee shewed

unto him in your land, he will reward you in this countrey." "Come on, good felow," said the king, "with me, and shew me sir Tristram."

So the king tooke a little hackney and a litle company with him, untill hee came unto sir Tristrams pavilion. And when sir Tristram saw king Anguish, hee ran unto him and would have holden his stirope. But anon the king lept lightly from his horse, and either halsed[1] other in their armes. "My gracious lord," said sir Tristram, "gramercy of your great goodnesse that yee shewed to me in your marches and lands. And at that time I promised you to do you service and ever it lay in my power." "Ah, worshipfull knight," said the king unto sir Tristram, "now have I great need of you; for never had I so great need of no knights helpe." "How so, my good lord?" said sir Tristram. "I shall tel you," said king Anguish; "I am summoned and appealed from my countrey for the death of a knight that was kinne unto the good knight sir Launcelot; wherefore sir Blamor de Ganis, brother to sir Bleoberis, hath appealed me to fight with him, or else to find a knight in my steede; and I wote well," said the king, "that all these that are come of king Bans blood, and sir Launcelot and these other, are passing good knights, and are hard to winne in fight or battaile as any that I know now living." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "for the great goodnesse that yee shewed to me in Ireland, and for my lady your daughters sake, La beale Isoud, I will take the battaile in hand for you, so that upon this condition yee shall graunt mee two things: that one is this, that yee shall be sworne unto me that yee are in the right, that yee were never consenting to the knights death. Sir, then," said sir Tristram, "when I have done this battaile, if God give me grace that I speede, yee shall give me a reward, what thing reasonable that I will aske of you." "So God

[1] *Halsed.*—Embraced. I have corrected this from Caxton's text; the edition of 1634 has *holded,* an evident error.

me helpe," said the king, "yee shall have what so ever yee will aske." "That is well said," said sir Tristram.

CHAP. XXII.—How sir Tristram fought for king Anguish and overcame his adversary, and how his adversary would never yeld him.

NOW make answere that your champion were ready, for I shall rather die in your quarrell then to be recreant." "I have no doubt of you," said the king, "that and yee should have to doe with sir Launcelot du Lake." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "as for sir Launcelot, hee is called the noblest knight of the world; and wit yee well that the knights of his blood are noble men and dread shame; and as for sir Bleoberis, brother unto sir Blamor, I have done battaile with him, therefore upon my head it is no shame to call him a good knight." "It is noised," said the king, "that sir Blamor is the hardier knight." "Sir, as for that, let him be, he shall never be refused if he were the best knight that nowe beareth shield or speare." So king Anguish departed, and went unto king Carados and other kings that were that time as judges, and told them that he had found his champion ready. And then, by the commandment of the kings, sir Blamor de Ganis and sir Tristram de Lyones were sent for, to heare their charge. And so when they were come before the judges, there were many kings and many knights which beheld sir Tristram, and much speech had they of him, because that hee had slaine the good knight sir Marhaus, and also because he had justed with[1] the noble knight sir Palomides. So when they had taken their charge, then they withdrew them for to make them ready for to doe the battaile. Then said sir Bleoberis unto his brother sir Blamor, "Faire brother,

[1] *Justed with.*—Caxton has, instead of these words, the rather unusual word *forjusted*, i. e. defeated or unhorsed in justling, which is used subsequently in our text not unfrequently.

now remember of what kinne that we are come of, and what maner of man that sir Launcelot du Lake is, neither further nor neerer but brothers children; and there was never none of our kinred that ever was shamed in any battaile, and rather suffer death, brother, then for to be shamed." "Brother," said sir Blamor, "have yee no doubt of mee, for I shall never shame none of my blood; howbeit I am sure that yonder knight is called a passing good knight, as of his time one of the best of the world, yet shall I never yeeld me, nor say the loth word; but well may it happen him for to smite me downe with his great might of chivalry, but rather shall he sley me then I shall yeeld me unto him as recreant." "God speed you well," said sir Bleoberis, "for yee shall find him the mightiest knight that ever yee had to doe withall, and that know I right well, for I have had to doe with him."

"God be my speede," said sir Blamor; and therwith he tooke his horse at the one end of the listes, and sir Tristram at the other end, and so they feutred their speares and came together as it had beene thunder; and so there sir Tristram through his great might smote downe sir Blamor and his horse to the earth. And anon sir Blamor avoided his horse, and drew out his sword and put his shield afore him, and bad sir Tristram alight for "though an horse hath failed me, I trust to God the earth will not faile me." And then sir Tristram alighted and dressed him to battaile, and there they lashed together strongly, as rasing and trasing, foyning and dashing many sad strookes, that the kings and knights had great wonder that they might stand, for ever they fought like two wild men, so that ther were never knights seene fight more fiercely then they did; for sir Blamor was so hasty that he would have no rest, that all men wondred that they had breath to stand on their feete; all the place was bloody that they fought in. And at the last sir Tristram smote sir Blamor such a buffet upon the helme that he fell downe upon his side, and sir Tristram stoode and beheld him.

CHAP. XXIII.—How sir Blamor desired sir Tristram to sley him, and how sir Tristram spared him, and how they tooke appointment.

THEN when sir Blamor might speake, he said thus: "Sir Tristram de Liones, I require thee, as thou art a noble knight, and the best knight that ever I found, that thou wilt sley me out of hand; for I would not live to be made lord of all the world, for I had leaver die with worship then live with shame, and needs, sir Tristram, thou must sley me, or else thou shalt never wine the fielde, for I will never say the loth word; and therfore if thou dare sley me, sley me I require thee." And when sir Tristram heard him say so knightly, he wist not what to doe with him; he remembred him of both parties of what blood he was come, and for sir Launcelots sake he would be full loth to sley him, and on that other parties in no wise he might not chuse, but he must make him to say the loth word, or else to sley him. And then sir Tristram start abacke and went to the kings which were judges; and there he kneeled downe before them, and besought them for their worship, and for king Arthur and sir Launcelots sake, that they would take this matter in their hands: "For, faire lords," said sir Tristram, "it were shame and pittie that this noble knight that yonder lieth should be slaine, for ye may well heare that shamed he will not be, and I pray to God that he never be slaine nor shamed for me. And as for the king for whom I doe this battaile, I shall require him, as I am his true champion and true knight in this fielde, that he will have mercy upon this good knight." "So God me helpe," said king Anguish to sir Tristram, "I will be ruled for your sake as yee will have me. For I know you for my true knight, and therefore I will heartily pray the kings that be here as judges for to take it into their

hands." And then the kings which were judges called sir Bleoberis unto them, and demaunded him his advise. "My lord," said sir Bleoberis, "though that my brother be beaten and hath the worse through might of armes, I dare well say though sir Tristram hath beaten his body he hath not beaten his heart, I thanke God he is not shamed this day. And rather then he should be shamed, I require you," said sir Bleoberis, "let sir Tristram sley him out of hand." "It shall not be so," said the kings, "for his adverse partie both the king and the champion hath pitie of sir Blamors knighthoode." "My lords," said sir Bleoberis, "I will right well as yee will." Then the kings called to them the king of Ireland, and found him good and treatable. And then by al their advises sir Tristram and sir Bleoberis tooke up sir Blamor. And the two bretheren were accorded with king Anguish; and kissed each other and were made friends for ever. And then sir Blamor and sir Tristram kissed each other, and there the two bretheren made their oathes that they would never non of them both fight with sir Tristram. And sir Tristram made the same oathe. And for that gentle battaile all the bloode of sir Launcelot loved sir Tristram for ever more. Then king Anguish and sir Tristram tooke their leave and sailed into Ireland with great joy and noblenesse. So when they were in Ireland, the king let make it to be knowne throughout all the land how and in what manner sir Tristram had done for him. And then the queene and all the estates that were there made as much of him as ever they might make; but the joy that La beale Isoude made of sir Tristram that might no tongue tell, for of men living shee loved him most.

CHAP. XXIV.—How sir Tristram demanded La beale Isoud for king Marke, and how sir Tristram and La beale Isoud dranke the love-drinke.

THEN on a day king Anguish asked sir Tristram why hee asked not his bone, for whatsomeever he had promised him, he should have it without any faile. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "now is it time, this is all that I require of you, that yee will give me La beale Isoud your daughter, not for my self, but for my uncle king Marke of Cornewaile, that shall have her unto his wife; for so have I promised him." "Alas," said the king, "I had leaver then all the land that I have, that ye would wed her your selfe." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "if I had so, then were I ashamed for ever in this world, and should be false of my promise, and therfore," said sir Tristram, "I pray you hold your promise that yee have promised me, for this is my desire that ye will let me have La beale Isoud for to goe with me into Cornewaile for to bee wedded unto mine uncle king Marke." "As for that," said king Anguish, "yee shall have her with you, and doe with her whatsomever it shall please you, that is to say, if that yee list to wed her your selfe that were me leavest, and if yee will give her unto king Marke your uncle, that may be in your choyse."

So to make a short conclusion, La beale Isoud was made ready for to goe with sir Tristram, and dame Bragwaine[1] went with her for her chiefe gentlewoman with many other. And then the queene La beale Isoudes mother gave unto dame Bragwain her daughters gentlewoman and unto Governale a drinke,[2] and charged them that what day king

[1] *Bragwaine.*—The edition of 1634 has erroneously in this chapter *Bradwaine.* The lady's name is Brengien in the early French metrical romance; and Brengwain, or Bringwain, in the English romance edited by Sir Walter Scott; in Caxton, Brangwayne.

[2] *A drinke.*—The skill of the ladies in the Middle Ages in composing and applying medicines is well-known, and has been alluded

Marke should wed, that same day they should give him that drinke, so that king Marke should drinke unto La beale Isoud, "and then I undertake," said the queene, "either shall love other all the dayes of their life." So this drinke was given to Governale and to dame Bragwaine, and then anon sir Tristram and La beale Isoud tooke the sea. And when they were in their cabin, it hapned so that they were thirstie, and sawe a little flacket[1] of gold stand by them, and it seemed by the colour and tast that it was noble wine. So sir Tristram tooke the flacket in his hand, and said, "Madame Isoud, here is the best drinke that ever yee dranke, which dame Bragwaine your maide and Governale my servant have kept for themselves." And then they laught and made good cheere, and either dranke to other freely, and they thought never drinke that ever they dranke to other was so sweete nor so good. But by that their drinke was in their bodies, they loved ech other so well, that their love never departed for weale nor woe. And thus hapened first the love betweene sir Tristram and La beale Isoud, the which love never departed all the daies of their life. And so longe they sailed til by fortune they came nigh a castle that hight Pluere, and there they arrived for to rest them, weeninge to them to have had good harborow. But anon as sir Tristram was within the castle, they were taken prisoners, for the custome of the castle was such, that who that rode by that castle and brought any lady he must needs fight with the lord of that castle which hight sir Brewnor. And if so were that the same sir Brewnor wanne the field, then the strong knight and the lady to be put to death, what so ever they were. And if it were so that the strange knight wanne the field of sir Brewnor, then should he and his lady die. This custome had beene used many winters;

to before. This qualification often included the composition of medicines for less legitimate purposes, as love potions, drinks to produce hatred, or bodily impotency, or derangement of the intellect, and in some cases was extended even to the making of poisons.

[1] *Flacket.*—A flask.

for it was called the castle Pluere, that is to say the weeping castle.

CHAP. XXV.—How sir Tristram and La beale Isoud were in prison, and how sir Tristram fought for the beauty of La beale Isoud and smote off another ladies head.

THUS as sir Tristram and La beale Isoud were in prison, it hapned that a knight and a lady came to them where they were to cherish them. "I have great mervaile," saide sir Tristram unto the knight and the lady, "what is the cause that the lord of this castle holdeth us here in prison? it was never the custome of no place of worship that ever I came in, that when a knight and a lady asked harbor, and they to receive them, and then after to destroy them that be their guests; it is a full evill custome." "Sir," said the knight, "this is the old custome of this castle, that when any knight commeth here, hee must needs fight with our lord of this castle, and he that is the weakest must leese his head. And when that is done, if his lady that he bringeth with him be fouler then our lords wife, she must lease her head, and if she be fairer proved then our ladies, then shall the lady of the castle leese her head." "Now so God me helpe," said sir Tristram, "this is a right foule and a shamefull custome. But one advantage have I then," said sir Tristram, "I have a lady is faire enough, fairer saw I never in all my life dayes, and I doubt not for lacke of beautie she shall not lease her head, and rather then I should leese my head I wil fight for it in a faire field. Wherefore, sir knight, I pray you for to tell your lord that I will be ready on the morrow with my lady, my selfe to battaile, if it be so that I may have my horse and mine armour." "Sir," said the knight, "I undertake that your desire shall be sped right well." And then he said, "Take your rest, and looke that yee be up betimes to make you ready and your lady, for yee shall

lacke no manner of thing that to you belongeth." And therewith he departed, and on the morrow betimes that same knight came unto sir Tristram and put him and his lady out of prison, and brought him horse and armour which was his owne, and bad him make him ready to the field, for all the estates and commons of that lordship were there all ready to behold that battaile and judgment. Then came sir Brewnor, the lord of that castle, holding his lady by the hand all muffled, and asked sir Tristram where his lady was. "For and thy lady be fairer then mine, with thy sword smite off my ladies head, and if my lady bee fairer then thine, with my sword I must strike off her head. And if that I winne thee, yet shall my lady be mine and thou shalt leese thy head." "Sir knight," said sir Tristram, "this is a foule and an horrible custome, and rather then my lady should leese her head, yet had I rather to lose mine owne head." "Nay," said sir Brewnor, "the ladies shall be first shewed together, and the one shall have her judgement." "Nay, I will not so," said sir Tristram, "for here is none that will give rightfull judgement.

"But I doubt not," said sir Tristram, "my ladie is fairer then thine, and that will I prove and make good with mine owne hands. And who soever he bee that will say the contrary, I will prove it upon his head." And therewith sir Tristram shewed La beale Isoud, and turned her thrise about with his naked sword drawen in his hand. And when sir Brewnor saw that, he turned his lady about in the same wise. But when sir Brewnor beheld La beale Isoud, him thought he never saw a fairer ladie. And then he dread that his ladies head should be smitten off. And so all the people that were there present gave judgement that La beale Isoud was the fairer lady and the better made lady. "How now!" said sir Tristram, "me seemeth it were great pittie that my lady should leese her head; but because that thou and thy lady of long time have used this wicked custome, and by you both there have many good knights and ladies

beene destroyed, and for that cause it were no great losse to destroy you both." "So God me helpe," said sir Brewnor, "for to say the truth, thy ladie is fairer then mine, and that me sore repenteth, and so I heare all the people previly say; for of all women I saw never none so faire, and therefore if thou wilt sley my lady, I doubt not but I shall sley thee and have thy lady." "Thou shalt winne her," said sir Tristram, "as deare as ever any knight wan lady, and because of thine owne judgement, as thou wouldest have done unto my lady if she had beene fouler, and because of thine evill custome, give me thy lady," said sir Tristram. And therewithal sir Tristram went unto him, and tooke his lady from him, and with an auke[1] strooke he smote off her head. "Well knight," said sir Brewnor, "now hast thou done me a despite."

CHAP. XXVI.—How sir Tristram fought with sir Brewnor, and at the last smote off his head.

NOW take thy horse, sith I have lost my lady, for I will winne thy lady and I may." And they tooke their horse, and came together as fast as their horses might runne, and sir Tristram smote sir Brewnor from his horse, and lightly he arose up, and as sir Tristram came againe by him, he thrust his horse throughout both the shoulders, that his horse reeled here and there and fell dead to the earth. And ever sir Brewnor ran after to have slaine sir Tristram; but sir Tristram was light and nimble, and voided his horse lightly, and or sir Tristram could dresse his shield and draw out his sword the other gave him three or foure sad strookes; and then they rashed together like two wild boores tracing and traversing full mightily and wisely as two noble knights, for this sir Brewnor was a proved knight, and had beene or then the death of many good knights, that it was pittie that he had

[1] *Auke strooke.*—A cross stroke.

so long endured. And thus they fought hurtling here and there nigh two houres, and either wounded other full sore. Then at the last sir Brewnor rashed upon sir Tristram, and tooke him in his armes, for he trusted much in his strength; and as then sir Tristram was called the strongest and the biggest knight of the world, for he was called bigger then sir Launcelot, but sir Launcelot was better breathed, so anon sir Tristram thrust sir Brewnor downe groveling, and then he unlaced his helme and strooke off his head. And then all they that longed to the castle came to him and did him homage and fealtie, praying him that he would abide there a little while to forbid that foule custome. Sir Tristram graunted therto. The meane while one of the knights of the castle rode unto sir Galahaut, the haut prince, that was sir Brewnors sonne, which was a noble knight, and told him what misadventure his father had and his mother.

CHAP. XXVII.—How sir Galahaut fought with sir Tristram, and how sir Tristram yeilded him and promised to fellowship with sir Launcelot.

THEN came sir Galahault and the king with the hundred knights with him, and thus sir Galahault profered to fight with sir Tristram hand for hand, and so they went to horseback with great courage. Sir Galahault and sir Tristram met togither so mightely that either bare other downe horse and all to the ground, and then they avoided their horses lightly as noble knights, and dressed their shieldes and drew their swords, that with great ire and rancour they lashed together many sad strokes, and one while striking and an other while foyninge, tracing, and traversing like noble knights; and thus they fought long neere halfe a day, and either were sore wounded. At the last sir Tristram waxed light and big, and doubled his strookes, and drove sir Galahault abacke on the one side and on the other, so that he was like to have

beene slaine. With that came the king with the hundred knights, and al that fellowship fell fiercesly upon sir Tristram. When sir Tristram saw so many comming upon him, then he wist well that hee might not endure, and as a wise knight of warre he said unto sir Galahault le haut prince: "Sir, yee shew unto me no knighthood, for to suffer all your men to have to doe with me all at once, and as me seemeth yee be a noble knight of your hands, it is a very great shame to you." "So God me helpe," said sir Galahault unto sir Tristram, "none other way there is but thou must yeeld thee unto mee, or else thou shalt die." "I will rather yeeld me unto you then die," said sir Tristram; "for that is more for the might of your men then for the might of your owne hands." And therewith sir Tristram took his owne sword by the point and put the pommel into the hand of sir Galahault. And therewith came the king with the hundred knights, and there he began hard to assaile sir Tristram. "Let be," said sir Galahault, "be yee not so hardy to touch him, for I have given this knight his life."

"That is unto you a great shame," said the king with the hundred knights, "hath he not slaine your father and your mother?" "As for that," said sir Galahault, "I may not greatly blame him, for my father had him a prisoner, and enforced him to doe battaile with him; and my father had such a custome, that was a shamefull custome, that what knight came there to aske harbor, his lady must needs die, but if shee were fairer than my mother, and if my father overcame that knight he must needs die; this was a shamefull custome and usage, a knight for asking of his harbor to have such harbourage, and for this custome I would never draw about him." "So God me helpe," said the king with the hundred knights, "this was a shamefull custome." "Truely," said sir Galahault, "so seemed me, and mee seemed it had beene great pittie, for I dare say he is the noblest man that beareth life, but if it were the good knight

sir Launcelot du Lake. Now faire knight," said sir Galahault, "I require thee tell me thy name, and of whence thou art, and whether thou wilt?" "Sir," said he, "my name is Tristram de Liones, and from king Marke of Cornewaile I was sent on message to king Anguish of Ireland for to fetch his daughter to be his wife, and here she is ready to goe with me into Cornewaile, and her name is La beale Isoude." Then said sir Galahault unto sir Tristram, "Will yee be found in these marches, and so yee will promise me to goe unto sir Launcelot du Lake and accompany with him, yee shall goe where yee will, and your faire lady with you. And I shall promise you by the faith of my body never in al my dayes shall such customes be more used in this castle as there hath beene used." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "now I let you wit, so God me helpe, I wend yee had beene sir Launcelot du Lake when I saw you first, and therefore I dread you the more; and, sir, I promise you," said sir Tristram, "as soone as I may I will see sir Launcelot and enfellowship[1] me with him, for of all the knights of the world I desire much of his fellowship."

CHAP. XXVIII.—How sir Launcelot du Lake met with king Carados bearing away sir Gawaine, and of the rescew of sir Gawaine.

AND then sir Tristram tooke his leave when he saw his time, and tooke the sea. And in the meane while came word unto sir Launcelot, and unto sir Tristram, that sir Carados the mighty king, which was made like a giaunt, had fought with sir Gawaine and gave him such strookes that he swounded in his sadle, and after that hee tooke him by the coller and pulled him out of his sadle, and bound him fast to the sadle bow, and so rode his way with him towards his castle. And as he rode, by fortune sir Launcelot met with king

[1] *Enfellowship.*—To associate; to enter into fraternity with any one.

Carados, and anon he knew sir Gawaine that lay bound behind him. "Ah!" said sir Launcelot unto sir Gawaine, "how is it with you?" "Never so hard," said sir Gawaine, "unlesse that ye helpe me, for, so God me helpe, without yee rescew me, I know no knight that may but you or sir Tristram." Wherefore sir Launcelot was heavy for sir Gawaines words. And then sir Launcelot bad sir Carados lay downe that knight and fight with him. "Thou art but a foole," said sir Carados, "for I will serve thee in the same wise." "As for that," said sir Launcelot, "spare me not, for I warne thee I will not spare thee." And then he bound sir Gawains hands and feete, and so threw him to the ground, and then he gat his speere of his squire and departed from sir Launcelot to fetch his course. And so either met with other, and brake their speares to their hands, and then they drew out their swords and hurtled together on horsebacke more then an houre. And at the last sir Launcelot smote sir Carados such a buffet upon his helme, that it went through the braine-pan.[1] So then sir Launcelot tooke Carados by the coller and pulled him downe under his horse feete, and then he alighted and pulled off his helme and smote off his head. And then sir Launcelot unbound sir Gawaine. So this tale was told unto sir Galahault and unto sir Tristram. Here may ye heare the noblenesse that followeth sir Launcelot. "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "and I had not this message on hand, with this faire lady, truely I would never stent till I had found sir Launcelot." Then sir Tristram and La beale Isoud went to the sea, and came into Cornewaile, and there all the barrons met them.

[1] *Braine-pan.*—The skull.

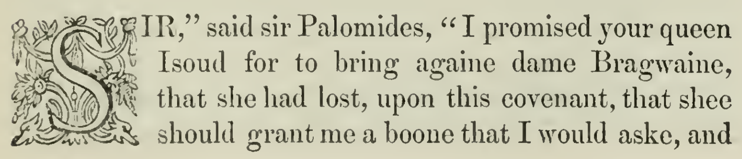
CHAP. XXIX.—Of the wedding of king Marke to La beale Isoud, and of Bragwaine her maide, and of sir Palomides.

AND anon they were right richly wedded with great noblenesse. But ever (as the French booke saith) sir Tristram and La beale Isoud loved ever together. Then was there made great justs and turnements, and many great lords and ladies were at that feast, and sir Tristram was most praised of all other. Thus the feast endured long, and when the feast was done with, in a little while after by the assent of two ladies that were with queene Isoud, they ordeined for hate and envie to destroy dame Bragwaine, which was maiden and gentlewoman unto La beale Isoud, and she was sent into a great forrest for to fetch herbes,[1] and there she was met, and bounde hands and feete unto a tree, and so she was bound three dayes. And by fortune sir Palomides found dame Bragwaine, and there he delivered her from the death, and brought her to a nunry there beside to be recovered. And when Isoud the queene mist her gentlewoman dame Bragwaine, wit yee well she was full heavy as ever was any queene, for of all earthly women she loved her best, because she came with her out of her countrey. And so upon a day the queene Isoud walked into the forrest for to put away her sorrowful thoughts, and there she went her selfe unto a well and made great mone. And sodainly there came sir Palomides unto her, and had heard all her complaint, and

[1] *To fetch herbes.*—The herbs were of course for medicinal purposes. According to the ordinary versions of the story, it was the queen who desired to destroy Brangwaine, for the following cause: Isoude, fearing that king Mark might detect the results of her intercourse with her lover, prevailed upon Brangwaine, who was a virgin, to occupy her place in the king's bed during the first night. Having thus secured herself with regard to her husband, the queen, to guard against the chance of ever being betrayed by her maiden, employed two ruffians to carry her into the forest and murder her there; but they, touched with compassion, only left her tied to a tree.

said, "Madame Isoud, and if yee will graunt me a bone I shall bring unto you dame Bragwaine safe and sound." And the queene was so glad of his proffer that sodainly unadvised she graunted all his asking. "Well, madame," said sir Palomides, "I trust to your promise, and if yee will abide here but halfe an houre, I shall bring her unto you." "I shall abide you here," said the queene Isoud. Then sir Palomides rode foorth his way unto the nunry, and lightly he came againe with dame Bragwaine, but by her good will would not have come againe, because for love of the queene she stood in adventure of her life. Notwithstanding halfe against her will shee went with sir Palomides unto the queene. And when the queene Isoud saw her, she was passing glad. "Now, madame," said sir Palomides, "thinke upon your promise, for I have fulfilled my promise." "Sir Palomides," said the queene, "I wot not what your desire is, but I will that yee wit, how be it I promised you largely, I thought none ill, nor I warne you none ill will I doe." "Madame," said sir Palomides, "as at this time yee shall not know my desire, before my lord your husband there shall yee know that I will have my desire that yee have promised me." And therewith the queene departed, and rode home to the king, and sir Palomides rode after her. And when sir Palomides came before the king, hee said: "Sir king, I require you, as yee be a righteous king, that yee will judge me the right." "Tell me the cause," said the king, "and yee shall have right."

CHAP. XXX.—How sir Palomides demanded the queene Isoud, and how Lambegus rode after to rescew her, and of the escape of queene Isoud.



SIR," said sir Palomides, "I promised your queen Isoud for to bring againe dame Bragwaine, that she had lost, upon this covenant, that shee should grant me a boone that I would aske, and

without grutching or advisement she granted mee." "What say yee, my lady?" said the king. "It is as he saith, so God mee helpe," said the queene; "to say the sooth I promised him his asking for love and joy that I had to see her." "Well, madame," said the king, "and if yee were hasty to grant him what boone hee would aske, I will well that yee performe your promise." Then said sir Palomides, "I will that yee wit that I will have your queene to leade her and governe her where as mee list." Therwith the king stood still, and he bethought him of sir Tristram, and deemed that he would rescew her. And anone hastily king Marke answered, "Take her with the adventures that shall fall of it, for, sir Palomides, as I suppose, thou wilt not long enjoy her."

"As for that," said sir Palomides, "I dare right well abide the adventure." And so for to make short tale, sir Palomides tooke her by the hand and said to her, "Madame, grutch not to go with mee, I desire nothing but your owne promise." "As for that," said the queene Isoud, "I feare not greatly to goe with thee, how be it thou hast me at advantage upon my promise, for I doubt not I shall bee worshipfully rescewed from thee." "As for that," said sir Palomides, "bee it as it may bee." So the queene Isoud was set behind sir Palomides, and so rode his way. Anon king Marke sent for sir Tristram, but he could not be found, for hee was in the forrest at hunting, for that was alwayes his custome, but if he used armes for chase and hunt in forrests. "Alas!" said the king, "now am I shamed for ever, that by mine assent my lady and my queene shall be devoured." Then came forth a knight his name was Lambegus, and he was a knight of sir Tristrams, and then this knight said unto him, "My lord, sith yee have trust in my lord sir Tristram, wit yee well for his sake I will ride after your queene and rescew her, or else I shal be beaten." "Gramercy," said the king, "and I live, sir Lambegus shall deserve il." And then sir Lambegus armed him and rode

after as fast as he might. And then within a while he overtooke sir Palomides, and then sir Palomides left the queen. "What art thou?" said sir Palomides; "art thou sir Tristram?" "Nay," said hee, "I am his servant, and my name is sir Lambegus." "That me repenteth," said sir Palomides, "I had leaver thou haddest beene sir Tristram." "I beleeve thee well," said sir Lambegus, "but when thou meetest with sir Tristram, thou shalt have thy hands full." And then they hurled together and al to brast their speeres in peeces. And then they drew out their swords and hewed on helmes and hawberkes. At the last sir Palomides gave sir Lambegus such a wound that he fel downe to the earth like a dead knight. Then hee looked after La beale Isoud, and shee was gone he wist not where, and wit yee well sir Palomides was never so heavy. So the queene ran into the forrest, and there she found a faire well, and therein she had thought for to have drowned her selfe.

And, as good fortune would, there came a knight to her that had a castle thereby, his name was sir Adthrepe.[1] And when he found the queene in that mischiefe, he rescewed her, and led her into his castle thereby. And when he wist what she was, he armed him lightly and tooke his horse, and said he would be avenged upon sir Palomides, and so he rode untill hee met with him, and there sir Palomides wounded him sore, and by force he made him to tell him the cause why he did battaile with him, and how he had led the queene unto his castell. "Now bring me there," said sir Palomides, "or thou shalt dye of my hands." "Sir," said sir Adthrepe, "I am so wounded that I may not folow you, but ride you this way, and it shall bring you into the castle, and there within is the queene." And then sir Palomides rode still till he came to the castle, and out at a

[1] *Sir Adthrepe.—Sire Adthorp*, Caxton. It represents, no doubt, the English *At Thorpe*, which was a common name, the same as the modern Thorpe.

window La beale Isoud saw sir Palomides, then shee made all the gates to be shut strongly. And when he saw he might not come within the castle, he tooke off both bridell and sadel, and put his horse to pasture, and set him selfe downe at the gate like as it had beene a man that had beene out of his wits which reckoned not of him selfe.

CHAP. XXXI.—How sir Tristram rode after sir Palomides, and how he found him and fought with him, and by the means of La beale Isoud the battaile ceased.



OW turne we to sir Tristram, that when he was come home and wist that La beale Isoud was gone with sir Palomides, wit ye well he was wroth out of measure. "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "this day am I shamed." Then he cried to Governale his man, "Hast thee that I were armed and on horsbacke, for well I know sir Lambegus hath no might nor strength to withstand sir Palomides. Alas! that I am not in his steede." So anon, as he was armed and horsed, sir Tristram and Governale rode after into the forrest, and within a little while he found his knight sir Lambegus almost wounded unto death, and sir Tristram bare him to a foster, and charged him to keepe him well. And then he rode foorth, and there he found sir Adtherpe sore wounded, and he told him how the queene would have drowned herselfe and he had not beene, and how for her sake and love he had taken upon him to doe battaile with sir Palomides. "Where is my lady?" said sir Tristram. "Sir," said the knight, "shee is sure enough within my castle and shee can hold hir within it." "Gramercy," said sir Tristram, "of your great goodnesse." And so he rode till he came nigh to the castle; and then sir Tristram saw where sir Palomides sate at the gate sleeping, and his horse pastured fast afore him. "Now goe thou, Governale," said sir Tristram, "and bid him awake and make him ready." So Governale

rode to him and said, "Sir Palomides, arise and take to thee thy harneis;" but he was in such a study that he heard not what Governale said. So Governale came againe and told sir Tristram that he slept or else hee was mad. "Goe thou againe," said sir Tristram, "and bid him arise, and tell him that I am here his mortall enemy." So Governale rode againe, and put upon him the end of his speare, and said, "Sir Palomides, make you ready, for wit yee well sir Tristram hoveth yonder and sendeth you word he is your mortall enemy." And therewith sir Palomides arose stilly without any word speaking, and gat his horse and sadled and bridled him, and lightly he lept upon him, and gat his speare in his hand, and either feutred their speares and hurled fast together, and there sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides over his horse taile. So lightly sir Palomides put his shield afore him and drew his sword, and there began a strong battaile on both parties, for both they fought for the love of one lady, and ever she lay on the walls and beheld them how they fought out of measure, and either were wounded passing sore, but sir Palomides was much sorer wounded; and thus they fought tracing and traversing more then two houres, that well nigh for sorrow La beale Isoud sowned. "Alas!" said she, "that one I loved and yet doe, and that other I love not, yet it were great pittie that I should see sir Palomides slaine, for well I know that by that time the end be done, sir Palomides is but a dead knight, and because he is not christned, I would bee loth that he should die a Sarasin." And therwith she came downe and besought sir Tristram to fight no more. "Ah, madam," said he, "what meane you, will yee have me shamed? ye know well I will be ruled by you." "I will not your dishonour," said La beale Isoud, "but I would that yee would for my sake spare this unhappie Sarasin, sir Palomides." "Madame," said sir Tristram, "I will leave fighting at this time for your sake." And then she said to sir Palomides, "This shal be thy charge, thou shalt goe out of this coun-

trey while I am therin." "I will obey to your bidding," said sir Palomides, "that is right sore against my will." "Take then thy way," said La beale Isoud, "unto the court of king Arthur, and there recommend me unto queene Guenever, and tell her that I send her word that there be within the land but foure lovers, that is sir Launcelot du Lake and queene Guenever, and sir Tristram de Lyones and queene Isoud."

CHAP. XXXII.—How sir Tristram brought queene Isoude home, and of the debate of king Marke and sir Tristram.

AND so sir Palomides departed with great heavines. And sir Tristram tooke the queene and brought her againe to king Marke, and then was there made great joy of her home-comming. Who was cherished but sir Tristram? And then anon sir Tristram let fetch home sir Lambegus his knight from the fosters house, and it was long or he was hole, but at the last he was well recovered. Thus they lived with joy and play a long while. But ever sir Andret, the which was nigh cosin unto sir Tristram, lay in a watch for to waite betweene sir Tristram and La beale Isoude, for to take them and slaunder them. So upon a day as sir Tristram talked with La beale Isoude in a window, and that espied sir Andret and told it unto the king. Then king Marke tooke in his hand a sword, and came to sir Tristram, and called him false traitour, and would have smitten him. But sir Tristram was nigh him, and ranne underneth his sword, and pulled it out of his hand. And then king Marke cried, "Where are my knights and my men? I charge you sley this traytour knight." But at that time there was not one that would moove for his words. When sir Tristram saw there was not one that would be against him, he shooke the sword at the king, and made countenance as though he would have stricken him. And then king Marke fled, and

sir Tristram folowed him, and smote upon him five or sixe strokes flatlying upon the necke, that hee made him for to fall upon his nose. And then foorthwith sir Tristram went his way and armed him, and tooke his horse and his men, and so rode into the forrest. And there upon a day sir Tristram met with two bretheren that were knights with king Marke, and there hee strooke off the head of the one and wounded the other to the death, and he made him to beare his brothers head upon his helme unto the king, and thirtie mo there he wounded. And when the knight came before the king to say his message, he died there afore the king and the queene. And then king Marke called his counsaile unto him, and asked advise of his barons what was best to doe with sir Tristram. "Sir," said the barrons, in especiall sir Dinas the seneshall, "wee will give you counsaile to send for sir Tristram, for we will that ye wit many men will hould with sir Tristram and hee were hard bestead. And, sir," said sir Dinas, "yee shall understand that sir Tristram is called perelesse and makelesse[1] of any christen knight, and of his might and his hardinesse wee know no where so good a knight, but if it be sir Launcelot du Lake. And if hee depart from your court and goe to king Arthurs court, wit yee well he will get him such friends there that hee will not set by all your malice. And therefore, sir, I counsaile you for to take him to your good grace." "I will well," said the king, "that hee be sent for, that wee may bee friends." And then the barons sent for sir Tristram under a safe conduct. And so when Tristram came unto the king, he was welcome, and no rehersall was made, and there was game and play. And then the king and the queene and sir Tristram went on hunting together.

[1] *Makelesse.*—i. e. without a fellow, or match.

CHAP. XXXIII.—How sir Lamoracke justed with thirtie knights, and how sir Tristram at the request of king Marke smote his horse downe.

THE king and the queene made their pavylions and their tents to be pight in the forrest beside a river, and there was daily hunting and justing, for there were ever thirtie knights ready for to just with all them that came in at that time. And there by fortune came sir Lamoracke de Galis and sir Driaunt, and there sir Driaunt justed right well, but at the last hee had a fall. And then sir Lamoracke proffred to just. And when he began, hee fared so with the thirtie knights that there was not one of them but that hee gave him a fall, and some of them were sore hurt. "I mervaile greatly," said king Marke, "what knight hee is that doth such deeds of armes." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I know him for a noble knight as few now bee living, and his name is sir Lamoracke de Galis." "It were great shame," said king Marke, "that hee should goe thus away, unlesse that some other of you meete with him better." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "mee thinketh it were no worship for a noble man for to have to doe with him, and for because at this time he hath done overmuch for any meane knight living, and therefore as mee seemeth it were great shame and villanie to tempt him any more at this time, in so much as he and his horse are weary both, for the deeds of armes that hee hath done this day; and they be well considered, it were enough for the noble knight sir Launcelot du Lake." "As for that," said king Marke, "I require you as yee love me and my lady the queene, take your armes and just with sir Lamoracke de Galis." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "yee bid me doe a thing that is against knighthood, and well I can deeme that I shall give him a fall; for it is no maistry, for my horse and I be fresh both, and so is not his horse and he, and wit yee well that he will take it for great

unkindnesse, for ever one good knight is loth to take an other at a disadvantage ; but because I will not displease you, as ye require me so will I doe and obey your commandement." And sir Tristram armed him anon, and tooke his horse and put him foorth, and there sir Lamoracke met with him right mightily, and what with the might of his owne speare and of sir Tristrams speare, sir Lamorackes horse fell to the earth, and he sitting in the sadell. And so anon as lightly as hee might he avoided the sadell and his horse, and put his shield afore him and drew his sword, and then he said to sir Tristram, "Alight, thou knight, and thou darest." "Nay," said sir Tristram, "I will no more have to doe with thee, for I have done to thee overmuch unto my dishonour and to thy worship." "As for that," said sir Lamoracke, "I can thee no thanke sith thou hast forejusted[1] me on horsbacke; I require thee, and thou bee sir Tristram, fight with mee on foote." "I will not," said sir Tristram, "and wit yee well my name is sir Tristram de Liones, and well I know thou art sir Lamoracke de Galis; and this that I have done to thee was against my will, but I was required thereto, but to say that I will doe at thy request, as at this time I will have no more to doe with thee, for me shameth of that I have done." "As for the shame," said sir Lamoracke, "on thy part or on mine beare thou it and thou wilt, for though a mares son hath failed me, now a queenes sonne shall not faile thee; and therefore if thou be such a knight as men call thee, I require thee alight and fight with me." "Sir Lamoracke," said sir Tristram, "I understand your heart is great, and yee have a cause why, to say the soth, for it would grieve me and any knight should keep himselfe fresh and then to smite downe a weary knight, for that knight nor horse was never formed that alway might stand or endure ; and therefore," said sir Tristram, "I will not have to doe with you,

[1] *Forejusted.*—Defeated in justing. See before, p. 41. The edition of 1634 has printed it, erroneously, *afore justed.*

for me forethinketh of what I have done." "As for that," said sir Lamoracke, "I shall quite you and I see my time."

CHAP. XXXIV.—How sir Lamoracke sent an horne to king Marke, in despite of sir Tristram, and how sir Tristram was driven into a chappell.

O he departed from him with sir Driaunt, and by the way they met with a knight that was sent from Morgan le Faye to king Arthur, and this knight had a faire horne,[1] all garnished with gold, and the horne had such a vertue that there might no lady nor gentlewoman drinke of that horne but if she were true to her husband, and if shee were false shee should spill all the drinke, and if shee were true unto her lord shee might drinke peaceably. And because of queene Guenever, and in the despite of sir Launcelot du Lake, this horne was sent unto king Arthur, and by force sir Lamoracke made that knight to tell all that cause why he bare that horne. And then said sir Lamoracke unto that knight: "Now shalt thou beare that horne unto king Marke, or else choose thou to die for it; for I tell thee plainely that, in the despite and reproofe of sir Tristram, thou shalt beare that horne unto king Marke his unkle. And say thou unto him that I send it him for to assay his lady, and if that she be true unto him he shall prove her." So the knight went his way unto king Marke, and brought him that rich horne, and told him that sir Lamoracke de Galis sent it him, and

[1] *A faire horne.*—This incident of the enchanted horn was a very popular story in the Middle Ages, and was made the subject of separate lays and ballads; but it is always represented as happening at the court of king Arthur, where queen Guenever became the first victim. Our text is an ingenious adaptation, which saves the honour of king Arthur's court at the expense of that of king Mark. The old French *Lai du Corn*, by the trouvère Robert Biker, and a longer German poem on the same subject, are printed in Ferdinand Wolf's learned and valuable work, *Uber die Lais*, Heidelberg, 1841.

thereto he told him the vertue of that horne. And then the king made La beale Isoud his queene to drinke thereof, and an hundred ladies moe, and there were but foure ladies of all those that dranke cleane. "Alas!" said king Marke, "this is a greate despite," and so swore a great othe that the queene should be brent, and all the other ladies also. Then the barons gathered them together, and said plainely they would not have all the ladies brent for an horne made by sorcerie, that came from as false a sorceresse and witch as then was any living. For that horne did never good, but caused strife and debate, and alwaies in her daies she had beene an enemy unto all true lovers. So there were many knights that made their avow, if ever they met with Morgan le Fay, that they would shew her short curtesie. Also sir Tristram was passing wroth that sir Lamoracke sent that horne unto king Marke, for wel he knew that it was done in the despite of him, and therfore he thought to quite sir Lamoracke. And then alwaies sir Tristram used daily and nightly for to goe to queene Iseude when he might; and ever sir Andret his cosin watched him night and day for to take him with La beale Isoud. And so upon a night sir Andret his cosin espied the houre and the time when sir Tristram went to his lady. And then sir Andret gat unto him twelve knights, and at midnight hee set upon sir Tristram secretly and sodainely, and there sir Tristram was taken naked abed with La beale Isoud the queene, and then was he bound hand and foote, and so was he kept untill day. And then, by the assent of king Marke, and of sir Andret, and of some of the barons, sir Tristram was led unto a chappell which stood upon the sea rockes, and there for to take his judgement; so he was led and bound with fortie knights. And when sir Tristram saw there was none other remedy, but that needs he must die, then said he unto them all: "Faire lords, remember what I have done for the countrey of Cornewaile, and in what jeoperdy I have beene in for the weale of you all. For

when I fought for the truage of Cornewaile with sir Marhaus the good knight, I was promised to be better rewarded, when yee all refused the battaile ; therefore, as yee are good and gentill knights, see me not thus shamefully to die, for it is shame unto all knighthood thus for to see me die. For I dare well say," said sir Tristram, "that I never yet met with no knight but that I was as good as hee or some what better then hee." "Fie upon thee!" said sir Andret, "false traytour that thou art with thy vaunting ; for all thy boast that thou makest yet shalt thou die this day." "O, Andret, Andret!" said sir Tristram, "thou shouldst bee my best friend, and now thou art to me full unfriendly, but and there were no mo but thou and I, thou wouldst not put mee to death." "No," said sir Andret, and therewith he drew his sword and would have slaine him. When sir Tristram saw him make such countenance, hee looked upon both his hands that were fast bound unto two knights, and sodainely hee pulled them both to him and unwrast his hands, and then he lept unto his cosin Andret, and tooke his sword out of his hands, and then he smote sir Andret that hee fell downe to the earth, and so sir Tristram fought untill he had slaine ten knights. And then sir Tristram gat the chappell, and kept it mightily. Then the cry was great, and the people drew fast to sir Andret, more then an hundred. When sir Tristram saw the people draw unto him, hee remembred that he was naked, and shut fast the chappell doore, and brake the barres of a window, and so he lept out and fell upon the cragges in the sea. And so at that time sir Andret nor none of his fellowes might get to him at that time.

CHAP. XXXV.—How sir Tristram was holpen by his men, and of queene Isoud, which was put in a lazar-coate, and how sir Tristram was hurt.

SO when they were departed, Governale and sir Lambegus and sir Sentraile de Lushon, which were sir Tristrams men, sought their maister. And when they heard he was escaped, then they were passing glad, and on the rockes they found him, and with towels they pulled him up; and then sir Tristram asked them where La beale Isoud was, for hee wend shee had beene led away of sir Andrets people. "Sir," said Governale, "she is put in a lazar-coate."[1] "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "that is a full ungodly place for such a faire lady, and, if I may, she shall not be there long." And then anon sir Tristram tooke his men, and went where as La beale Isoud was, and fetcht her away, and brought her into a forrest to a faire mannor, and there sir Tristram abode with her. So the good knight bad his men to goe from him, for at this time I may not helpe you. So they departed all save Governale. And so upon a day sir Tristram went into the forrest for to desport him, and then it hapned that he fell there on sleepe. And it fortuned there came a man that sir Tristram afore had slaine his brother; and when this man had found him, he shot him through the shoulder with an arrow. And therewith sir Tristram lept up and slew that man. And in the meane while it was told to king Marke how sir Tristram and La beale Isoud were in the foresaid mannor, and as soone as hee might, thither he came with many good knights to have slaine sir Tristram. And when he came there he was gone, and then he

[1] *A lazar-coate.*—The cottage of a lazar or leper. The lazars were compelled to live apart from other people, and there was usually a hospital for them a little distance outside a town. Sometimes they lived in mud cots or hovels in solitary places, near roads, where they might obtain charity from travellers. Such appears to have been the cot in the wood in which queen Isoude was put.

took La beale Isoud home with him, and kept her so straite that by no meanes shee might never wit nor send unto sir Tristram, nor he unto her. Then when sir Tristram came toward the old mannor, he found the trace of many horses, and thereby he thought well that his lady was gone. And then sir Tristram tooke great sorrow, and was sore displeased, and endured with great paine long time, for the arrow that he was hurt withall was envenomed.

Then by the meanes of La beale Isoud she tooke[1] a lady that was cosin unto dame Bragwaine, and she came unto sir Tristram, and told him that hee might not be hole by no meanes, "for thy lady La beale Isoud may not helpe thee, therefore she biddeth you in all the hast to goe into Britaine to king Howell, and there yee shall find his daughter Isoud le blaunch Mains, and she shall helpe you." Then sir Tristram and Governale gat them shipping, and so sailed into Britaine. And when king Howell wist that it was sir Tristram, hee was right glad of him. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I am come into this countrey for to have helpe of your daughter, for it is tolde me that there is none other that may helpe me but shee." And so within a while she healed him.

CHAP. XXXVI.—How sir Tristram served in warre king Howell of Britaine, and slew his adversary in the fielde.

THERE was an earle which hight Grip, and this earle made great war upon king Howell of Britaine, and put the king to the worse, and besieged him. And upon a time sir Kay Hedius, that was sonne to king Howell, as he issued out he was sore wounded to the death. Then Governale went unto the king and said, "Sir, I counsaile you to desire my lord sir Tristram as in your need for to helpe you." "I will doe by your counsaile," said the king. And so he went unto sir

[1] *Tooke.—Told,* Caxton.

Tristram, and prayed him in his warres for to helpe him, "for my sonne sir Kay Hedius may not goe into the field." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I will goe to the field and doe what I may." Then sir Tristram issued out of the towne with such fellowship as he could make, and did there such deeds that all Britaine spake of him. And then at the last by the great might and force he slew the earle Grip with his owne hands, and he slew more then an hundred knights that same day. And sir Tristram was then right worshipfully received with procession. Then king Howell embraced him in his armes, and said, "Sir Tristram, all my kingdome will I resigne unto you." "God defend it," said sir Tristram, "for I am beholding unto you for your daughters sake to doe for you." Then by the meanes of king Howell and his son sir Kay Hedius, by their great proffers, there grew great love betweene Isoud le blaunch Mains and sir Tristram, for that lady was both good and faire and a woman of noble blood and fame. And for because that sir Tristram had such cheere and riches, and all other pleasaunces that he had, hee had almost forsaken La beale Isoud. And so upon a time sir Tristram agreed to wed Isoud le blaunch Mains, and so at the last they were wedded and solemnely held their mariage. And so when they were both abed together, then sir Tristram remembred himselfe of his first lady La beale Isoud, and then hee tooke such a thought so sudainely that he was all abashed and dismaied, and other cheere he made her none but with clepping and kissing, and as for other fleshly conjunction, sir Tristram never thought, nor never had to doe with her. And the lady wend that there had beene no pleasaunce but kissing and clepping. In the meane while there was a knight in Britaine, his name was sir Suppinabiles, and he came over the sea into England, and then he came unto the court of king Arthur, and there he met with sir Launcelot du Lake, and told him of the mariage of sir Tristram. And then said sir Launcelot, "Fye upon him, untrue knight to his

lady, that so noble a knight as sir Tristram is should be found false unto his first lady La beale Isoud queene of Cornewaile; but say to him," said sir Launcelot, "that of all knights in the world I loved him most and had most joy of him, and all was for his noble deeds, and let him wit the love betweene him and me is done for ever, and I give him warning from this day foorth to bee his mortall enemy."

CHAP. XXXVII.—How sir Suppinabiles told sir Tristram how he was defamed in the court of king Arthur, and of sir Launcelot du Lake.

THEN departed sir Suppinabiles for to goe againe into Britaine, and there he found sir Tristram and tolde him that he had beene in king Arthurs court. Then said sir Tristram, "Heard yee any thing of me?" "So God me helpe," said sir Suppinabiles, "there I heard sir Launcelot speake of you great shame, and that yee be a false knight to your lady, and he bad me to doe you to wit that he will be your mortall enemy in every place hee may meete you." "That me repenteth," said sir Tristram, "for of all knights I loved to be in his fellowship." So sir Tristram made great mone, and was ashamed that noble knights should defame him for his ladies sake.

And this meane while La beale Isoud made a letter unto the queene Guenever, complaining her of the untruth of sir Tristram, and how he had wedded the kings daughter of Britaine. Queene Guenever sent her another letter, and bad her be of good cheere, for she should have joy after sorrow, for sir Tristram was so noble a knight called, that by the crafts of sorcery ladies would make such noble men for to wed them, "but in the end," said queene Guenever, "it shall bee thus, that hee shall hate her and love you better then ever he did before."

So leave we sir Tristram in Britaine, and speake we of

sir Lamoracke de Galis, that as he sailed, his ship fell on a rocke and perished, all save sir Lamorake and his squire, and there he swamme mightily, and fishers of the ile of Servage tooke him up, and his squire was drowned, and those fishers had great labour to save sir Lamoraks life for all the comfort that they could doe. And the lord of that ile hight sir Naban le Noyre, which was a great mighty gyant. And this sir Naban hateth all the knights of king Arthur, and in no wise he will doe them favour. And these fishers told sir Lamorake all the guise of sir Naban, and how there came never knight of king Arthurs but he destroyed him. And at the last battaile that he did was slaine sir Nanowne le Petite, the which he put unto a right shamefull death in despite of king Arthur, for he was drawen limmeal.[1] "That forethinketh[2] me sore," said sir Lamorake, "for that knights death, for hee was my cosin, and if I were at mine ease as well as ever I was, I would revenge his death." "Peace," said the fishers, "and make here no words, for or yee depart from hence sir Naban must know that yee have beene heere, or else wee should dye for his sake." "So that I bee whole," said sir Lamorake, "of my disease that I have taken on the sea, I will that ye tell him that I am a knight of king Arthurs court, for I was never so affeard to deny my lord."

CHAP. XXXVIII.—How sir Tristram and his wife arrived in Wales, and how he met there with sir Lamorake.

NOW turne we againe unto sir Tristram, that upon a day he tooke a little barge and his wife Isoud la blaunch Mains, with sir Kay Hedius her brother, to play them in the coasts. And when they were from the land, there arose a wind that drove them into the coast of Wales upon the ile of Servage

[1] *Limmeal.*—i. e. one limb from another.
[2] *Forethinketh.*—Repenteth.

where as sir Lamoracke was, and there the barge all to-roved,[1] and there dame Isoud was hurt. And as well as they might they gat into the forrest, and there by a well hee saw sir Segwarides and a damosell, and then either saluted other. "Sir," said sir Segwarides, "I know you for sir Tristram de Liones, the man that I have most cause to hate in the world, because yee departed the love betweene me and my wife; but as for that," said sir Segwarides, "I will never hate a noble knight for a light lady, and therefore I pray you be my friend, and I will be your man unto my power; for wit yee well yee are hard bested in this valey, and we have enough to doe either of us to succour other." And then sir Segwarides brought sir Tristram unto a lady thereby that was borne in Cornewaile, and shee told him all the perils of that valey, and how there came never knight but hee was taken prisoner or slaine. "Wit ye well, faire lady," said sir Tristram, "that I slew sir Marhaus and delivered Cornewaile from the truage of Ireland, and I am he that delivered the king of Ireland from sir Blamor de Galis, and I am hee that beat sir Palomides, and wit yee well I am sir Tristram de Lyones, that by the grace of God shall deliver this wofull ile of Servage." So sir Tristram was well eased; then one told him there was a knight of king Arthurs that was wracked on the rockes. "What is his name?" said sir Tristram. "Wee wot not," said the fishers, "but hee keepeth it no counsell but that hee is a knight of king Arthurs, and by the mighty lord of this ile he setteth nothing." "I pray you," said sir Tristram, "that ye may bring him hither that I may see him, and if he be any of the knights of king Arthur I shall know him." Then the lady prayed the fishers to bring him to her place.

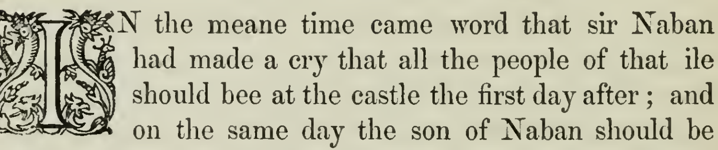
So on the morrow early they brought him thither in a fishers rayment. And as soone as sir Tristram saw him hee smiled upon him and knew him well, but hee knew not

[1] *To-roved.*—Split to pieces.

sir Tristram. "Faire knight," said sir Tristram, "mee seemeth by your cheere ye have beene diseased but late, and also me thinketh I should know you heretofore." "I wil wel," said sir Lamorake, "that ye have seene me and met with me." "Faire sir," said sir Tristram, "tell me your name upon covenant." "I will tell you," said sir Lamorake, "so that yee will tell me whether yee be lord of this ile or no, that is called sir Naban le Noyr." "For sooth," said sir Tristram, "I am not hee nor I hold not of him; I am his foe as well as yee bee, and so shall I be found or I depart out of this ile." "Well," said sir Lamorake, "sith yee have said so largely to me, my name is sir Lamorake de Galis, son unto king Pellinore." "For sooth I trow well," said sir Tristram; "for and yee had said otherwise, I knew the contrary." "What are yee," said sir Lamorake, "that knoweth me?" "I am sir Tristram de Lyones." "Ah! sir, remember yee not of the fall yee gave me once, and after yee refused me to fight on foote?" "That was not for feare I had of you," said sir Tristram, "but me shamed at that time to have more adoe with you, for me seemed yee had enough; but, sir Lamorake, for my kindnesse yee put many ladies to a reproofe, when yee sent the horne from Morgan le Fay to king Marke, where as yee did this in despite of me." "Well," said he, "and it were to doe againe so would I doe, for I had leaver strife and debate fell in king Markes court rather then in king Arthurs court, for the honour of both courts be not like." "As to that," said Tristram, "I know well. But that that was done, it was for despite of mee, but all your malice I thanke God hath not greatly hurt mee," said sir Tristram; "yee shall leave your malice and so will I, and let us assay how we may winne worship betweene you and mee upon this gyant sir Naban le Noyre, that is lord of this iland, for to destroy him." "Sir," said sir Lamorake, "now I understand your manhood; it may not bee false that all men say, for of your bountie, noblenesse, and wor-

ship, of all knights yee are peerelesse, and for courtesie and gentlenesse I shewed you ungentilnesse, and that me repenteth."

CHAP. XXXIX.—How sir Tristram fought with sir Naban, and overcame him, and made sir Segwarides lord of the ile.



IN the meane time came word that sir Naban had made a cry that all the people of that ile should bee at the castle the first day after; and on the same day the son of Naban should be made a knight, and all the knights of that valey and thereabout should be there for to just, and all they of the realme of Logris[1] should be there for to just with them of North Wales. And thither came five hundred knights, and they of the country brought there sir Lamoracke, sir Tristram, sir Kay Hedius, and sir Segwarides, for they durst not other wise doe. And then sir Naban lent sir Lamoracke horse and armour at sir Lamorackes desire, and sir Lamoracke justed and did such deeds of armes, that Naban and all the people said that there was never knight that ever they saw doe such deeds of armes. For, as the French booke saith, he forjusted all that were there, for the most part of five hundred of knights, that none abode him in his sadle. Then sir Naban proffered to play with him his play, "for I saw never no knight doe so much upon one day." "I will well," said sir Lamorake, "play as I may, but I am weary and sore bruised." And there either gate a speare, but sir Naban would not encounter with sir Lamorake, but smite his horse in the forehead and slew him, and then sir Lamorake went on foote and turned his shield and drew his sword, and there began a strong battaile on foote. But sir Lamorake was so sore bruised and short breathed that he traced and traversed somewhat abacke. "Faire fellow,"

[1] *Logris.*—Loegria was the Welsh name for the part of Britain occupied by the Saxons.

said sir Naban, "hold thy hands and I shall shew thee more courtesie then ever I shewed knight, because I have seene this day thy noble knighthood, and therefore stand thou by, and I will wit whether one of thy fellowes will have to doe with me." And when sir Tristram heard that, he stept forth and said, "Naban, lend me horse and sure armure, and I will have to doe with thee." "Well, fellow," said sir Naban, "goe thou into yonder pavilion and take the best thou findest there, and I shall play a mervailous play with thee." Then said sir Tristram, "Looke yee play well, or else peradventure I shall learne thee a new play." "That is wel said, fellow," said Naban. So when sir Tristram was armed as him liked best, and well shielded and sworded, he dressed to him on foote, for well he knew that sir Naban would not abide a strooke with a speare, therefore hee would slay every knights horse. "Now, faire fellow," said sir Naban, "let us goe play." So then they fought long on foote, tracing and traversing, smiting and foyning, long without any rest. At the last sir Naban prayed him for to tell him his name. "Sir Naban, I tell thee my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, a knight of Cornewaile under king Marke." "Thou art welcome," said sir Naban, "for of all knights I most desire to fight with thee or with sir Launcelot." So then they went egerly together, and sir Tristram slew sir Naban, and so forthwith hee lept to his sonne and strooke off his head. And then all the country said they would hold of sir Tristram. "Nay," said sir Tristram, "I will not so, for heere is a worshipfull knight sir Lamorake de Galis, that for mee hee shall be lord of this country, for he hath done heere great deeds of armes." "Nay," said sir Lamorake, "I will not be lord of this countrey, for I have not deserved it as well as yee, therefore give it where yee will, for I will none thereof."

"Well," said sir Tristram, "sith that yee nor I will not have it, let us give it to him that doth not so well deserve

it." "Doe as yee list," said sir Segwarides, "for the gift is yours, for I will none have and I had deserved it." So it was given to sir Segwarides, wherefore he thanked him, and so was he lord and worshipfully he ruled it. And then sir Segwarides delivered all the prisoners, and set good governance in that valey; and so he returned into Cornewaile and told king Marke and La beale Isoud how sir Tristram had advanced him to the ile of Servage, and there he proclaimed in all Cornewaile of all the adventures of these two knights, so was it openly knowne. But full woe was La beale Isoud when she heard tell that sir Tristram was wedded to Isoude le blanche Mains.

CHAP. XL.—How sir Lamorake departed from sir Tristram, and how he met with sir Frol, and after with sir Launcelot.

SO sir Lamorake tooke his leave and rode toward king Arthurs court, and sir Tristram and his wife and Kay Hedius tooke a vessell and sailed into Britaine unto king Howell, where he was welcome. And when hee heard of their adventures, hee marvailed of his noble deeds. Now turne wee to sir Lamorake, that when he was departed from sir Tristram, he rod out of the forrest till he came unto an hermitage. When the hermit saw him, he asked him from whence he came. Sir Lamorake said, "I came from this valey." "Sir," said he, "therefore I greatly mervaile, for this twenty winters I saw never no knight passe this countrey, but hee was either slaine or vilainously wounded, or passed as a poore prisoner." "Those evill customes," said sir Lamorake, "are fordone,[1] for sir Tristram slew your lord sir Naban and his son." Then was the hermit glad and all his brethren, for hee said, "There was never such a tyrant among christian men, and therefore," said the hermit, "this valey and fraunchiese we will hold of sir Tristram." So

[1] *Fordone.*—Undone; abolished.

on the morrow sir Lamorake departed. And as hee rod he saw foure knights fight against one, and that one knight defended him well, but at the last the foure knights had him downe. And then sir Lamorake went betweene them, and asked them why they would slay that one knight, and said, "it was shame for foure against one." "Thou shalt well wit," said the foure knights, "that he is false." "That is your tale," said sir Lamorake, "when I heare him speake also I will say as yee say." Then said sir Lamorake, "Ah, knight, can yee not excuse you but that yee are a false knight?" "Sir," said he, "yea, I can excuse me both with my words and with my hand, that will I make good upon one of the best of them, my body to his body." Then spake they all at once, "We will not jeopard our bodies for thee, but wit thou well if king Arthur were here himselfe, it would not lye in his power to save thy life." "That is too much," said sir Lamorake, "but many speake more behind him then they will say to his face, and because of your words yee shall understand that I am one of the simplest of king Arthurs court, in the worship of my lord now doe your part, and in despite of you I will rescew him." And then they lashed all at once to sir Lamorake, but anon at two strooks sir Lamorake slew two of them, and then the other two fled.

Then sir Lamorake turned againe to that knight, and demanded his name. "Sir knight," said he, "my name is sir Frol of the out iles." Then hee rode with sir Lamorake and bare him company. And as they rode by the way, they saw a seemely knight that came riding against them, and all in white. "Ah!" said sir Froll, "yonder knight justed lately with me, and smote me downe from my horse, and therefore I will just with him." "Yee shall not," said sir Lamorake, "by my counsaile, and ye will tell me your quarrell whether yee justed at his request, or hee at yours." "Nay," said sir Froll, "I justed with him at mine owne request." "By my faith," said sir Lamorake, "then I

will counsell you to meddle no more with him, for me seemeth by his countenance[1] he should be a noble knight and no japer,[2] for me thinketh he should bee of the round table." "For all that I will not spare him," said sir Froll. And then hee cryed on him and said, "Sir knight, make thee ready to just." "It needeth not," said the knight, "for I have no lust;" but yet they feutred their speares, and there the white knight overthrew sir Froll, and then he rode his way a soft pace. Then sir Lamorake rode after him, and prayed him to tell him his name, "for mee seemeth yee should be of the fellowship of the round table." "Upon a covenant," said hee, "I will tell you my name, so that yee will not discover my name, and also that yee will tell mee yours." Then said he, "My name is sir Lamorake de Galis." "And my name is Lancelot du Lake." Then they put up their swords and kissed heartily together, and either made great joy of other. "Sir," said sir Lamorake, "and it please you, I will doe you service." "God defend," said sir Lancelot, "that any of so noble a blood as yee be should doe mee service." Then said he more, "I am in a quest that I must doe myselfe alone." "Now God speed you well," said sir Lamorake, and so they departed. Then sir Lamorake came to sir Froll and horsed him againe. "What knight is that?" said sir Froll. "Sir," said hee, "it is not for you to know, nor it is no point of my charge." "Yee are the most uncurtuous," said sir Froll, "therefore will I depart from you." "Yee may doe as yee list," said sir Lamorake, "and yet by my company yee have saved the fairest flower of your garland." So they departed.

[1] *Countenance.*—Bearing. [2] *Japer.*—Jester; pretender.

CHAP. XLI.—How sir Lamorake slew sir Froll, and of the covetous[1] fighting with sir Belleance his brother.

THEN within two or three dayes sir Lamorake found a knight at a well sleeping, and a lady sat with him and waked. Right so came sir Gawaine, and tooke the knights lady, and set her up behind his squire. So sir Lamorake rode after sir Gawaine, and said to sir Gawaine, "Turne againe." And then said sir Gawaine, "What will yee doe with me? for I am nephew to king Arthur." "Sir," said hee, "for that cause I will spare you, or else that lady should abide with me, or else yee should just with mee." Then sir Gawaine turned him and ranne to him that ought[2] the lady with his speare. But the knight with pure might smote downe sir Gawaine, and tooke his lady with him. All this sir Lamorake saw, and said to himselfe, "But and I revenge my fellow he will say dishonour of me in king Arthurs court." So sir Lamorake returned and proffered that knight to just. "Sir," said hee, "I am ready." And so they came together with all their might, and there sir Lamorake smote the knight through both sides, that he fell downe dead to the ground. Then the lady rode to that knights brother, that hight sir Belleaunce le Orgulus, that dwelled fast thereby, and then she told him how his brother was slaine. "Alas!" said hee, "I will bee revenged." And so armed him and mounted on horsebacke, and within a while he overtooke sir Lamorake, and bad him turne and leave the lady, "for thou and I must play a new play, for thou hast slaine my brother sir Froll, that was a better knight then ever thou were." "It might well be," said sir Lamorake, "but this day in the field I was found better." So they rode together and unhorsed each other, and dressed their shields and drew their swords, and fought mightily two houres long, as two mighty knights. Then sir Belleaunce prayed

[1] *Covetous.*—Greedy; eager. [2] *Ought.*—Owned.

him to tell him his name. "Sir," said he, "my name is sir Lamorake de Galis." "Ah!" said sir Belleaunce, "thou art the same that I most hate in the world, for I slew my sonnes for thy sake, where as I saved thy life, and now thou hast slaine my brother sir Froll. Alas! how should I bee accorded with thee, therefore defend thee, for thou shalt dye, there is none other remedy." "Alas!" said sir Lamorake, "full well I ought to know you, for yee are the man that most hath done for mee." And therewith sir Lamorake kneeled downe and besought him of grace. "Arise," said sir Belleaunce, "or else there as thou kneelest I shall slay thee." "That shall not neede," said sir Lamorake, "for I will yeeld me unto you, not for feare of you, nor for your strength, but your goodnesse maketh me full loth to have to doe with you; wherefore I require you for Gods sake, and for the high order of knighthood, forgive mee all that I have offended to you." "Alas!" said sir Belleaunce, "leave thy kneeling or else I shall slay thee without mercy." Then they dressed them againe to battaile, and either wounded other sore, that all the ground was bloody where as they fought. And at the last sir Belleaunce withdrew him backe, and sat him downe softly upon a little hill, for hee was so faint for bleeding that hee might not stand. Then sir Lamorake threw his shield upon his backe, and asked him, "What cheere?" "Well," said sir Belleaunce. "Ah, sir, yet shall I shew you favour in your disease."[1] "Ah, sir Belleaunce," said sir Lamorake, "thou art a foole, for and I had thee at such a vantage as thou hast had mee, I would slay thee, but thy gentlenesse is so good and large that I must needs forgive thee thine evill will." And then sir Lamorake kneeled downe and unlaced first his umberere,[2] and then his owne; and then either kissed other with weeping teares. Then sir Lamo-

[1] *Disease.—Male-ease,* Caxton. Uneasiness; discomfort.

[2] *Umberere.*—The moveable part of the helmet which shaded or covered the knight's face.

rake led sir Belleaunce unto an abbey fast by, and there sir Lamorake would not depart from sir Belleaunce till he was hole. And then they swore together that none of them should never fight more one against the other. So sir Lamorake departed, and went unto the court of king Arthur.

CHAP. XLII.—How a younge man came into the court of king Arthur, and how sir Kay called him in scorne La-cote-male-taile.

THERE came into the court of king Arthur a young man and a big made, and he was richly beseene, and he desired to be made knight of king Arthur; but his over garment sate overthwartly, how bee it it was good and rich cloth of gold. "What is your name?" said king Arthur. "Sir," said the young man, "my name is Brewnor le Noyre, and within short space yee shall know that I am come of good kin." "It may well bee," said sir Kay the seneshall, "but in mockage,[1] yee shall be called La-cote-male-taile, that is as much to say, the evill shapen coate." "It is a great thing that thou askest," said the king; "and for what cause wearest thou that rich coate? tell mee, for I can well thinke for some cause it is." "Sir," said he, "I had a father a noble knight, and upon a day as he rode on hunting, it hapned him for to lay him downe to sleepe. And there came a knight that had beene long his enemy; and when he saw he was fast on sleepe hee all to-hewed[2] him, and this same coate had my father on the same time, and that maketh this coate to fit so evill upon me, for the strookes be on it as I found it, and never shall bee amended for mee. Thus, to have my fathers death in remembrance, I weare this coate till I be revenged. And because yee are called the most noble king of the world, I came to you that yee would make me knight." "Sir," said sir Lamorake and sir Gaheris, "it were well done to make him knight, for

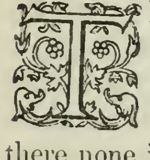
[1] *Mockage.*—Mockery. [2] *To-hewed.*—Hewed to death.

him beseemeth well of person and of countenance that he shall prove a good man, and a good and a mighty knight; for, sir, as yee bee remembred even such one was sir Launcelot du Lake, when he came first into this court, and full few of us knew from whence he came, and now he is proved the most man of worship that is in the world, and all your court and all your round table is by sir Launcelot worshipped and amended more then by any knight now living." "That is truth," said king Arthur, "and to morrow at your request I shall make him knight." So on the morrow there was an hart found, and thither rode king Arthur with a company of knights to sley the hart. And this young man that sir Kay named La-cote-male-taile was there left behind with queene Guenever; and so by sodaine adventure there was a mighty lyon kept in a strong towre of stone,[1] and it happened that this lyon at that time brake loose, and came hurling after the queene and her knights. And when the queene saw the lyon, she cried and fled, and prayed her knights to rescew her, and there was none of them all but twelve that abode, and all the other fled. Then said La-cote-male-tayle, "Now I see well that all coward knights be not dead." And therewith he drew out his sword and dressed him before the lyon. And that lyon gaped wide and came upon him ramping to have slaine him. And he smote him on the middest of the head such a mighty stroke, that he clove it in sunder, and so the lyon fell downe dead. Then was it told the queene how that the young man that sir Kay named La-cote-male-taile had slaine the lyon. With that king Arthur came home, and, when the queene told him of that adventure, he was well pleased, and said, "Upon paine of my life, he shall prove a noble man, and a faithfull knight, and a true of his pro-

[1] *A mighty lyon.*—The keeping of lions and other wild beasts is alluded to from time to time in the medieval romances, and is the subject of frequent traditions connected with old castles. The incident here related is exactly identical with one in the life of Hereward the Saxon.

misse." And then the king foorthwith made him knight. "Now, sir," said this young knight, "I require you and all the knights of your court, that yee call me by none other name but La-cote-male-taile, in so much as sir Kay hath named me so, and so will I be called." "I assent well therto," said the king.

CHAP. XLIII.—How a damosell came unto king Arthurs court and desired a knight to take on him an enquest, which La-cote-male-taile enterprised.



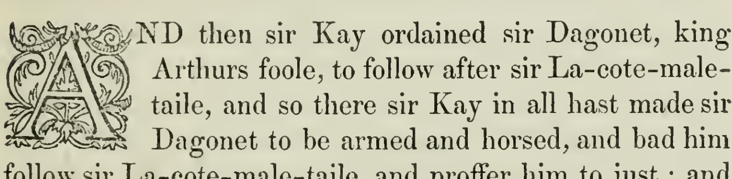
HEN on the same day there came a damosell into the kings court, and shee brought with her a great blacke shield, with a white hand in the middest holding a sword; other picture was there none in that shield. When king Arthur saw her, he asked her from whence shee came, and what shee would have in his court. "Sir," said the damosell, "I have ridden long and many a day with this blacke shield, and many sundry wayes, and for this cause I am come unto your court. And he that ought this shield was a right good knight, and this knight had undertaken to acheive a great deed of armes, and so it misfortuned him that another good knight met with him by sudaine adventure, and there they fought long, and either wounded other passing sore, and they were so weary that they left that battaile on even hand. So this knight which ought this shield saw there was none other way but that he must die, and then he commanded me to beare this shield unto the court of king Arthur, he requiring and praying some good knight to take this shield, and that he would fulfill the quest that he was in." "Now what say yee unto the quest," said king Arthur, "is there any of you here that will take upon him for to weld this blacke shield?" Then was there not one that would speake a word. Then sir Kay tooke the blacke shield in his hand. "Sir knight," said the damosell, "what is your name?"

"Wite yee well," said he, "my name is sir Kay the seneshall, that well is knowne in many places." "Sir," said the damoisell, "lay downe that shield, for wit yee well it falleth not for you,[1] for hee must bee a better knight then yee that shall weld this shield." "Damosell," said sir Kay, "wit yee well I tooke this shield in my hands by your leave for to behould it, not to that entent, but goe yee where soever yee will, for I will not goe with you." Then the damosel stood still a great while, and beheld many of those knights. Then spake the knight sir La-cote-male-taile: "Faire damosell, I will take upon me that blacke shield and that adventure, so that I may know whetherward my journey should bee; for because I was this day made knight, I would take this adventure upon me." "What is your name, faire young knight?" said the damosell. "My name is," said hee, "sir La-cote-male-taile." "Well may yee be called so," said the damosell, "the knight with the evill shapen coate, but and thou bee so hardy to take upon thee to beare that blacke shield and to follow mee, wit thou well thy skinne shall bee as well hewen as thy coate." "As for that," said sir La-cote-male-taile, "when I am so hewen I will aske you no salve to heale mee withall." And therewith came into the court two squires, and brought him a great horse and his armour, with his speare, and anon hee was armed and tooke his leave. "I would not by my will," said the king, "that yee tooke upon you that hard adventure." "Sir," said he, "this adventure is mine, and the first that ever I tooke upon me, and that will I follow whatsoever come of me." Then the damosell departed, and sir La-cote-male-taile followed fast after, and within a while he overtooke the damosell. And anon shee missaid him in the foulest manner.[2]

[1] *Falleth not for you.*—This is corrected from the text of Caxton. The text of 1634 has, *it faileth not you.*

[2] *The foulest manner.*—It may be remarked that this story of La-cote-male-taile resembles rather closely that of sir Gareth in the former part of this romance.

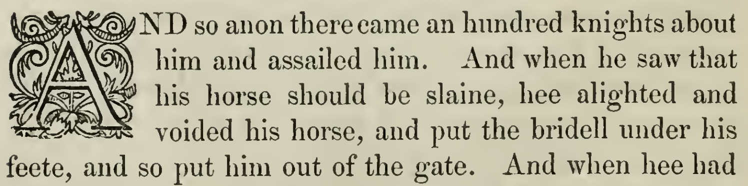
CHAP. XLIV.—How sir La-cote-male-taile overthrew sir Dagonet, king Arthurs foole, and of the rebuke that he had of the damosell.



AND then sir Kay ordained sir Dagonet, king Arthurs foole, to follow after sir La-cote-male-taile, and so there sir Kay in all hast made sir Dagonet to be armed and horsed, and bad him follow sir La-cote-male-taile, and proffer him to just; and so he did, and when hee saw sir La-cote-male-taile, he cryed to him, and bad him make him ready to just. So sir La-cote-male-taile smot sir Dagonet over his horse croup. Then the damosell mocked sir La-cote-male-taile, and said, "Fie for shame, now thou art shamed in king Arthurs court, when they send a foole to have to doe with thee, and specially at the first justs." Thus she rode long chiding him. And within a while there came sir Bleoberis the good knight, and there he justed with sir La-cote-male-taile, and there sir Bleoberis smote him so sore that horse and all fell to the earth. Then sir La-cote-male-taile arose up lightly and dressed his shield and drew his sword, and would have done the battaile to the uttermost, for hee was wood wroth. "Not so," said sir Bleoberis, "as at this time I will not fight on foote." Then the damosell Maledisaunt rebuked him in the foulest manner, and bad him "turne againe, coward." "Ah! damosell," said hee, "I pray you of mercy to missay me no more; my griefe is enough though yee give me no more. I call my selfe never the worse knight when a mares sonne failed me, and also I count mee never the worse knight of a fall of sir Bleoberis." So thus hee rode with her two dayes, and by fortune there came sir Palomides and encountred with him, and he in the same wise served him as sir Bleoberis had done before. "What doest thou here in my fellowship?" said the damosell Maledisaunt; "thou canst not sit no knight, nor withstand him a buffet, but if it were sir Dagonet." "Ah, faire damosell, I am not the worse to take a fall of sir Palomides, and

yet great disworship have I none, for neither sir Bleoberis nor yet sir Palomides would not doe battaile with me on foote." "As for that," said the damosell, "wit thou well they have disdaine and scorne to alight from their horses to fight with such a lewd knight as thou art." So in the meane while there came sir Mordred, sir Gawains brother, and so he fell in the company of the damosell Maledisaunt, and they came before the castle Orgulus, and there was such a custome that there might no knight come by that castle but either he must just or be prisoner, or at the least to leese his horse and his harneis. And so there came out of the castle two knights against them, and sir Mordred justed with the formost, and the knight of the castle smote sir Mordred downe off his horse. And then anon sir La-cote-male-taile justed with that other knight, and either of them smote other downe horse and man unto the ground. And then they avoyded their horses. Then either of them tooke others horse. And then sir La-cote-male-taile rode unto that knight that smote downe sir Mordred and justed with him, and there sir La-cote-male-taile hurt and wounded that knight passing sore, and put him from his horse to the earth as hee had beene dead. And then he turned unto him that had met him afore, and that knight tooke the flight toward the castle, and sir La-cote-male-taile rode after him into the castle. And there sir La-cote-male-taile pursued him so nigh that hee clave his head downe to his shoulders, and so fell downe dead to the earth.[1]

CHAP. XLV.—How sir La-cote-male-taile fought against an hundred knights, and how he escaped by the meanes of a lady.



AND so anon there came an hundred knights about him and assailed him. And when he saw that his horse should be slaine, hee alighted and voided his horse, and put the bridell under his feete, and so put him out of the gate. And when hee had

[1] *And there . . . to the earth.*—This sentence is not in Caxton's text, which says merely, *and there La-cote-mal-tayle slewe hym.*

so done, he hurled in among them all, and dressed his backe to a ladies chamber wall, thinking himselfe that hee had leaver die there with worship then to abide the rebukes of the damosell Maledisaunt. And in the meane time as hee stood and fought, that lady whose the chamber was went out slily at a posterne, and without the gates she found sir La-cote-male-tailes horse, and lightly shee gat him by the bridell and tied him to the posterne. And then shee went unto her chamber slily againe to behold how that one knight fought against an hundred knights. And so when shee had beholden him long, she went to a window behind his backe, and said, "Thou, knight, fightest wonderous well, but for all that at the last thou must needs die, but and thou canst through thy mighty prowesse winne to yonder posterne, for there have I fastned thy horse for to abide thee, but wit thou well thou must thinke on thy worship and thinke not to die, for thou maiest not winne unto that posterne without thou doe nobly and mightily." When sir La-cote-male-taile heard her say so, hee tooke his sword and put his shield before him, and hurled through the thickest of them. And when he came to the posterne he found there foure knights ready, and at two of the first strookes he slew two of the knights, and the other two fled, and so he wanne his horse and rode from them. And all as it was, it was rehearsed in king Arthurs court how hee slew twelve knights within the castle Orgulus, and so he rode on his way. And in the meane while the damosell said unto sir Mordred, "I weene my foolish knight bee either slaine or taken prisoner." Then were they ware where hee came riding. And when he was come unto them, he told them how hee had sped and escaped in despite of them all, "and some of the best of them will tell no tales." "Thou lyest falsly," said the damosell, "that dare I make good, but as a foole and a dastard to all knighthood they have let thee passe." "Yee may prove it," said sir La-cote-male-taile. With that shee sent a currour[1] of hers, that rode alway with

[1] *Currour.*—Literally, a runner. An errand-boy or messenger.

her, for to know the truth of this deed. And so he rode thither lightly, and asked how and in what manner that sir La-cote-male-taile was escaped out of that castle. Then all the knights cursed him, and said, "Hee is a fiend and no man, for hee hath slaine heere twelve of our best knights, and wee wend unto this day that it had beene over-much for sir Lancelot du Lake, or for sir Tristram de Lyones. And in dispite of us all he is departed from us." With this answere the currour departed, and came againe unto the damosell Maledisaunt his lady, and told her all together how that sir La-cote-male-taile had sped at the castle Orgulus. And then shee let fall downe her head and said but little.

"By my head," said sir Mordred to the damosell, "yee are greatly to blame so to rebuke him, for I warne you plainely hee is a good knight, and I doubt not but hee shall prove a noble knight, but as yet hee may not sit sure on horsbacke. For hee that shall bee a good horseman, it must come of usage and exercise. But when hee commeth unto the strookes of his sword, he is then noble and mighty, and that saw sir Bleoberis and sir Palomides; for wit yee well they are full wily men of armes, and anon they know when they see a young knight, by his riding, how they are sure to give him a fall from his horse or a great buffet. But for the most part they will not fight on foote with young knights, for they are wighty and strongly armed. For in likewise sir Launcelot du Lake, when hee was first made knight, hee was often put to the worse on horsbacke, but ever on foote he recovered his renowne, and slew and de-fouled many knights of the round table. And therefore the rebuks that sir Launcelot did to many knights, causeth them that bee men of prowesse to beware, for often I have seene the old proved knights rebuked and slaine by them that were but young beginners." Thus they rode alway talking by the way together. Here leave we off a while of this tale, and speake we of sir Launcelot du Lake.

CHAP. XLVI.—How sir Lancelot came to the court and heard of sir La-cote-male-taile, and how he followed after him, and how sir La-cote-male-taile was prisoner.

AND when he was come to the court of king Arthur, then he heard tell of the young knight sir La-cote-male-taile, how hee slew the lyon, and also how he tooke upon him the adventure of the blacke shield, the which was named at that time the hardiest adventure of the world. "So God me helpe," said sir Lancelot unto many of his fellowes, "it is shame to all you noble knights to suffer such a young knight to take such an adventure upon him for his destruction. For I will that ye wit," said the noble knight sir Lancelot, "that that damosell Maledisaunt hath borne that shield many a day for to seeke the most proved knights, and that was shee that Breus[1] saunce Pitie tooke that shield from her. And after sir Tristram de Lyones rescewed that shield and gave it to her againe. A little before that time sir Tristram fought with my nephew sir Blamor de Galis, for a quarrell that was betweene the king of Ireland and him." Then many knights were sorry that sir La-cote-male-taile was gone to that adventure. "Truly," said sir Launcelot, "I cast me to ride after him." And within seaven dayes sir Launcelot overtooke sir La-cote-male-taile, and then he saluted him and the damosell Maledisaunt. And when sir Mordred saw sir Launcelot, he left their fellowship. And so sir Launcelot rode with them all the day, and ever the damosell Maledisaunt rebuked sir La-cote-male-taile full uncurteously. And then sir Launcelot answered for him. And then shee left off sir La-cote-male-taile, and rebuked sir Launcelot. So this meane while sir Tristram de Lyones sent by a damosell a letter unto sir Launcelot, in excusing him of the wedding of the faire damosell Isoude le blaunch Mains, and said in the

[1] *Breus.—Breunys,* Caxton.

letter, as hee was a true knight hee had never to doe fleshly with Isoud le blaunch Mains; and passing curteously and gentilly sir Tristram wrote unto sir Launcelot, alway beseeching him to bee his good friend and unto La beale Isoud of Cornewaile, and that sir Launcelot would excuse him, if so were that he saw her. And within short time, by the grace of God, said sir Tristram, he would speake with La beale Isoud, and with him right hastily. Then sir Launcelot departed from the damosell and from sir La-cote-male-taile, for to over-see that letter, and for to write another letter unto sir Tristram de Liones. And in the meane while sir La-cote-male-taile rode with the damosell untill they came unto a castle which hight Pendragon,[1] and there they saw standing before them six knights, and one of them proffered to just with sir La-cote-male-taile.

And there sir La-cote-male-taile smot him over his horse croup. And after that the five knights set upon him all at once with their speares, and there they smote sir La-cote-male-taile downe horse and man, and then they alighted sodainely and set hand upon him all at once and tooke him prisoner, and so led him unto the castle and kept him as prisoner. And on the morrow sir Launcelot arose and delivered the damosel with letters unto sir Tristram, and then hee tooke his way after sir La-cote-male-taile, and by the way upon a bridge there was a knight that proffred sir Launcelot to just, and sir Launcelot smote him downe, and then they faught on foot a noble battaile together and a mighty. And so at the last sir Launcelot smote him downe groveling upon his hands and knees, and then that knight yeelded him, and sir Launcelot received him goodly. "Sir," said the knight, "I require you tell mee your name, for my heart giveth much unto you." "Nay," said sir

[1] *Pendragon.*—There are still the ruins of a castle on the banks of the river Eden, in Westmoreland, called Pendragon castle, which, according to a popular legend, was a favourite residence of king Uther Pendragon.

Launcelot, " as at this time I will not tell you my name, unlesse that yee will tel me your name." " Certainely," said the knight, " my name is sir Neroveus, that was made knight of my lord sir Launcelot du Lake." " Ah ! Neroveus de Lyle," said sir Launcelot, " I am right glad that yee are proved a good knight, for wit yee well now my name is sir Launcelot du Lake." " Alas!" said Neroveus de Lyle, " what have I done ! " And therewith he fell flatling to his feete and would have kissed them, but sir Launcelot would not let him. And then either made great joye of other. And then sir Neroveus told sir Launcelot that he should not goe to the castle Pendragon, " and there is a lord, a mighty knight, and hath many knights with him ; and this night I heard say that they tooke yesterday a knight prisoner that rode with a damosell, and they say hee is a knight of the round table."

CHAP. XLVII.—How sir Launcelot fought with sixe knights, and after that he fought with sir Brian, and how he delivered all the prisoners.

"IN good faith," said sir Launcelot, " that knight is my fellow, and him shall I rescew, or else I shall leese my life for him." And therewith he rode foorth untill he came before the castle of Pendragon, and anon there came sixe knights, and all made them ready to set upon sir Launcelot at once. Then sir Launcelot feutred his speare, and smote at the formost that he brake his backe in sunder, and three of them hit and three failed. And then sir Launcelot past through them, and lightly hee turned him in againe, and smote another knight throughout the body and through the horse arson more then an ell, and therewith his speare brake. So then all the remnant of the foure knights drew their swords, and full egerly they lashed at sir Launcelot, and at every strooke that sir Launcelot bestowed they were striken in

sundry wise, so that they avoided their saddels sore wounded. And foorthwith he rode hurling into the castle. And anon the lord of the castle, that was that time called sir Brian de les Iles, which was a noble man, and was a great enemy unto king Arthur, within a while he was armed and on horsebacke, and then they feutred their speares and hurled together so strongly that both their horses fell to the earth. And then they avoided their sadels and horses, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and flang together as wood men, and there were many strookes given in a little while. And at the last sir Launcelot gave sir Brian such a buffet that hee kneeled upon his knees, and therewith sir Launcelot lept unto him, and with great force hee pulled off his helme. And when sir Brian saw that hee should bee slaine, then he yeelded him, and put him unto his mercy and grace. Then sir Launcelot made him to deliver all his prisoners that hee had within his castle, and therein sir Launcelot found thirty knights of king Arthurs court, and fortie ladies, and so hee delivered them and rode his way. And when sir La-cote-male-taile was delivered, he gat his horse and his harneis, and his damosell Maledisant. The meane while sir Neroveus, that sir Launcelot had fought withall at the bridge, sent a damosell after sir Launcelot for to wit howe he had sped at the castle of Pendragon. And then they that were within the castle mervailed what knight he was, when sir Brian and his knights delivered all those prisoners. "Have yee no mervaile," said the damosell, "for he is the best knight in the world that did this journey; and wit ye well," said she, "it was sir Launcelot du Lake." Then was sir Brian full glad, and so was the lady, and all his knights, that such a noble man should winne them. And when the damosell and sir La-cote-male-taile understood that it was sir Launcelot that had ridden with them in fellowship, then she remembred her how she had rebuked him, and called him coward, then was shee passing heavy and sorrowfull.

CHAP. XLVIII.—How sir Launcelot met with the damosell named Maledisaunt, and how he named her the damosell Bienpensaunt.

SO then they tooke their horses and rode foorth a pace after sir Launcelot, and within two mile they overtooke him, and saluted him, and greatly they thanked him, and the damosell cried sir Launcelot mercy of her evill deeds, and said, "Now I know the floure of all true and loyall knighthood is departed betweene sir Tristram and you. For God knoweth," said the damosell, "that I have sought you, my lord sir Launcelot, and sir Tristram, long, and now I thanke God that I have met with you; and once at Camelot I met with sir Tristram, and there hee rescewed this blacke shield with the white hands holding a naked sword, which sir Breus[1] saunce Pitie had taken away from me." "Now, faire damosell," said sir Launcelot, "who told you my name?" "Sir," said she, "there came a damosell from a knight that yee fought withall at the bridge, and she told me your name was sir Launcelot du Lake." "Blame have shee then," said sir Launcelot, "but her lord sir Neroveus hath told her. But damosell," said sir Launcelot, "upon this covenant I will ride with you, so that yee will not rebuke this knight sir La-cote-male-taile no more; for hee is a right good knight, and I doubt not but that he will prove a noble knight, and for his sake and pittie that he should not bee destroyed, I follow him for to succour him in his great neede." "Ah! Jesu thank you," said the damosel, "for now I will say to you and to him both, I rebuked him never for no hate that I hated him, but for great love that I had unto him, for ever I supposed hee had beene too young and tender for to take upon him these adventures; and therefore by my will I would have driven him away for the jealousie that I had of his life, for it may be no young knights deed that shall atcheve this adventure to the end."

[1] *Breus.—Bruyns,* Caxton.

"Per dieu!" said sir Launcelot, "it is well said, where as yee are called the damosel Maledisant, I will call you the damosel Byenpensaunt." And so they rode foorth a great while til they came to the borders of the countrey of Sursule,[1] and there they found a ful faire village with a strong bridge like a fortresse. And when sir Launcelot and they were at the bridge, there start foorth before them many gentlemen and yeomen, that said, "Faire lords, yee may not passe over this bridge and this fortresse, because of the blacke shield that I see one of you beare, and therfore there shall not passe no more but one of you at once; therefore choose which of you shall enter within this bridge first." Then sir Launcelot profered himselfe first to enter within this bridge.

"Sir," said La-cote-male-taile, "I beseech you let me enter first within this fortresse, and if I may speede well, I will send for you, and if it happen that I be slaine, there it goeth. And if so be that I am taken prisoner, then may yee come and rescew mee." "I am loth," said sir Launcelot, "to let you passe this passage." "Sir," said La-cote-male-taile, "I pray you let me put my body in this adventure." "Now goe your way," said sir Launcelot, "and Jesu bee your speede." So he entred; and anon there met with him two bretheren, that one hight sir Plaine de Force, and that other hight sir Plaine de Amours. and anon they met with sir La-cote-male-taile, and first sir La-cote-male-taile smote downe sir Plaine de Force, and soone after hee smote downe sir Plaine de Amours, and then they dressed them to their shields and swords; and so they bad sir La-cote-male-taile alight, and so hee did, and there was dashing and foyning with swords, and so they began full hard to assay sir La-cote-male-taile, and many great wounds they gave him upon his head, and upon his brest, and upon his shoulders. And as hee might ever among hee gave sad strokes againe. And then the two bretheren

[1] *Sursule.—Surluse,* Caxton.

traced and traversed for to be on both hands of sir La-cote-male-taile, but by fine force and knightly prowesse hee gat them afore him. And so then when he felt himselfe sore wounded, hee doubled his strookes and gave them so many wounds that hee felled them to the earth, and would have slaine them had they not yeelded them. And right so La-cote-male-taile tooke the best horse that there was of them two, and so rode foorth his way to that other fortresse and bridge, and there he met with the third brother, whose name was sir Plenorius, a full noble knight; and there they justed together, and either smote other downe horse and man to the earth. And then they two avoyded their horses, and dressed their shields and drew their swords, and gave many sad strookes; and one while the one knight was afore on the bridge and another while the other. And thus they fought two houres and more, and never rested, and ever sir Launcelot and the damosel beheld them. "Alas!" said the damosell, "my knight fighteth passing sore and over long." "Now may yee see," said sir Launcelot, "that he is a noble knight, for to consider his first battaile and his grievous wounds, and so wounded as he is, it is great mervaile that he may endure this long battaile with that good knight."

CHAP. XLIX.—How La-cote-male-taile was taken prisoner, and after rescewed by sir Launcelot, and how sir Launcelot overcame foure bretheren.



THIS meane while sir La-cote-male-taile sunke downe upon the earth, for what for wounds and what for blood he might not stand. Then the other knight had pittie of him, and said, "Faire young knight, dismay you not, for if yee had beene fresh when yee met with me as I was, I know well I should not have endured so long as yee have done; and therefore, for your noble deeds and valiantnesse, I shall shew you great

kindnesse and gentlenes in all that ever I may." And foorthwith the noble knight sir Plenorius tooke him up in his armes and led him into his towre. And then he commanded him the wine, and made him for to search him and for to stop his bleeding wounds. "Sir," said La-cote-male-taile, "withdraw you from me, and hye you to yonder bridge againe, for there will meete you another manner knight then ever I was." "Why," said sir Plenorius, "is heere another manner knight behind of your fellowship?" "Yea truely," said La-cote-male-taile, "there is a much better knight then I am." "What is his name?" said sir Plenorius. "Yee shall not know it for me at this time," said sir La-cote-male-taile. "Well," said the knight, "hee shall be encountred withall whatsoever he be." Then sir Plenorius heard a knight call that said, "Sir Plenorius, where art thou? either thou must deliver me the prisoner that thou hast led unto thy towre, or else come and doe battaile with me." Then sir Plenorius gate his horse, and came with a great speare in his hand, gallopping as the hurlewind[1] had borne him toward sir Launcelot; and then they began to feutre their speares and came together like thunder, and smote either other so mightily that their horses fell downe under them; and then they avoided their horses, and drew out their swords, and like two buls they lashed together with great strokes and foynes; but ever sir Launcelot recovered ground upon him, and sir Plenorius traced to have gone about him, and sir Lancelot would not suffer that, but bare him backer and backer till he came nigh the towre gate; and then said sir Launcelot, "I know thee well for a good knight, but wit thou well thy life and death is in my hands, and therefore yeeld thou to me and thy prisoners." The other answered not a word, but strooke mightily upon sir Launcelots helme, that fire sprang out of his eyes; then sir Launcelot doubled his strookes so thicke, and smote at him so mightily, that

[1] *Hurlewind.*—Whirlwind.

hee made him to kneele upon his knees, and therewith sir Launcelot lept upon him and pulled him downe groveling. Then sir Plenorius yeelded him and his towre and all his prisoners at his will. And then sir Launcelot received him, and tooke his trouth; and then hee rode to the other bridge, and there sir Launcelot justed with other three of his brethren, the one hight sir Pillounes, and the other hight sir Pellogris, and the third hight sir Pellandris; and first on horsbacke sir Launcelot smote them downe, and afterward he beat them on foote, and made them to yeeld them unto him, and then he returned unto sir Plenorius, and there he found in his prison king Carados of Scotland and many other knights, and all they were delivered. And then sir La-cote-male-taile came to sir Launcelot, and then sir Launcelot would have given him all these fortresses and these bridges. "Nay," said La-cote-male-taile, "I will not have sir Plenorius livelihood; so that he will grant you my lord sir Launcelot to come unto king Arthurs court and to bee his knight and all his brethern, I will pray you, my lord, to let him have his livelihood." "I will well," said sir Launcelot, "so that hee will come to the court of king Arthur, and become his man and his five brethren. And as for you, sir Plenorius, I will undertake," said sir Launcelot, "at the next feast, so there be a place voide, that ye shall be knight of the round table." "Sir," said sir Plenorius, "at the next feast of Pentecost I will be at king Arthurs court, and at that time I will be guided and ruled by king Arthur, and he be so pleased." Then sir Launcelot and sir La-cote-male-taile rested them there unto the time that sir La-cote-male-taile was whole of all his wounds; and there they had merry cheare and good rest and many good games, and there were many faire ladies.

CHAP. L.—How sir Lancelot made La-cote-male-taile lord of the castle of Pendragon, and after was made knight of the round table.

AND in the meane while there came sir Kay the seneshall and sir Brandiles, and anon they fellowshipped with them. And then within ten dayes departed the knights of king Arthurs court from all these fortresses. And as sir Lancelot came by the castle of Pendragon, there hee put sir Brian de les Iles from his lands, because he would never be withold with king Arthur, and all that castle of Pendragon, and all the lands thereof, he gave unto sir La-cote-male-taile. And then sir Launcelot sent for sir Neroveus, that he had made once knight, and he made him to have all the rule of that castle and of the countrey under La-cote-male-taile. And so they rode unto king Arthurs court all together. And at Penticost next following there was sir Plenorius and also sir La-cote-male-taile, otherwise by right called sir Brewnor le Noire, both made knights of the round table, and great lands king Arthur gave them ; and there sir Brewnor le Noire wedded the damosell Maledisaunt, and after shee was called Beauvivant. But ever for the most part he was called sir La-cote-male-taile, and he proved a passing noble knight and a mighty, and many worshipfull deeds he did after in his life, and sir Plenorius proved a noble knight and full of prowesse. And all the dayes of their life for the most part they waited upon sir Launcelot. And sir Plenorius brethren were ever knights of king Arthur. And also as the French booke maketh mention, sir La-cote-male-taile avenged his fathers death.

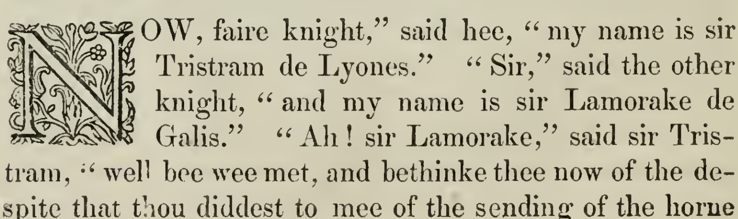
CHAP. LI.—How La beale Isoud sent letters unto sir Tristram by her maiden Bragwaine, and of divers adventures of sir Tristram.

NOW leave we here off sir La-cote-male-taile, and turne we unto sir Tristram de Lyones that was in Britaine. When La beale Isoud understood that he was married, shee sent unto him by her maide Bragwaine as pittious letters as could be thought and made, and her conclusion was, that if it pleased sir Tristram that he would come to her court and bring with him Isoud le blaunch Mains, and they should bee kept as well as she her selfe. Then sir Tristram called unto him sir Kay Hedius, and asked him whether hee would goe with him into Cornewaile secretly. He answered and said hee was ready at all times. And then he let ordaine prively a little vessell, and therein went sir Tristram, Kay Hedius, dame Bragwaine, and Governale sir Tristrams squire. So when they were in the sea, a contrarious wind blew them on the coasts of North Wales nigh the castle perillous. Then said sir Tristram, "Here shall yee abide this ten dayes, and Governale my squire with you, and, if so be I come not againe by that day, take the next way into Cornewaile, for within this forrest are many strange adventures as I have heard say, and some of them I cast mee to prove or I depart, and when I may I shall hast me after you." Then sir Tristram and sir Kay Hedius tooke their horses and departed from their fellowship. And so they rode within that forrest a mile and more. And at the last sir Tristram saw before him a likely knight and a well made man, all armed, sitting by a cleere fountaine or well, and a stronge mighty horse neere unto him tied to a great oake, and a man hoving and riding by him leading an horse that was laden with speares.

And this knight that was by the well seemed by his countenance to be passing heavy. Then sir Tristram rode neere him, and said, "Faire knight, why sit you so droup-

ing? ye seeme for to be a knight arraunt by your armes and harneis, and therefore dresse you to just with one of us or with both." Therewith that knight made no words, but tooke his shield and buckled it about his necke, and lightly he tooke his horse and lept upon him, and then he tooke a great speare of his squire, and departed his way a furlong. So sir Kay Hedius asked leave at sir Tristram for to just first. "Doe your best," said sir Tristram. So they met together, and there sir Kay Hedius had a fall, and was sore wounded on high above the paps. Then sir Tristram said, "Knight, thou hast well justed, now make thee ready to mee." "I am ready," said the knight; and then that knight tooke another great speare in his hand and encountred with sir Tristram, and there by great force that knight smote downe sir Tristram from his horse, and gave him a great fall. Then sir Tristram was sore ashamed, and lightly he avoided his horse and put his shield before him, and drew out his sword. And then sir Tristram required that knight of his knighthood to alight on foote and fight with him. "I will wel," said the knight; and so he alighted on foote and avoided his horse, and cast his shield upon his shoulder, and drew out his sword, and there they fought a long battaile together nigh two houres. Then sir Tristram said, "Faire knight, hold thy hand, and tell mee of whence thou art, and what is thy name?" "As for that," said the knight, "I will bee advised, but if thou wilt tell me thy name, peradventure I will tell thee mine."

CHAP. LII.—How sir Tristram met with sir Lamoracke de Galis, and how they fought, and after accorded never to fight together.



NOW, faire knight," said hee, "my name is sir Tristram de Lyones." "Sir," said the other knight, "and my name is sir Lamorake de Galis." "Ah! sir Lamorake," said sir Tristram, "well bee wee met, and bethinke thee now of the despite that thou diddest to mee of the sending of the horne

unto king Markes court, to the entent to have slaine or dishonoured my lady the queene La beale Isoud; and therefore wit thou well," said sir Tristram, "the one of us shall die or we depart." "Sir," said sir Lamorake, "remember that wee were together in the ile of Savage, and at that time yee promised me great friendship." Then sir Tristram would not make no longer delayes, but lashed at sir Lamorake, and thus they fought long, till either were weary of other. Then sir Tristram said to sir Lamorake, "In all my life met I never with such a knight that was so big and so well breathed as ye be; therefore," said sir Tristram, "it were pittie that any of us both should here be mischeved." "Sir," said sir Lamorake, "for your renowne I will that yee have the worship of this battaile, and therefore I will yeeld me unto you." And therewith hee tooke the point of his sword for to yeeld him. "Nay," said sir Tristram, "yee shall not doe so, for I know well your proffers are more of your gentlenesse then for feare and dread yee have of mee." And therewith sir Tristram proffered him his sword, saying, "Sir Lamorake, as an overcome knight, I yeeld me unto you, as unto a man of the most noble prowesse that ever I met withall." "Nay," said sir Lamorake, "I will doe you gentlenesse; I require you let us be sworne together that never none of us shall after this day have to doe with other." And therewith sir Tristram and sir Lamorake swore that never none of them should fight against other for weale nor for woe.

CHAP. LIII.—How sir Palomides followed the questing beast, and how hee smote downe both sir Tristram and sir Lamoracke with one speare.



THIS meane while there came sir Palomides the good knight following the questing beast,[1] that had in shap a head like a serpents head, and a body like a liberd, buttockes like a lyon, and

[1] *The questing beast.*—See before, vol. i. p. 44.

footed like a hart, and in his body there was such a noyse as it had been the noyse of thirtie couple of hounds questing, and such a noyse that beast made where soever hee went. And this beast evermore sir Palomides followed, for it was called his quest. And right so as he followed this beast came sir Tristram and sir Lamorake. And to make short tale, sir Palomides smote downe sir Tristram and sir Lamorake both with one speare, and so departed after the beast glatisaunt, that was called the questing beast, wherefore these two knights were passing wroth that sir Palomides would not fight with them on foote. Here may men understand that be of worship, that hee was never formed that at every time might stand, but sometime he was put to the worse by evill fortune. And at sometime the worst knight putteth the better knight unto a rebuke. So then sir Tristram and sir Lamorake gat sir Kay Hedius upon a shield betweene them both and led him unto a fosters lodge, and there they gave him in charge to keepe him well, and with him they abode three dayes and more. And then the two knights tooke their horses, and all at a crosse they departed. And then said sir Tristram to sir Lamorake, "I require you if yee happen to meete with sir Palomides, say unto him that he shall find me at the same well there as I met him; and there I, sir Tristram, shall prove whether he bee better knight then I." And so either departed from other and rode sundry wayes; and sir Tristram rode nigh there as sir Kay Hedius was, and sir Lamorake rode untill he came to a chapell, and there he put his horse to pasture. And anon there came sir Meliograunce, that was king Bagdemagus sonne, and there he put his horse to pasture, and was not ware of sir Lamorake; and then this knight sir Meliogrance made his moane of the love that he had unto queene Guenever, and there hee made a lamentable complaint. All this heard sir Lamoracke; and on the morrow sir Lamorake tooke his horse and rode unto the forrest, and there hee met two knights hoving under the shadow of

the wood.[1] "Faire knights," said sir Lamoracke, "what doe yee hoving there and watching? and if yee bee knights arraunt that will just, loe I am ready." "Nay, sir knight," said they, "not so, wee abide not here for to just with you, but we lye here in awaite of a knight that slew our brother." "What knight was that," said sir Lamorake, "that yee would faine meete withall?" "Sir," said they, "it is sir Launcelot du Lake, which slew our brother, and if ever wee may meete with him, hee shall not escape but we shall sley him." "Yee take upon you a great charge," said sir Lamoracke, "for sir Launcelot is a noble proved knight." "And for that," said they, "we doubt not, for there is none of us but wee are good enough for him." "I will not beleeve that," said sir Lamoracke, "for I heard never yet dayes of my life of no knight but that sir Lancelot was too big for him."

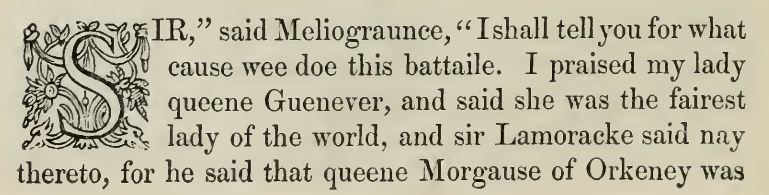
CHAP. LIV.—How sir Lamoracke met with sir Meliogrance and fought together for the beautie of queene Guenever.

RIGHT so as they stood talking thus, sir Lamorake was ware where sir Launcelot came riding straight toward them; then sir Lamorake saluted him, and he him againe. And then sir Lamoracke asked sir Lancelot if there were any thing that hee might doe for him in those marches. "Nay," said sir Launcelot, "not at this time, I thanke you." And so either departed from other, and sir Lamoracke rode againe there as he left the two knights, and then hee found them hid in the leved wood. "Fie on you," said sir Lamorake, "false cowards, it is pittie and shame that any of you should take the high order of knighthood." So sir Lamoracke departed from them, and within a while he met with sir Meliograunce, and then sir Lamoracke asked him why hee loved queene Guenever as hee did, "for I was not farre

[1] *Shadow of the wood.—The wood shawe,* Caxton.

from you when yee made your complaint by the chappell." "Did yee so?" said sir Meliograunce, "then will I abide it; I love queene Guenever, what will yee with it? I will prove it and make it good that shee is the fairest lady and most of beautie in the world." "As to that," said sir Lamoracke, "I say nay thereto, for queene Morgause of Orkeney, mother unto sir Gawaine, and his mother is the fairest queene and lady that now beareth life." "That is not so," said sir Meliograunce, "and that I will prove with my hands upon thy body." "Will yee so?" said sir Lamoracke, "and in a better quarell keepe I not to fight." And then they departed either from other in great wrath, and then they came running together as it had been thunder, and either smote other so mightily that their horses fell backeward unto the earth. And then they avoided their horses and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and then they hurled together as it had been two wild boores; thus they fought a great while, for sir Meliograunce was a good knight and a man of great might, but sir Lamorake was too hard and too big for him, and put him alwayes abacke; but either had wounded other wondrous sore, and so as they stood thus fighting, by fortune there came sir Launcelot and sir Bleoberis riding. And then anon sir Launcelot rode betweene them both, and asked them for what cause they fought so together, "for yee are both knights of king Arthurs court."

CHAP. LV.—How sir Launcelot and sir Bleoberis came riding and found sir Lamoracke and sir Meliograunce fighting, and how sir Lamoracke justed with king Arthur.



IR," said Meliograunce, "I shall tell you for what cause wee doe this battaile. I praised my lady queene Guenever, and said she was the fairest lady of the world, and sir Lamoracke said nay thereto, for he said that queene Morgause of Orkeney was

fairer then shee and more of beautie." "Ah! sir Lamoracke, why sayest thou so? it is not thy part for to dispraise the princesse that thou art under her obeisance, and we all." And therewith he alighted on foote, and said, "For this quarrell make thee ready, for I will prove it upon thee that queene Guenever is the fairest lady and most of beautie in the world." "Sir," said sir Lamoracke, "I am loath to have to doe with you in this quarrell, for every man thinketh his owne lady fairest; and though I praise the lady that I love most, yee should not therfore bee wroth, for though my lady queene Guenever be the fairest in your eye, wit ye well queene Morgause of Orkeney is the fairest in mine eye, and so every knight thinketh his owne lady fairest; and wit ye well, sir, yee are the man in the world (except sir Tristram) that I am most loth to have to doe withall. But if yee will needs fight with mee, I shall endure as long as I may." Then spake sir Bleoberis, and said, "My lord, sir Launcelot, I wist you never so misadvised as yee are now, for sir Lamoracke saith but reason and knightly. For I warne you I have a lady, and mee thinketh she is the fairest lady of the world, were this a great reason that yee should bee wroth with me for such language? And well ye wote that sir Lamoracke is as noble a knight as I know, and he hath ought you and us ever good will, and therefore I pray you bee good friends." And then said sir Launcelot unto sir Lamoracke, "I pray you forgive mee all mine evill will, and if I was misadvised I will amend it." "Sir," said sir Lamoracke, "the mends is soone made betweene you and me." And so sir Launcelot and sir Bleoberis departed. And sir Meliograunce and sir Lamoracke tooke their horses, and either departed from other. And within a while came king Arthur and met with sir Lamoracke and justed with him, and there hee smote downe sir Lamoracke, and wounded him sore with a speare, and so he rode from him; wherfore sir Lamoracke was wroth that he would not fight with him on foote, how be it sir Lamoracke knew not king Arthur.

CHAP. LVI.—How sir Kay mett with sir Tristram, and after of the shame spoken of the knights of Cornewayle, and how they justed.

NOW leave we off this tale, and speake we of sir Tristram de Lyones, that as he rode he met with sir Kay the seneshal, and there sir Kay asked sir Tristram of what countrey he was come. Sir Tristram answered that he was of the country of Cornewaile. "It may well be," said sir Kay the seneshall, "for yet heard I never in no place that ever any good knights came out of Cornewaile." "That is evill spoken," said sir Tristram de Liones, "but if it please you to tell mee your name I require you." "Sir, wit yee well," said sir Kay, "that my right name is sir Kay the seneshall." "Is that your name?" said sir Tristram; "now wite yee well that yee are called the shamfullest knight of your tongue that now is living in the world, how bee it yee are called a good knight, but yee are called unfortunate, and passing overthwart of your tongue." And thus they rode together till they came to a bridge, and there was a knight would not let them passe, till that one of them had justed with him.

And so that knight justed with sir Kay, and there that knight gave sir Kay a fall from his horse, and that knights name was sir Tor, sir Lamorackes halfe brother. And then they two rode to their lodging, and there they found sir Brandiles. And sir Tor came thither anon after. And so as they sate at their supper, these foure knights, three of them spake all shame of Cornish knights; sir Tristram heard all that they said and said but litle, but he thought the more; but at that time he discovered not his name. In the morning sir Tristram tooke his horse and abode them on their way, and there sir Brandiles proffred to just with sir Tristram, and so sir Tristram smote him downe horse and all to the earth. And then sir Tor le fyse de Vasher[1]

[1] *Vasher.—Vayshoure,* Caxton. See vol. i. pp. 94-96.

encountred with sir Tristram, and there sir Tristram smote him downe from his horse. And then he rode his way, and sir Kay followed him, but he would not of his fellowship. And then sir Brandiles came to sir Kay and said, "I would full faine know what that knights name is." "Come on your way with mee," said sir Kay, "and wee shall pray him for to tell us his name." So they rode together untill they came nigh to him, and then they were ware where as hee sate by a well, and had put off his helme to drinke at the well. And when he saw them come he laced on his helme lightly, and tooke his horse and proffered them to just. "Nay," said sir Brandiles, "we justed late enough with you, wee come not to that entent. But for this we come, to require you of your knighthood for to tell us your name." "Faire knights, sithence it is your desire, and to please you, yee shall wite that my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, nephew unto king Marke of Cornewaile." "In good time," said sir Brandiles, "and well yee bee found, and wite yee well that we are right glad that wee have found you, and wee be of a fellowship that would be right glad of your company, for yee are the knight of the world which the noble fellowship of the round table desireth most to have your company." "God thanke them," said sir Tristram, "of their great goodnesse; but I as yet feele well that I am unable for to be of their fellowship, for I was never of such deeds of worthines for to be of the company of such a fellowship." "Ah!" said sir Kay, "and yee bee sir Tristram de Lyones, yee are the man now called most of prowesse, except it be sir Launcelot du Lake. For he beareth not the life christian ne heathen that can find such another knight to speak of his prowesse and of his hands, and his truth withall. For yet could there never creature say of him any dishonour, and make it good." And thus they talked a great while, and then they departed either from other such waies as unto them seemed best.

CHAP. LVII.—How king Arthur was brought into the forrest perilous, and how sir Tristram saved his life.

OW shall yee heare what the cause was that king Arthur came into the forrest perillous, that was in North Wales, by the meanes of a lady, her name was Annowre, and this lady came to king Arthur at Cardife, and she, by faire promise and faire behests, made king Arthur to ride with her to that forrest perilous, and shee was a great sorceresse, and many daies she had loved king Arthur, and because that shee would have him to ly with her shee came into that countrey. So when the king was gone with her, many of his knights followed after him; and when they missed him, as sir Launcelot, sir Brandiles, and many other, and when shee had brought him to her towre, shee desired him to lye with her. And then the king remembred him of his lady, and would not lye by her for no craft that shee could make. Then every day shee would make him ride into that forrest with her owne knights to the intent to have had king Arthur slaine. For when this lady Annowre saw that shee might not have him at her will, then shee laboured by false meanes to have destroyed king Arthur and slaine him. And then the lady of the lake, that was alway friendly unto king Arthur, shee understood by her subtill crafts that king Arthur was like to be destroyed, and therefore this lady of the lake that hight Nineve came into that forrest to seeke sir Launcelot du Lake or sir Tristram for to helpe king Arthur, for as that day this lady of the lake knew well that king Arthur should be slaine, unlesse that he had helpe of one of these two knights, and thus she rode up and downe till she met with sir Tristram, anon as she saw him she knew him. "O, my lord sir Tristram," said she, "well be yee met, and blessed be the time that I have met with you! for as this day and within these two houres shall bee done the foulest deede that ever was done in this land." "Oh, faire da-

mosell," said sir Tristram, "may I amend it." "Come on with mee," saith shee, "and that in all the hast yee may, for yee shall see the most worshipfullest knight in the world hard bestead." Then said sir Tristram, "I am ready to helpe such a noble man." "Hee is neither better nor worse," said the lady of the lake, "but the noble king Arthur himselfe." "God defend," said sir Tristram, "that ever hee should be in such distresse." Then they rode together a great pace till they came to a turret or castle, and underneath that castle they saw a knight standing on his feete fighting with two knights, and so sir Tristram beheld them. And at the last the two knights smote downe the one knight, and the one of them unlaced his helme to have slaine him. And the lady Annowre gate king Arthurs sword in her hand to have striken off his head. And therewithall came sir Tristram with his sword drawen in his hand, crying, "Traitresse, traitresse, leave that." And forthwithall sir Tristram smote one of the two knights through the body that hee fell downe dead to the earth. And then hee rashed to the other knight, and with the pomell of his sword hee smote him so hard that hee fell from his horse and brake his backe in sunder. And in the meane while the damosell of the lake cryed unto king Arthur, "Let not that untrue lady escape." So king Arthur overtooke her, and with the same sword hee smote off her head. And the damosell of the lake tooke up her head and hung it up by the haire on her saddle bow. And then sir Tristram horsed king Arthur, and rode his way forth with him; but hee charged the lady of the lake not to discover his name as at that time.

So when king Arthur was horsed, hee full heartily thanked sir Tristram, and desired him to tell him his name; but hee would not tell him, but that he was a poore knight adventurous. And so hee bare king Arthur fellowship till he met with some of his owne knights. And within a while he met with sir Ector de Maris, and hee knew not king Ar-

thur nor sir Tristram, and he desired to just with one of them. Then sir Tristram rode unto sir Ector and smote him downe from his horse; and when he had so done, hee came againe unto king Arthur, and said, "My lord, yonder is one of your owne knights, hee may beare you fellowship; and another day that deed which I have done for you I trust unto God yee shall understand that I will doe you service." "Alas!" said king Arthur, "let mee know what knight yee are." "Not at this time," said sir Tristram. So hee departed, and left king Arthur and sir Ector de Maris together.

CHAP. LVIII.—How sir Tristram came to La beale Isoud, and how sir Kay Hedius began to love La beale Isoud, and of the letter that sir Tristram found.

AND then, at a day set, sir Tristram and sir Lamoracke met at the well, and then they tooke sir Kay Hedius at the fosters house, and so they rode with him to the ship whereas they left dame Bragwaine and Governale, and so they sailed into Cornewaile altogether; and by the assent and information of dame Bragwaine, when they were landed they rode unto sir Dinas the seneshall, a good and a trusty friend of sir Tristrams. And so dame Bragwaine and sir Dinas rode unto king Markes court, and told the queene La beale Isoud that sir Tristram was nigh her in that country. Then for very pure joy La beale Isoud swounded, and when she might speake, she said, "Gentle knight seneshall, helpe that I may speake with him, or else my heart will brast." Then sir Dinas and dame Bragwaine brought sir Tristram and sir Kay Hedius prively unto the court to a chamber where as La beale Isoud had assigned them. And to tell the joy that was betweene La beale Isoud and sir Tristram there is no tongue can tell, nor no heart can thinke it, nor no pen can write it. And at the first time that ever sir Kay

Hedius saw La beale Isoud, hee was so enamoured upon her, that he might never withdraw the very pure love, and so at the last, as yee shall heare or the booke be ended, how sir Kay Hedius died for the love of La beale Isoud. And then privily he wrote unto her letters and ballads of the most goodliest that were used in those dayes. And when La beale Isoud understood his letters, shee had great pittie of his complaint, and unadvisedly shee wrote another letter to comfort him withall. And sir Tristram was all this time in a turret at the command of La beale Isoud, and when she might she came unto sir Tristram. So on a day king Marke played at the chesse under a chamber window, and at that time sir Tristram and sir Kay Hedius were within the chamber over king Marke, and as it mishappined sir Tristram found that letter that sir Kay Hedius sent unto La beale Isoud ; also hee found the letter that shee wrought to sir Kay Hedius. And at that time La beale Isoud was in the same chamber. Then sir Tristram came to La beale Isoud, and said, " Madame, here is a letter that was sent unto you, and here is the letter that ye sent unto him that sent you that letter. Alas! madame, the good love that I have loved you, and many lands and riches that I have forsaken for your love, now yee are a traitresse to me which doth me great paine. But as for thee, sir Kay Hedius, I have brought thee out of Britaine into this countrey, and thy father king Howell I wanne his lands, how bee it I wedded thine owne sister Isoud le blaunch Mains, for the goodnesse which shee did to mee, and yet as I am a true knight shee is a cleane virgine for mee; but wit thou well," said he unto sir Kay Hedius, " for thy falshood and treason that thou hast done to mee, I will revenge it upon thee." And therewith sir Tristram drew out his sword, and said, " Sir Kay Hedius, keepe thee." And then La beale Isoud swounded unto the earth. And when sir Kay Hedius saw sir Tristram came upon him, he saw none other remedy but lept out at a bay window, even over the head where king Marke

sate playing at the chesse. And when the king saw one come hurling over his head, he said, "Fellow, what art thou, and what is the cause that thou leapest out of that window?" "My lord the king," said sir Kay Hedius, "it fortuned mee that I was a sleepe in the window above your head, and as I slept I slumbred, and so I fell downe." And so sir Kay Hedius excused him.

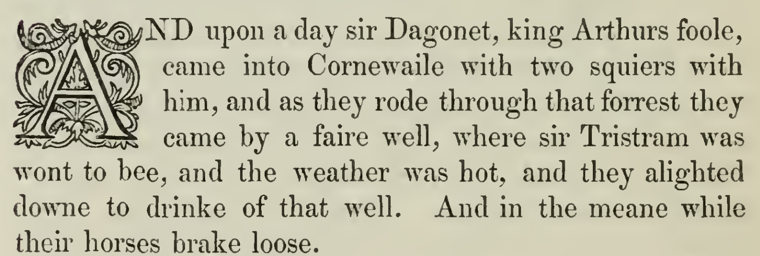
CHAP. LIX.—How sir Tristram departed from Tintagill, and how he sorrowed, and was so long in a forrest till he was out of his mind.

THEN sir Tristram dreaded sore least he were discovered unto the king that he was there, wherefore hee drew him unto the strength of the towre, and armed him in such armour as hee had, for to fight with them that would withstand him. And so when sir Tristram saw there was no resistance against him, hee sent Governale for his horse and for his speare, and knightly he rode forth openly out of the castle which was called the castle of Tintagill, and at the gate he met with sir Gingalin, sir Gawaines sonne. And anon sir Gingalin put his speare in the rest, and ranne against sir Tristram, and brake his speare. And sir Tristram at that time had but a sword, and gave him such a buffet upon the helme, that he fell downe from his sadell to the earth, and his sword slode downe and kerved asunder his horse necke. And then sir Tristram rode forth his way into the forrest. And all this doing saw king Marke; and then anon he sent a squire unto the hurt knight, and commanded him to come unto him, and so he did. And when king Marke wist that it was sir Gingalin, hee welcomed him, and gave him a horse, and asked him what knight it was that had encountred with him. "Sir," said sir Gingalin, "I wote not what knight he was, but well I wote that hee sighed sore and made sorrowfull dole." And

then sir Tristram within a while met with a knight of his owne that hight sir Fergus. And, when hee had met with him, hee made great sorrow, in so much that hee fell downe off his horse in a sowne, and in such sorrow hee was three dayes and three nights. And then at the last sir Tristram sent unto the court by sir Fergus for to wit what tidings there was. And so, as hee rode by the way, he met with a damosell that came from sir Palomides to know and see how sir Tristram did. And then sir Fergus told her how hee was almost out of his minde. "Alas!" said the damosell, "where shall I find him?" "In such a place shall yee find him," said sir Fergus. And then sir Fergus found queene Isoud sicke in her bed, making the greatest dole that any woman might make. And when the damosell found sir Tristram, shee made great dole because she might not amend him, for the more she made of him the more was his paine. And at the last sir Tristram tooke his horse and rode his way from her, and then was it three dayes and three nights or that she could find him againe, and then she brought him meate and drinke, but he would none take. And then another time sir Tristram escaped away from the damosel, and it happined him to ride by the same castle where sir Palomides and sir Tristram did battaile when La beale Isoud departed them, and there by fortune the damosell met with sir Tristram againe, making the greatest dole that ever any creature made, and shee went to the lady of the castle and told her of the misadventure of sir Tristram. "Alas!" said the lady of the castle, "where is my lord sir Tristram?" "Right heere by your castle," said the damosell. "In good time," said the lady, "is hee so nigh me, hee shall have meate and drinke of the best, and a harpe I have of his whereupon hee taught mee to play; for of goodly harping he beareth the price in the world." So this lady and the damosell brought him meate and drinke, but he eate but little thereof. So upon a night he put his horse from him, and then hee

unlaced his armour, and went into the wildernesse, and brake downe trees and boughes, and otherwhile, when hee found the harp that the lady sent him, then would he harp and play thereupon and weepe together. And sometime, when sir Tristram was in the wood that the lady wist not where hee was, then would she set her downe and play upon the harp. And so would sir Tristram come unto that harp, and harken the melodious sound thereof, and sometime he would harpe himselfe. Thus he endured there a quarter of a yeare. And at the last he ran his way, and shee wist not where he was become. And then was he naked, and waxed leane and poore of flesh; and so hee fell into the fellowship of heardmen and shepheards, and daily they would give him of their meate and drinke. And when he did any shrewd deede, they would beat him with rods, and so they clipped him with sheares, and made him like a foole.[1]

CHAP. LX.—How sir Tristram sowsed sir Dagonet in a well, and how sir Palomides sent a damosell to seeke sir Tristram, and how sir Palomides met with king Marke.



AND upon a day sir Dagonet, king Arthurs foole, came into Cornewaile with two squiers with him, and as they rode through that forrest they came by a faire well, where sir Tristram was wont to bee, and the weather was hot, and they alighted downe to drinke of that well. And in the meane while their horses brake loose.

Right so sir Tristram came to them, and first he sowsed sir Dagonet in that well, and after his squiers, and thereat laughed the shepheards; and foorthwith he ran after their horses, and so brought them againe one by one; and right so as wet as they were he made them to leape up and ride

[1] *Like a foole.*—The cutting of the hair close was a particular characteristic of the court fool in former times.

on their way. Thus sir Tristram endured there halfe a yeare naked, and would never come to towne nor village. The meane while the damosell that sir Palomides sent to seeke sir Tristram went unto sir Palomides and told him all the mischiefe that sir Tristram endured. "Alas!" said sir Palomides, "it is great pittie that ever so noble a knight should bee mischeved for the love of a lady; but neverthelesse I will go and seeke him, and comfort him if I may." Then, a little before that time, La beale Isoude had commanded sir Kay Hedius out of the countrey of Cornewaile. So sir Kay Hedius departed with a dolorous heart; and by adventure hee met with sir Palomides, and they enfellowshipped together, and either complayned unto other of their hot love that they loved La beale Isoud. "Now let us," said sir Palomides, "seeke sir Tristram, that loveth her as well as we, and let us prove if we may recover him." So they rode into that forest, and three daies and three nights they would never take their lodging, but ever sought sir Tristram.

And upon a time by adventure they met with king Marke, that was ridden all alone from his men. When they saw him, sir Palomides knew him, but sir Kay Hedius knew him not. "Ah! false king," said sir Palomides, "it is great pittie that thou hast thy life, for thou art a destroyer of all worshipfull knights, and by thy mischiefe and thy vengeaunce thou hast destroyed that most noble knight sir Tristram de Lyones, and therefore defend thee," said sir Palomides, "for thou shalt die this day." "That were shame," said king Marke, "for yee are both armed, and I am unarmed." "As for that," said sir Palomides, "I shall find a remedy therefore; here is a knight with me, and thou shalt have his harneys." "Nay," said king Marke, "I will not have to doe with you, for cause have yee none to me; for all the misease that sir Tristram hath was for a letter that he found, for as to mee I did to him no displeasure, and our Lord God knoweth that I am full

sory and displeasant for his disease and malady." So when king Marke had thus excused himselfe, they were good friends, and king Marke would have had them unto Tintagel. But sir Palomides would not, but turned to the realme of Logris, and sir Kay Hedius said that he would goe into Britain.

Now turne wee unto sir Dagonet againe, that when hee and his squiers were on horsebacke, he deemed that the sheepheards had sent that foole to array them so because they laughed at him, and so they rode unto the keepers of beasts and all to-beate them. Sir Tristram saw them beaten that were wont to give him meate and drinke; then hee ranne thither, and gat sir Dagonet by the head, and gave him such a fall that hee bruised him sore, so that he lay still; and then hee wrast his sword out of his hand, and therewith he ranne unto one of his squiers and smote off his head, and the other fled, and so sir Tristram tooke his way with that sword in his hand, running as hee had beene wild wood. Then sir Dagonet rode to king Marke and told him how he had sped in that forrest; "and therefore," said sir Dagonet, "beware yee, king Marke, that yee come not about that well in the forrest, for there is a naked foole, and that foole and I foole met together, and he had almost slaine me." "Ah!" said king Marke, "that is sir Matto le Breune, that fell out of his witte because he lost his lady; for when sir Gaheris smote downe sir Matto, and wanne his lady of him, never since was he in his good minde, and that was pitty, for he was a good knight."

CHAP LXI.—How it was noysed that sir Tristram was dead, and how La beale Isoude would have slaine her selfe.


HEN sir Andret, which was cosin unto sir Tristram, made a lady which was his paramour to say and to noyse it how that shee was with sir Tristram or that he dyed. And this tale shee

brought unto king Markes court, that shee buried him by a well, and that or he dyed he besought king Marke for to make his cosin sir Andret king of the countrey of Lyones, of the which sir Tristram was lord of. All this did sir Andret because hee would have had sir Tristrams lands. And when king Marke heard tell that sir Tristram his nephew was dead, he wept and made great sorrow. But when the queene La beale Isoude heard of these tidings, shee made such sorrow that shee was full nigh out of her minde, and so upon a day shee thought to sley her selfe, and never for to live after sir Tristrams death. And so upon a day La beale Isoude gat a sword prively, and bare it into her garden, and there shee pight the sword through a plumme tree up to the hilts, so that it stucke fast that it stood brest high; and as she would have runne upon the sword for to have slaine her selfe, all this espied king Marke, how she kneeled downe and said, "Sweet Lord Jesu, have mercy upon mee, for I may not live after the death of my love sir Tristram de Liones, for he was my first love, and he shall be the last." And with these words came king Marke and tooke her in his armes, and then hee tooke up the sword, and bare her away with him into a strong towre, and there he made her to be kept, and watched her surely. And after that shee lay long sicke, nigh at the point of death. This meane while ranne sir Tristram naked in the forrest with the sword in his hand, and so hee came to an hermitage, and there he laid him downe and slept. And in the meane while the hermit stole away the sword, and laide meate downe by him. Thus was he kept there ten daies, and at the last he departed and came to the heardmen againe. And there was a gyant in that countrey that hight Tauleas, and for feare of sir Tristram more then seaven yeare hee durst not much goe out at large, but for the most part he kept him in a sure castle of his owne. And so this sir Tauleas heard tell that sir Tristram was dead by the noyse of the court of king Marke, and

then sir Tauleas went daily at large. And so it happined upon a day he came to the heardmen wandering and langering,[1] and there hee set him downe to rest among them. The meane while there came a knight of Cornewaile that led a lady with him, and his name was sir Dinaunt. And when the giant saw him, he went from the heardmen and hid him under a tree. And so the knight came to the well, and there hee alighted to rest him. And as soone as he was from his horse, the gyant sir Tauleas came betweene the knight and his horse, and lept upon him. So forthwith hee rode unto sir Dinaunt, and tooke him by the collar, and drew him before him on his horse, and there would have stricken off his head. Then the heardmen said unto sir Tristram, "Helpe yonder knight." "Helpe yee him," said sir Tristram. "Wee dare not," said the heardmen. Then sir Tristram was ware of the sword of the knight where it lay, and thither he ran and tooke up the sword, and smote off sir Tauleas head, and so went his way to the heardmen againe.

CHAP. LXII.—How king Marke found sir Tristram naked, and made him to be borne home to Tintagill, and how he was there knowne by a bratchet.

THEN the knight tooke up the gyants head, and bare it with him unto king Marke, and told him what adventure betide him in the forrest, and how a naked man rescewed him from the grimly gyant Tauleas. "Where had ye this adventure?" said king Marke. "Forsooth," said sir Dinaunt, "at the faire fountaine in your forrest, where many adventurous knights mete, and there is the mad man." "Well," said king Marke, "I will see that mad man." So within a day or two king Marke commanded his knights and his hunters that they should bee ready on the morrow for to hunt. And on the morrow he went unto the forrest. And

[1] *Langering.*—Loitering ; sauntering about.

when the king came to the well, he found there lying by that well a faire naked man, and a sword by him. Then the king blew and screked,[1] and therewith his knights came to him. And then the king commanded his knights to take that naked man with fairnesse, "and bring him to my castle." So they did softly and faire, and cast mantels upon sir Tristram, and so led him unto Tintagill, and there they bathed him and washed him, and gave him good hot brothes, till they had brought him well to remembrance. But all this while there was no creature that knew sir Tristram, nor wist not from whence he came. So it hapined upon a day that the queene La beale Isoud heard of such a man that ranne naked in the forrest, and how the king had brought him home to the court. And then La beale Isoud called to her dame Bragwaine, and said: "Come on with me, for we will goe see this man that my lord hath brought from the forrest the last day." So they passed forth, and asked where the sicke man was. And then a squire told the queene that hee was in the garden taking his rest, "and resteth him against the sun." So when the queene looked upon sir Tristram, she was not remembred of him, but ever she said to dame Bragwaine, "Mee seemeth I should have seene him before this time in many places." But as soone as sir Tristram saw her, hee knew her well enough, and then he turned away his visage and wept. And La beale Isoud had alwayes a little brachet with her, that sir Tristram had given her the first time that ever shee came into Cornewaile, and never would that bratchet depart from her, but if sir Tristram was nigh there as La beale Isoud was; and this bratchet was sent from the kings daughter of France unto sir Tristram for great love shee had unto him. And anon as this little brachet felt a savour of sir Tristram, shee lept upon him and licked his learis[2] and his eares, and then shee whined and quested,[3]

[1] *Screked.—Straked,* Caxton. [2] *Learis.*—His cheeks.
[3] *Quested.*—Gave tongue, like a hound.

and shee smelled at his feete and at his hands, and on all the parts of his body that she might come to. "Ah, my lady," said dame Bragwaine unto La beale Isoud, "alas, alas!" said she, "I well see it is mine owne lord sir Tristram." And thereupon La beale Isoud fell downe in a sowne, and so lay a great while; and when shee might speake, shee said: "My lord sir Tristram, blessed be God ye have your life, and now I am sure ye shall be discoverd by this little brachet, for she will never leave you; and also I am sure that as soone as my lord king Marke shall know you, he will banish you out of the countrey of Cornewaile, or else hee will destroy you. For Gods sake, mine owne lord, grant king Marke his will, and then draw you unto the court of king Arthur, for there are yee beloved. And ever when I may I shall send unto you, and as yee list yee may come to mee, and at all times earely and late I will bee at your commaund, to live as poore a life as ever did queene or lady." "Oh, madame," said sir Tristram, "goe from mee, for much anger and danger have I escaped for your love."

CHAP. LXIII.—How king Marke, by the advise of his counsell, banished sir Tristram out of the countrey of Cornewaile for the terme of ten yeare.

THEN La beale Isoud departed, but the brachet would not from him. And therewith came king Marke, and the brachet sate upon him, and bayed at them all. And therewith sir Andret spake and said: "Sir, this is sir Tristram, I see by the brachet." "Nay," said the king, "I can not suppose that it is hee." So the king asked him upon his faith what he was, and what was his name. "So God me helpe," said hee, "my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, and now yee may doe with mee what yee list." "Ah," said king Marke, "mee repenteth of your recovery; and

then he let call his barons to judge sir Tristram to death. So many of his barons would not assent thereto, and in especiall sir Dinas the seneshall and sir Fergus. And so, by the advise of them all, sir Tristram was banished out of the countrey of Cornewaile for ten yeare, and thereupon hee tooke his oath upon a booke before the king and his barons. And so hee was made to depart out of the countrey of Cornewaile. And there were many barons brought him into his ship, of the which some were his friends, and some were his fooes. And in the meane while there came a knight of king Arthurs, his name was sir Dinadan, and his comming was to seeke after sir Tristram. Then they shewed him where he was, armed at all points, going unto the ship. "Now, faire knight," said sir Dinadan, "or yee passe this court, that yee will just with me, I require you." "With a good will," said sir Tristram, "and these lords will give mee leave." So the barons granted thereto, and then they ranne together, and there sir Tristram gave sir Dinadan a fall. And then he prayed sir Tristram to give him leave to goe in his fellowship. "Yee shall be right welcome," said sir Tristram. And so they tooke their horses and rode to their ships together. And when sir Tristram was in the ship, he said thus: "Greete well king Marke and all mine enemies, and tell them I will come againe when I may. And well I am rewarded for the fighting with sir Marhaus, and delivering all the country from servage. And well I am rewarded for the fetching and costs of La beale Isoud out of Ireland, and the danger that I was in first and last, and by the way comming home what danger I had to bring againe queene Isoud from the castle. And well I am rewarded when I fought with sir Bleoberis for sir Segwarides wife. And well am I rewarded when I fought with sir Blamor de Ganis for king Anguish, father unto La beale Isoud. And well am I rewarded when I smote down the good knight sir Lamorake de Galis at king Markes request. And well am I rewarded

when I fought with the king with the hundred knights and the king of Northgalis, and both these would have put his land in servage, and by me they were put to a rebuke. And well am I rewarded for the slaying of Tauleas the mighty gyant, and many moe deeds have I done for him, and now have I my guardon.[1] And tell the king Marke that many noble knights of the round table have spared the barons of this countrey for my sake. Also I am not wel rewarded when I fought with the good knight sir Palomides, and rescewed queene Isoud from him. And at that time king Marke said before all his barons I should have beene better rewarded." And therewith he tooke the sea.

CHAP. LXIV.—How the damosell sought helpe for to help sir Launcelot against thirtie knights, and how sir Tristram fought with them.

AND at the next[2] lodging[3] fast by the sea, there encountred with sir Tristram and with sir Dinadan sir Ector de Maris and sir Bors de Ganis. And there sir Ector encountred with sir Dinadan, and smote him and his horse downe all on an heape to the ground. And then sir Tristram would have justed with sir Bors de Ganis, and sir Bors said hee would not with his good wil just with no Cornish knights, for they are not called men of worship. And all this was done upon a bridge. And with this came sir Bleoberis and sir Driaunt; and sir Bleoberis proffered to just with sir Tristram, and there sir Tristram smote downe sir Bleoberis. Then said sir Bors de Ganis, "I wist never no Cornish knight of so great valour as that knight which beareth the trappours embroydred with crownes." And then sir Tristram and sir Dinadan departed from them, and rode into a forrest, and there met them a damosell that came for the

[1] *Guardon.*—*Waryson*, Caxton. i. e. reward.
[2] *Next.*—Nearest. [3] *Lodging.*—*Landing*, Caxton.

love of sir Launcelot to seeke after some noble knights of king Arthurs court for to rescew sir Launcelot. And so there was ordained for sir Launcelot by the treason of queene Morgan le Fay to have slaine sir Lancelot, and for that cause shee ordained thirtie knights for to lye in a waite for sir Launcelot, and this damosell knew of this treason. And for this cause the damosell came for to seeke noble knights to helpe sir Launcelot, for that night or the day after sir Launcelot should come where as these thirtie knights were. And so this damosell met with sir Bors, sir Bleoberis, sir Ector, and sir Driaunt, and there shee told them of the treason of queene Morgan le Fay. And then they all promised her that they would bee nigh where sir Launcelot should meete with the thirtie knights, and if so be that they set upon him, we will rescew him as well as we can. So the damosell departed, and by adventure the damosell met with sir Tristram and with sir Dinadan, and there the damosell told them all the treason that was ordained for sir Lancelot. "Faire damosell," said sir Tristram, "bring me to that place where they shall meete with sir Launcelot." Then said sir Dinadan, "What will ye doe? it is not for us to fight with thirtie knights; and wit yee well I will not thereof, as for to match one knight or two or three is enough and if they be men. But for to match fifteene knights, that will I never undertake." "Fie for shame," said sir Tristram, "doe but your part." "Nay," said sir Dinadan, "I will not thereof, but if ye will lend me your shield, for ye beare a shield of Cornewaile, and for the cowardise that is named unto the knights of Cornewaile ye are ever forborne." "Nay," said sir Tristram, "I will not depart from my shield for her sake that gave it me; but one thing," said sir Tristram, "I promise thee, sir Dinadan, but if thou wilt promise me to abide with me here I shall slay thee, for I desire no more of thee but to answere one knight, and if thy heart will not serve thee, stand by and looke upon mee and them."

"Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I promise you to looke on and doe what I may to save my selfe, but I would to God I had never met with you." So then anon these thirtie knights came fast by these foure knights, and they were ware of them, and either saw other. And so these thirtie knights let for this cause that they would not wrath them if cause were that they had to doe with sir Launcelot. And the foure knights let them passe to this entent, that they would see and behold what they would doe with sir Launcelot. And so the thirtie knights past on their way, and came by sir Tristram and sir Dinadan. And then sir Tristram cryed on high, and said: "Loe, heere is a knight against you for the love of sir Launcelot!" And there he slew two with one speare, and ten with his sword. And then came in sir Dinadan, and he did passing well. And so of the thirtie knights there went but ten away, and they fled. And this battaile saw sir Bors de Ganis, and his three fellowes. And then they saw well it was the same knight that had justed with them at the bridge. Then they tooke their horses, and rode to sir Tristram, and praised him and thanked him of his good deeds; and they all desired sir Tristram to goe with them unto their lodging. And hee said, "Nay, hee would not goe to no lodging." Then they all foure knights prayed him to tell them his name. "Faire lords," said sir Tristram, "as at this time I will not tell you my name."

CHAP. LXV.—How sir Tristram and sir Dinadan came to a lodging where they must just with two knights.



THEN sir Tristram and sir Dinadan rode forth their way till they came to the shepheards and heardmen, and there they asked them if they knew any lodging or harbour there about. "Forsooth, faire lords," said the heardmen, "nigh hereby is a good lodging in a castle, but such a custome there is,

that there shall no knight be lodged, but if he first just with two knights; and if he be but one knight, he must just with two; and when ye bee within, soone shall yee bee matched." "So there is an evill lodging," said sir Dinadan; "lodge where ye will, for I will not lodge there." "Fie for shame," said sir Tristram, "be ye not a knight of the round table? wherefore ye may not with your worship forsake your lodging." "Not so," said the heardmen, "for and if ye be beaten and have the worse, ye shall not be lodged there, and if ye beate them ye shall be well lodged." "Ah!" said sir Dinadan, "they be two noble knights;" and then sir Dinadan would not bee lodged there in no manner, but as sir Tristram required him of his knighthood, and so they rode thither. And to make short tale, sir Tristram and sir Dinadan smote them both down, and so they entred into the castle, and had good cheere as well as they could thinke or devise. And when they were unarmed and had thought to have taken their rest, there came in at the gate sir Palomides and sir Gaheris, requiring to have the custome of the castle. "What is this?" said sir Dinadan; "I would have my rest." "That may not be," said sir Tristram; "now must we needs defend the custome of the castle, in so much as we have the better of the lord of this castle, and therefore," said sir Tristram, "needs must ye make you ready." "In the devils name," said sir Dinadan, "came I into your company." And so therewith they made them ready. And sir Gaheris encountred with sir Tristram, and there sir Gaheris had a fall. And sir Palomides encountred with sir Dinadan, and sir Palomides gave sir Dinadan a fall. And then must they fight on foote; and that would not sir Dinadan, for hee was sore bruised and hurt of that fall that sir Palomides had given him. Then sir Tristram unlaced sir Dinadans helme, and prayed him to helpe him. "I will not," said sir Dinadan, "for I am sore wounded of the thirtie knights that we had but late to goe to doe battaile. But yee fare," said sir Dinadan unto sir Tristram, "as a

mad man, and like a man that is out of his minde which would cast himselfe away; and I may curse the time that ever I saw you. For in all the world are not such two knights that be so wood as is sir Launcelot and yee sir Tristram; for once I fell in the fellowship of sir Launcelot, as I have now done with you, and hee set mee a worke, that a quarter of a yeare and more I kept my bed. Jesu defend me," said sir Dinadan, "from such two knights, and in speciall from your fellowship." "Then," said sir Tristram, "I will fight with them both." And so sir Tristram bad them both come foorth, "for I will fight with you both." And then sir Palomides and sir Gaheris dressed them, and smote at them both. And then sir Dinadan smot at sir Gaheris a strooke or two, and turned from him. "Nay," said sir Palomides, "it is too much shame for us two knights to fight with one." And then he bad sir Gaheris to stand aside with that knight that had no lust to fight. And then they rode together and fought a great while, and at the last sir Tristram doubled his strookes and drove sir Palomides backe more then three great strides; and then by one assent sir Gaheris and sir Dinadan went betweene them and departed them in sunder. And then, by the assent of sir Tristram, they would have lodged together. But sir Dinadan would not lodge in that castle, and then he cursed the time that ever he came in their fellowship; and so he tooke his horse and his harneys and departed. Then sir Tristram desired the lords of the castle to send him a man for to bring him unto a lodging. And so they did, and overtooke sir Dinadan, and rode unto their lodging two mile thence with a good man in a priory, and there they were well at ease. And that same night sir Bors, and sir Bleoberis, and sir Ector, and sir Driaunt abode still in the same place there as sir Tristram fought with the thirtie knights, and there they met with sir Launcelot the same night, and had made promise to lodge with sir Colgrevance the same night.

CHAP. LXVI.—How sir Tristram justed with sir Kay and sir Sagramore le Desirous, and how sir Gawaine turned sir Tristram from Morgan le Fay.

BUT as soone as the most noble knight sir Launcelot heard of the shield of Cornewaile, then wist he well that it was sir Tristram that fought with his enemies, and then sir Launcelot praised sir Tristram, and called him the man of most worship in the world. So there was a knight in that priorie that hight sir Pellinore, and hee desired to know the name of sir Tristram, but in no wise he could not. And then sir Tristram departed and left sir Dinadan in the priorie, for hee was so weary and so bruised that hee might not ride. And then this knight, sir Pellinore, said to sir Dinadan, "Sithen that yee will not tell mee that knights name, then will I ride after him and make him to tell mee his name, or he shall die therefore." "Beware, sir knight," said sir Dinadan, "for if yee follow him, yee shall repent it." So that knight sir Pellinore rode after sir Tristram and required him to just with him. Then sir Tristram smote him downe and wounded him through the shoulder, and so past on his way. And on the next day following sir Tristram met with pursevants, and they told him that there was made a great cry of a turnament betweene king Carados of Scotland and the king of Northgalis, and either should just against other at the castle of Maidens.[1] And these pursevants sought all the countrey for the good knights, and in especiall king Carados let seeke for sir Launcelot, and the king of Northgalis let seeke for sir Tristram. And at that time sir Tristram thought to bee at those justs and turnaments. And so by adventure they met with sir Kay the seneshall and sir Sagramor le Desirous, and sir Kay required sir Tristram to just.

[1] *Castle of Maidens.*—The castle of Edinburgh is generally understood by the castle of Maidens (in Latin, *castrum puellarum*) from an erroneous notion of the meaning of the other name.

And sir Tristram in a manner refused him, because hee would not be hurt nor brused at the great justes that would bee at the castle of Maidens, and therefore he thought to keepe him fresh and to rest him. And alway sir Kay called and cryed, "Sir knight of Cornewaile, just with me, or else yeeld thee unto me as recreant and overcome." When sir Tristram heard him say so, he incontinent[1] turned toward him to just. And when sir Kay saw him come, then he refused him, and turned his backe. Then said sir Tristram, "As I find thee so shall I take thee." And then sir Kay turned him with an evill will. And sir Tristram smote downe sir Kay, and rode on his way. Then sir Sagramore le Desirous rode fast after sir Tristram, and perswaded him to just with him. And then sir Tristram cast downe sir Sagramor from his horse, and rode his way.

And this same day hee met with a damosell that told him that hee should winne great worship of a knight adventurous which did much harme in all the country. When sir Tristram heard her say so, he was glad to goe with her for to win worship. So sir Tristram rode with that damosell a sixe mile, and then met with him sir Gawaine, and therewithall sir Gawaine knew the damosell that shee was a damosell of queene Morgan le Fay, so sir Gawaine understood that shee led that knight to some mischiefe. "Faire knight," said sir Gawaine, "whither ride yee with that damosell?" "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I wote not whither I shall ride, but as the damosell doth lead mee." "Sir," said sir Gawaine, "ye shall not ride with her, for shee and her lady did never good but evill." So then sir Gawaine drew out his sword, and said, "Damosell, but if thou tell mee anon for what cause thou leadest this knight with thee, thou shalt die for it anon. I know all your ladies treason and yours." "Mercy, sir Gawaine," said the damosell, "if yee will save my life, I shall tell you all as it is." "Say on," said sir Gawaine, "and thou shalt have thy life."

[1] *Incontinent.*—Immediately; without delay.

" Sir," said shee, " my lady queene Morgan le Fay, king Arthurs sister, hath ordained thirty ladies to seeke and espie after sir Launcelot or sir Tristram, and by the traines of these ladies who that may meete with any of these two knights, that they should turne them with their wiles to Morgan le Fays castle, saying that they should doe deeds of worship; and if any of those knights came there, there be thirty knights lying watching in a court[1] for to waite upon sir Launcelot or upon sir Tristram." " Fie for shame!" said sir Gawaine, " that ever such false treason should bee wrought or used in a queene, and a kings sister, and a kings and a queenes daughter."

CHAP. LXVII.—How sir Tristram and sir Gawaine rode to have fought against the thirtie knights, but they durst not come out.

"SIR," said sir Gawaine, " will yee stand with mee, and wee will see the malice of these thirty knights?" " Sir," said sir Tristram, " goe yee to them and it please you, and yee shall see I will not faile you, for it is not long agoe sith I and a fellow met with thirtie knights of that queenes fellowship, and God speed us so that wee may winne worship." So then sir Gawaine and sir Tristram rode toward the castle where Morgan le Fay was, and ever sir Gawaine deemed well that it was sir Tristram de Lyones, because he heard tell that two knights had slaine and beaten thirtie knights. And when they came before the castle, sir Gawaine spake on high and said, " Queene Morgan le Fay, send out your knights which yee have laid in a watch for sir Launcelot or for sir Tristram. Now," said sir Gawaine, " I know your false treason, and through all places where that I ride men shall know of your false treason; and now let see," said sir Gawaine, " whether yee dare come out of your castle, yee thirtie knights." Then the queene spake and all the thirtie

[1] *A court.—In a toure,* Caxton.

knights at once, and said, " Sir Gawaine, full well wotest thou what thou doest and saiest, for, by God, we know thee passing well, but all that thou speakest and doest, thou saiest it upon the pride of that good knight that is there with thee. For there be some of us that know full well the hands of that knight over all well, and wit thou well, sir Gawaine, it is more for his sake then for thine that wee come not out of this castle; for wit yee well, sir Gawaine, that knight which beareth the armes of Cornewaile wee know him well and what he is." And then sir Gawaine and sir Tristram departed, and rode on their way a day or two together, and there by adventure they met with sir Kay and sir Sagramore le Desirous, and then they were passing glad of sir Gawaine and hee of them, but they wist not what he was with the shield of Cornewaile but by deeming. And thus they rode together a day or two. And then they were ware of sir Breuse saunce Pitie chasing a lady for to have slaine her, for he had slaine her paramour tofore. " Hold you all still," said sir Gawain, " and shew none of you foorth, and yee shall see me reward yonder false knight, for if he espie you he is so well horsed that he will escape away." And then sir Gawaine rode betweene Breuse saunce Pitie and the lady, and said, " False knight, leave her and have to doe with me." When sir Bruse saw no moe but sir Gawaine, he feutred his speare, and sir Gawaine against him. And so there sir Breuse overthrew sir Gawaine, and then he rode over him and overthwart him twentie times, to have destroyed him. And when sir Tristram saw him doe so vilaynous a deede, he hurled out against him. And when sir Bruse saw him with his shield of Cornewaile, he knew well that it was sir Tristram, and then he fled and sir Tristram followed after him. And sir Breuse saunce Pitie was well horsed that he went his way quit. And sir Tristram followed him long, for faine he would have beene avenged upon him. And so when he had long chased him he saw a faire well, and thither he rode for to rest him, and tied his horse unto a tree.

CHAP. LXVIII.—How the damosell Bragwaine found sir Tristram sleeping by a well, and how she delivered letters to him from La beale Isoude.



ND then hee pulled off his helme, and washed his visage and his hands, and so he fell on sleepe. In the meane while came a damosell that had sought sir Tristram many wayes and daies within this land, and when she came unto the wel shee looked upon him, and had forgotten the remembrance of sir Tristram, but by his horse shee knew him, that hight Passe-Brewell, that had beene sir Tristrams horse many yeares. For when he was mad in the forrest, sir Fergus kept him. So then the damosell Bragwaine abode still till he was wakned. So when she saw him awake, shee saluted him and he her againe, for either knew other of old acquaintance. And then shee told him how shee had sought him long and farre,[1] and there she told him how she had letters from La beale Isoude. And then anon sir Tristram read them, and wit ye wel he was glad and merry, for therin was many a piteous complaint. Then said sir Tristram, "Lady Bragwayne, yee shall ride with me till the turnement be done at the castle of Maidens, and then shall yee beare letters and tidings with you." And then sir Tristram tooke his horse, and sought lodging, and there he met with a good ancient knight that prayed him to lodge with him. Right so came Governale to sir Tristram, which was glad of that lady. So this olde knights name was sir Pellounes, and he told of the great turneyment that should be at the castle of Maidens. And there sir Launcelot and thirtie knights of his blood had ordayned shields of Cornewaile. And right so there came one unto sir Pellounes and told him that sir Persides de Bloise was come home, and then that knight held up his hand and thanked God of his

[1] *Long and farre.—Longe and brode,* Caxton.

comming home; and there sir Pellounes told sir Tristram that in two yeare he had not seene his sonne Persides. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I know your sonne well for a good knight." So on a time sir Tristram and sir Persides came to their lodging both at once, and so they unarmed them and put upon them their clothing, and then these two knights each one welcomed other. And when sir Persides understood and knew that sir Tristram was a knight of Cornewaile, he said, "I was once in Cornewaile, and there I justed afore king Marke; and so by fortune it happined me at that time to overthrow ten knights, and then came to me sir Tristram de Lyones and overthrew mee, and tooke my lady from me, and that shall I never forget; but I shall remember me and ever I may see my time." "Ah!" said sir Tristram, "now I understand that yee hate sir Tristram; what deeme ye, weene ye that sir Tristram is not able for to withstand your malice?" "Yes," said sir Persides, "I know well that sir Tristram is a noble knight, and a much better knight then I am, yet shall I not owe him my good will." Right as they stoode thus talking at a bay window of that castle, they saw many knights riding to and fro towards the turneyment. And then was sir Tristram ware of a likely knight riding upon a mighty blacke horse, and a blacke covered shield. "What knight is that," said sir Tristram, "with the blacke horse and the blacke shield? he seemeth to be a good knight." "I know him wel," said sir Persides, "he is one of the best knights of the world." "It is then sir Launcelot," said sir Tristram. "Nay," said sir Persides, "it is sir Palomides, that is yet unchristned."

CHAP. LXIX.—How sir Tristram had a fall of sir Palomides, and how sir Launcelot overthrew two knights.

THEN they saw much people of the countrey follow sir Palomides. And within a while after there came a squire of the castle that told sir Pelounes, that was lord of the castle, that a knight with a blacke shield had smitten downe thirteen knights. "Faire brother," said sir Tristram to sir Persides, "let us cast upon us our cloakes, and let us goe and see the play." "Not so," said sir Persides, "wee will not goe like knaves thither, but wee will ride like men and good knights to withstand our enemies." So they armed them and tooke their horses and great speares, and thither they went; whereas many knights assaied themselves before the turneyment. And anon sir Palomides saw sir Persides, and then he sent a squire unto him, and said, "Goe thou unto yonder knight with the greene shield and therin a lyon of gold, and say yee unto him that I require him to just with me; and tell him that my name is sir Palomides." When sir Persides understood the request of sir Palomides hee made him ready. And so there anon they met together, but sir Persides had a fall. And then sir Tristram dressed him for to be revenged upon sir Palomides. And that anon saw sir Palomides, which was ready, and so was not sir Tristram, and tooke him at avantage, and smote him over his horse taile when hee had no speare in his rest. Then start up sir Tristram, and tooke his horse lightly, and was wroth out of measure, and was sore ashamed of that fall. And then sir Tristram sent unto sir Palomides by Governale his squire, and prayed him to just with him once againe at his request. "Nay," said sir Palomides, "as at this time I will not just with that knight, for I know him better then hee weeneth, and if hee be wroth, hee may revenge him to morrow at the castle of Maidens, where he shall see me and many other knights." With that came

sir Dinadan, and when hee saw sir Tristram wroth hee list not to jape.[1] "Loe," said sir Dinadan, "here may a man prove, bee a man never so good yet may hee have a fall, and he was never so wise but hee may be overseene, and he rideth well that never fals." So sir Tristram was passing wroth, and said to sir Persides and to sir Dinadan, "I will bee revenged upon him." Right so as they stood talking, there came by sir Tristram a likely knight, riding passing soberly and heavily with a blacke shield. "What knight is that?" said sir Tristram to sir Persides. "I know him well," said sir Persides, "for his name is sir Briaunt of Northwales." So hee past on among other knights of Northwales. And there came sir Launcelot du Lake with a shield of the armes of Cornewaile, and he sent a squire to sir Briaunt, and required to just. "I will doe that I may," said sir Briaunt. And there sir Launcelot smote downe sir Briaunt from his horse, and he had a great fall. And then sir Tristram mervailed what knight hee was that bare the shield of Cornewaile. "Whatsoever he bee," said sir Dinadan, "I warraunt you he is of king Bans blood, the which be knights of the most noble prowesse in the world, for to accompt so many for so many." And then there came two knights of Northwales, the one hight sir Hewe de la Mountaine, and the other hight sir Mardocke de la Mountaine, and they challenged sir Launcelot foote hot,[2] sir Launcelot not refusing them but made him ready, and with one speare he smote them downe both over their horse croupe. And so sir Launcelot rode forth on his way. "By my faith," said sir Tristram, "he is a good knight that beareth the shield of Cornewaile; and mee seemeth he rideth in the best manner that ever I saw knight ride." So then the king of Northgalis rode hastily unto sir Palomides, and prayed him heartily for his love to just with that knight that had done us of Northgalis despite. "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I am loath to have to doe with that knight,

[1] *To jape.*—To jest. [2] *Foote hot.*—Without resting.

and the cause why, for as to morrow the great turnament shall bee, and therefore I will keepe me fresh by my will." "Nay," said the king of Northgalis, "I pray you require him of justs." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I will just at your request, and require that knight to just with mee; and often I have seene a man have a fall at his owne request."

CHAP. LXX.—How sir Launcelot justed with sir Palomides and overthrew him, and how hee was afterward assailed with twelve knights.

THEN sir Palomides sent unto sir Launcelot a squire, and required him to just. "Faire fellow," said sir Launcelot to the squire, "tell me what is thy lords name, and which is hee?" "Sir," said the squire unto sir Launcelot, "my lords name is sir Palomides." "In Gods name," said sir Launcelot; "for by my knighthood there is no knight in the world that I have seene this seaven yeare that I would rather have to doe withall then with sir Palomides." And then either of the knights made them ready with two great and huge speares. And then said sir Dinadan, "Yee shall see that sir Palomides will quit him right well." "It may bee," said sir Tristram, "but I undertake that knight with the shield of Cornewaile shall give him a fall." "I cannot beleeve it," said sir Dinadan. Right so they spurred their horses and feutred their speares, and either hit other; and there sir Palomides brake a speare upon sir Lancelot, and he sat still and moved not, but sir Launcelot smote him so mightily, that he made him to avoid his sadle, and the stroke brake his shield and hawberke, and he had not fallen he had beene slaine. "How now?" said sir Tristram, "I wist well by the manner of their riding both, that sir Palomides should have a fall." Right so sir Launcelot rode his way, and rode to a well to drinke and to rest him. And they of North-

galis espied him where he rode, and then there followed him twelve knights for to have mischeeved him for this cause, that on the morrow at the turnament of this castle of Maidens he should not win the victory. So they came suddenly upon sir Launcelot, and uneth he might put upon him his helme and take his horse, but they were in hand with him. And then sir Launcelot gat his speare and rode through them, and there he slew a knight and brake his speare in his body. Then he drew his sword, and smote on the right hand and on the left hand, so that within few strookes hee had slaine other three knights, and the remnant that abode hee wounded them full sore. Thus sir Launcelot escaped from his enemies of Northgalis; and then he rode forth on his way unto a friend, and there he lodged him till on the morrow, for hee would not the first day have to doe in that turnament because of his great labour. And on the first day hee was with king Arthur, where as he set on high upon a scaffold, for to discerne who was best worthy of his deeds. So sir Launcelot was with king Arthur, and justed not the first day.

CHAP. LXXI.—How sir Tristram behaved him the first day of the turnament, and there he had the prise.

NOW turne wee to sir Tristram de Lyones, that commanded Governale his servant for to ordaine him a black shield with none other remembrance therein. And so sir Persides and sir Tristram departed from their hoast sir Pellounes, and they rode early toward the turnament, and then they drew them unto king Carados side of Scotland. And anon knights began the field, what of the king of Northgalis part, and what of king Carados part, and there began a great partie, and then there was hurling and rashing. Right so came in sir Persides and sir Tristram, and so they fared that they put aback the king of Northgalis. And then there came

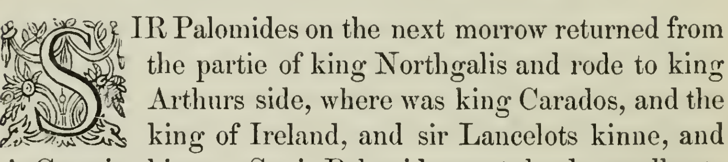
in sir Bleoberis de Ganis and sir Gaheris with them of Northgalis ; and then was sir Persides smitten downe and almost slaine, for more then fortie horsemen went over him. For sir Bleoberis did great deeds of armes, and sir Gaheris failed him not. When sir Tristram beheld them and saw them doe such deeds of armes, hee mervailed greatly what they were. Also sir Tristram thought it a shame that sir Persides was so done to, and then hee gate him a great speare in his hand, and so he rode unto sir Gaheris and smote him downe from his horse. And then was sir Bleoberis wroth, and gate a speare and rode against sir Tristram in great ire, and sir Tristram there met with him and smote sir Bleoberis from his horse. So then the king with the hundred knights was wroth, and hee horsed sir Bleoberis and Gaheris againe ; and there began a great meddle, and ever sir Tristram held them passing short, and ever sir Bleoberis was passing busie upon sir Tristram. And there came sir Dinadan against sir Tristram, and there hee gave sir Dinadan such a buffet that he sowned[1] in his saddle. So anon sir Dinadan came to sir Tristram, and said, "Sir, I know you better then yee weene; but here I promise you my faith that I will never come against you more, for I promise you that sword of yours shall never come more on my helme." With that came sir Bleoberis, and sir Tristram gave him such a buffet that downe he laid his head, and then he caught him by his helme and pulled him under his feete. And then king Arthur blew to lodging. And sir Tristram departed to his pavilion, and sir Dinadan rode with him then. And sir Persides, and king Arthur, and the kings upon both parties, mervailed what knight that was with the blacke shield. Many said their advise, and some knew him for sir Tristram, and held their peace and would nothing say.

So the first day king Arthur and all the kings and lords that were judges gave sir Tristram the prise, how bee it

[1] *Sowned.*—Swooned.

they knew him not, but named him the knight with the blacke shield.

CHAP. LXXII.—How sir Tristram returned against king Arthurs part, because he saw sir Palomides on that part.



SIR Palomides on the next morrow returned from the partie of king Northgalis and rode to king Arthurs side, where was king Carados, and the king of Ireland, and sir Lancelots kinne, and sir Gawains kinne. So sir Palomides sent the damosell unto sir Tristram, that hee sent to seeke him when hee was out of his minde in the forrest, and the damosell asked sir Tristram what hee was, and also what was his right name. "As for that," said sir Tristram, "tell sir Palomides hee shall not wit at this time, to the time I have broken two speares upon him. But let him wit thus much," said sir Tristram, "that I am the same knight that he smote down in the evening before the turnament; and tell him plainely, on what part that sir Palomides be, I will be on the contrary part." "Sir," said the damosell, "yee shall understand that sir Palomides will be on king Arthurs side, where the most noble knights of the world bee." "In the name of God," said sir Tristram, "then will I be with the king of Northgalis, because that sir Palomides will be on king Arthurs side, and else would I be on my lord king Arthurs side but for his sake." So then when king Arthur was come, they let blow unto the field. And then began there a great part, there was running and smiting upon helmes. And so king Carados justed against the king with the hundred knights, and there king Carados had a fall, and then was there hurling and rashing; and right so came in king Arthurs knights, and they bare backe the king of Northgalis knights. And then came in sir Tristram, and hee began so roughly and so bigly that there was not one that might withstand him, and thus sir Tristram endured

long. And at the last sir Tristram haunted among the fellowship of king Ban, and there fell upon him sir Bors de Ganis, and sir Ector de Maris, and sir Blamor de Ganis, with a great many of other knights. And then sir Tristram smote downe on the right hand and on the left hand, that all the lords and ladies spake of his noble deeds. But at the last sir Tristram should have had the worst had not the king with the hundred knights beene his good friend, and then he came with his fellowship and rescewed sir Tristram, and brought him away with the knights that bare the shields of Cornewaile. And then sir Tristram saw another fellowship by themselves, and there were as good as forty knights together, and sir Kay the seneshall was their governour. And then sir Tristram rode in among them all, and there he smote downe sir Kay from his horse, and there he fared among those knights like a greyhound among conies. So sir Launcelot found a knight that was sore wounded upon the head. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "who wounded you so?" "Sir," said he, "a knight that beareth a blacke shield, and I may curse the time that ever I met with him, for hee is a devill and no man." So sir Launcelot departed from him, and thought to meete with sir Tristram, and so he rode with his sword drawen in his hand to seeke sir Tristram; and then hee espied him how he hurled here and there, and at every strooke sir Tristram well nigh smote downe a knight. "O mercy, Jesu!" said king Arthur, "sith the time I bare armes saw I never no knight doe so mervailous deeds of armes." "If I should set upon this knight," said sir Launcelot to himselfe, "I should shame myselfe." And therewith sir Launcelot put up his sword. And then the king with the hundred knights and an hundred moe of Northgalis set upon twentie knights of sir Launcelots kinne, and those twentie knights held them alway together as wild swine, and none would faile other. And when sir Tristram beheld the noblenesse of those twentie knights, hee mervailed of their noble deeds; for he

saw well by their fare, and by their rule, that they had leaver to die then to avoide the field. "Now, Jesu," said sir Tristram, "well may hee bee valyant and full of prowesse that hath such a sort of noble knights to his kinne, and full like is hee to bee a noble man that is their leader and governour;" he meant it by sir Launcelot du Lake. So when sir Tristram had beholden them long, hee thought it shame to see two hundred knights battering upon twentie knights. And then sir Tristram rode to the king with the hundred knights, and said to him, "Sir, I pray you, leave your fighting with those twentie knights, for yee shall winne no worship of them, for yee be too many and they too few; and wit yee well they will not out of the field, I see by their countenance, and worship get yee none and ye sley them; therfore leave your fighting with them, for to encrease my worship I will ride to the twentie knights to helpe them with all my might and power." "Nay," said the king with the hundred knights, "yee shall not doe so. Now I see your courage and curtesie, I will withdraw my knights for your pleasure, for evermore a good knight will favour another, and like will draw to like and semblable."

CHAP. LXXIII.—How sir Tristram found sir Palomides by a well and brought him with him to his lodging.

THEN the king with the hundred knights withdrew his knights. And all this while and long before sir Launcelot had watched upon sir Tristram with a very purpose to have fellowship with him. And so then suddainely sir Tristram, sir Dinadan, and Governale his man, rode on their way into the forrest, that no man perceived where they went. So then king Arthur blew unto lodging, and gave the king of Northgales the prise, because that sir Tristram was on his side. And then sir Launcelot rode here and there so wood

as a lyon that fauted[1] his fill, because hee had lost sir Tristram, and so he returned unto king Arthur. And then in all the field was such a noise, that the wind thereof might be heard two mile thence, how the lords and ladyes cried, "The knight with the blacke shield hath wonne the field." "Alas!" said king Arthur, "where is that knight become? it is shame to all those in the field so to let him scape away from you; but with gentlenesse and curtesie yee might have brought him unto me to the castle of Maidens." Then the noble king Arthur went unto his knights and comforted them in the best manner that he could, and said, "My faire fellowes, be not dismaied, how be it if yee have lost the field this day." And many were hurt and sore wounded, and many were hole. "My fellowes," said king Arthur, "looke that yee bee of good cheere, for to morrow will I bee in the field with you and revenge you of your enemies." So that night king Arthur and his knights rested themselves. The damosell that came from La beale Isoude unto sir Tristram, all the while the turneyment was a doing, was with queene Guenever, and ever the queene asked her for what cause she came into that countrey. "Madame," said she, "I come for none other cause but for my ladie La beale Isoude to wit of your welfare." For in no wise she should not tell the queene that shee came for sir Tristrams sake. So this lady dame Bragwaine tooke her leave of queene Guenever; and so she rode after sir Tristram, and as she rode through the forrest, she heard a great crie of a man, and then she commanded her squire to goe into the forrest to wit what that noyse was. And so hee came to a well, and there found hee a knight bound unto a tree crying as hee had beene out of his mind, and his horse and his harneyes standing by him. And when he espied the squire, therewith he abrayed[2] and brake himselfe loose, and tooke his sword in his hand and ranne to

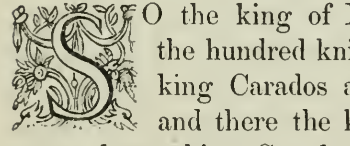
[1] *Fauted.*—I have corrected the text of 1634, which has *feutred,* from Caxton. *Fauted* means wanted; missed.

[2] *Abrayed.*—Started, or made a sudden effort.

have slaine that squire. And the squire tooke his horse and fled as fast as ever hee might unto dame Bragwaine againe, and tould her of his adventure. So shee rode unto sir Tristrams pavilion, and told sir Tristram what adventure she had found in the forrest. "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "upon my head there is some good knight at mischiefe." And then sir Tristram tooke his horse and his sword and rode thither, and there he heard how the knight complained unto himselfe, and said, "I wofull knight, sir Palomides, what misadventure befalleth me, that thus am defouled with falshood and treason, through sir Bors and sir Ector? Alas!" said he, "why live I so long?" And then he gat his sword in his hand, and made many strange signes and tokens, and so through his raging hee threw his sword into that fountaine, and then sir Palomides wailed and wrong his hands; and at the last for pure sorrow hee ranne into that fountaine over his navell, and sought after his sword. So sir Tristram saw that, and ranne upon sir Palomides, and held him fast in his armes. "What art thou," said sir Palomides, "that so holdeth me?" "I am," said sir Tristram, "a man of this forrest, that would thee no harme." "Alas!" said sir Palomides, "I may never win worship where sir Tristram is, for ever where as hee is and if I be there then get I no worship, and if hee bee away for the most part I have the gree, unlesse that sir Launcelot du Lake be not there, and sir Lamoracke." Then said sir Palomides, "Once in Ireland sir Tristram put me to the worst, and another time in Cornewaile, and in other places in this land." "What would yee doe," said sir Tristram, "if ye had sir Tristram here?" "I would fight with him," said sir Palomides, "and ease my heart upon him; and yet, for to say the sooth, sir Tristram is the gentyllest knight in the world living." "What will yee doe?" said sir Tristram, "will yee goe with mee to my lodging?" "Nay," said he, "I will goe to the king with the hundred knights, for he rescewed me from sir Bors de Ganis and sir

Ector, and else had I beene slaine trayterously." Sir Tristram said to sir Palomides such kind words that he went with him unto his lodging. Then Governale went before, and charged dame Bragwaine to goe out of the way to her lodging, "and bid yee sir Persides that hee make him no quarrels." And so they rode together till they came to sir Tristrams pavilion, and there sir Palomides had all the cheere that might be had al that night. But in no wise sir Palomides might not know what sir Tristram was. And so after supper they went to rest, and sir Tristram for great travaile slept till it was day. And sir Palomides might not sleepe for anguish; and in the dawning of the day hee tooke his horse privily, and rode his way to sir Gaheris and to sir Sagramore le Desirous, where as they were in their pavilions, for they three were fellowes at the beginning of this turneyment. And then on the morrow the king blew unto turneiment upon the third day.

CHAP. LXXIV.—How sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides, and how he justed with king Arthur, and other feates.

O the king of Northgalis and the king with the hundred knights they two encountred with king Carados and with the king of Ireland, and there the king with the hundred knights smote downe king Carados, and the king of Northgalis smote downe the king of Ireland. With that came in sir Palomides, and when hee came he made great worke, for by his endented shield he was well knowne. So came in king Arthur, and did great deeds of armes together, and put the king of Northgalis and the king with the hundred knights to the worst. With that came in sir Tristram with his blacke shield, and anon he justed with sir Palomides, and there by fine force sir Tristram smote sir Palomides over his horse taile. Then king Arthur cryed, "Knight with the blacke shield, make thee ready to mee." And in

the same wise sir Tristram smote downe king Arthur. And then by force of king Arthurs knights the king and sir Palomides were remounted. So king Arthur with a great eger heart gat a speare in his hand, and there upon the one side hee smote sir Tristram over his horse. And then full fast sir Palomides came upon sir Tristram as hee was on foote, to have over-ridden him. And sir Tristram was ware of him, and there he stepped aside, and with great ire hee gate him by the arme and pulled him downe from his horse. And then sir Palomides lightly arose, and then they dashed together mightily with their swordes, and many kings, queenes, and lords stood and beheld them. And at the last sir Tristram smote sir Palomides upon the helme three mighty strookes, and at every strooke that hee gave him he said: "Have this for sir Tristrams sake." With that sir Palomides fel to the earth groveling. And then came the king with the hundred knights, and brought sir Tristram a horse, and so was he horsed againe. By then was sir Palomides horsed, and with great ire hee justed at sir Tristram with his speare as it was in the rest, and gave him a great dash with his speare. So sir Tristram avoided his speare, and gate him by the necke with both his hands, and pulled him cleane out of his saddle, and so bare him before him the length of ten speares, and then in the presence of them all he let him fall at his adventure. So sir Tristram was ware of king Arthur with a naked sword in his hand, and with his speare sir Tristram ran on king Arthur, and king Arthur boldly abode him, and with his sword hee smote atwo his speare, and therewith sir Tristram was astonied, and so king Arthur gave him three or foure great strookes or hee might get out his sword. And at the last sir Tristram drew his sword and assailed king Arthur passing hard. With that the great presse departed; then sir Tristram rode here and there and did great feats; and eleven of the good knights of the blood of king Ban, that was of sir Launcelots kinne, that

day sir Tristram smote downe, that all the estates mervailed of his great deedes, and all cryed upon the knight with the blacke shield.

CHAP. LXXV.—How sir Launcelot hurt sir Tristram, and how after, sir Tristram smote downe Palomides.

WHEN this cry was so great, that sir Launcelot heard it, and then gat hee a great speare in his hand and came towards the cry. And then sir Launcelot cryed on high, "Knight with the blacke shield, make thee ready for to just with me." When sir Tristram heard him say so, hee gat his speare in his hand, and either put down their heads and came together as thunder, and sir Tristrams speare brake in peeces, and sir Launcelot by malefortune[1] strook sir Tristram on the side a deep wound nigh to the death, but yet sir Tristram avoyded not his saddle, and so the speare brake. And therewithall sir Tristram, that was wounded, gat out his sword and rashed to sir Launcelot, and gave him three great strookes upon the helme that the fire sprang out. and sir Launcelot stooped low his head toward his saddle bow. And therewithall sir Tristram departed from the field, for he felt him so wounded that hee wend he should have died. And sir Dinadan espied him, and followed him into the forrest. And sir Launcelot abode, and did many mervailous deeds. So when sir Tristram was departed by the forrest side, he alighted and unlaced his harneis, and refreshed his wound. Then wend sir Dinadan that he should have died. "Nay, nay," said sir Tristram, "sir Dinadan, never dread thee, for I am heart hole, and of this wound I shall soone be hole by the grace of God." By then sir Dinadan was ware where sir Palomides came riding straight upon them. And then sir Tristram was ware that sir Palomides came for to have destroyed him.

[1] *Malefortune.*—Misfortune; mishap.

And so sir Dinadan gave him warning, and said: "My lord sir Tristram, yee are so sore wounded that yee may not have to doe with him, therefore I will ride against him and doe what I may, and if I am slaine yee may pray for my soule, and in the meane while yee may withdraw you and goe into the castle, or into the forrest, that hee shall not meete with you." Sir Tristram smiled, and said: "I thanke you, sir Dinadan, of your good will, but hee shall wit that I am able to handle him." And anon hastily he armed him, and tooke his horse and a great speare in his hand, and said to sir Dinadan, "Adieu," and rode toward sir Palomides a soft pace. And when sir Palomides saw that, he made a countenance to amend his horse, but he did it for this cause, for hee abode sir Gaheris that came after him, and when hee was come, hee rode toward sir Tristram. And sir Tristram sent unto sir Palomides and required him to just with him, and if hee smote downe sir Palomides he would doe no more to him; and if it so happen that sir Palomides smote downe sir Tristram he bad him doe his uttermost. So they were accorded, and met together, and sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides, and he had a grievous fall, so that he lay still as he had beene dead. And then sir Tristram ranne upon sir Gaheris, and hee would not have justed; but whether hee would or not sir Tristram smote him over his horse croupe, that he lay still as though he had beene dead. And then sir Tristram rode his way, and left sir Persides squire within the pavilions, and sir Tristram and sir Dinadan rode to an old knights place to lodge them. And the old knight had five sonnes at the turnament, for whom he prayed God heartily for their comming home. And they came home all five well beaten.

And when sir Tristram departed for to goe into the forrest, sir Launcelot held alway the stoure[1] like hard, as a man enraged that tooke no heede to himselfe, and wit yee

[1] *Stoure.*—The battle, or contest. The edit. of 1634 reads, erroneously, *towre*.

well there was many a noble knight against him. And when king Arthur saw sir Launcelot doe so mervailous deeds of armés, then hee armed him, and tooke his horse and armour, and rode into the field to helpe sir Launcelot, and so many knights came in with king Arthur. And to make short tale, the king of Northgales in conclusion and the king with the hundred knights were put to the worst. And because sir Launcelot abode and was the last in the field, the prise was given him. But sir Launcelot would neither for king, queene, nor knight have the prise; but where the cry was cried through the field, "Sir Launcelot, sir Launcelot hath wonne the field this day!" sir Launcelot lets make another cry contrary to that cry: "Sir Tristram hath wonne the field, for he began first, and last he hath endured, and so hath he done the first day, the second, and the third day."

CHAP. LXXVI.—How the prise of the third day was given to sir Launcelot, and sir Launcelot gave it to sir Tristram.

THEN all the estates and degrees high and low said great worship of sir Launcelot, for the honour that hee did unto sir Tristram, and for that honour doing to sir Tristram hee was at that time more praised and renowned, than if hee had overthrowen five hundred knights; and all the people wholely for his gentlenesse, first the estates both high and low, and after the comminalty, cryed at once, "Sir Launcelot hath wonne the field, whosoever say nay." Then was sir Launcelot wroth and ashamed, and therewith hee rode unto king Arthur. "Alas!" said the king, "we are all dismaied that sir Tristram is thus departed from us. By God," said king Arthur, "hee is one of the noblest knights that ever I saw hold speare or sword in hand, and the curteousest knight in his fighting, for full hard I saw him," said king Arthur, "as he smote sir Palomides upon his helme thrice that hee abashed his helme with his strooke,

and also he said, 'Heere is a strooke for sir Tristram!' and thus he said thrice." And then king Arthur, sir Launcelot, and sir Dodinas le Savage tooke their horses to seeke sir Tristram, and by the meanes of sir Persides, who had told king Arthur where sir Tristram was in his pavilion, but when they came there, sir Tristram and sir Dinadan were gone. Then king Arthur and sir Launcelot were heavy, and returned againe to the castle of Maidens, making great mone for the hurt done to sir Tristram, and his suddaine departing. "So God me helpe," said king Arthur, "I am more heavie that I can not meete with him, then for all the hurts that all my knights have had at the turnament." Right so came sir Gaheris, and told to king Arthur how sir Tristram had smitten downe sir Palomides, and it was at sir Palomides owne request. "Alas!" said king Arthur, "that was great dishonour to sir Palomides, in as much as sir Tristram was sore wounded; and now may we all, kings and knights and men of worship, say that sir Tristram may bee called a noble knight, and one of the best knights that ever I saw dayes of my life.[1] For I will that ye all, kings and knights, know," said king Arthur, "that I never saw knight doe so mervailously as hee hath done all these three dayes; for he was the first that began, and that longest held on, save this last day. And though he was hurt, it was a manly adventure of two noble knights. And when two noble men encounter, needs must the one have the worst, like as God will suffer at that time." "As for me," said sir Launcelot, "for all the lands that ever my father left me, I would not have hurt sir Tristram, if I had knowne him at that time; that I hurt him was for that I saw not his shield; for if I had seene his blacke shield, I would not have medled with him for many causes, for late he did as much for mee as ever knight did, and that is well knowne that he had to doe with thirty knights and no helpe save sir Dinadan. And one thing shall I promise you," said sir Launcelot, "sir Palomides

[1] *Dayes of my life.*—i. e. ever since I was born.

shall repent it as in his unkind dealing for to follow that noble knight that I by mishap hurt thus." Sir Launcelot said all the worship that might bee said by sir Tristram. And then king Arthur made a great feast to all them that would come. Thus let we passe king Arthur, and a little we will turne unto sir Palomides, that, after he had a fall of sir Tristram, hee was neere hand enraged and out of his wit for despite of sir Tristram; and so hee followed him by adventure, and as hee came by a river in his woodnes hee would have made his horse to have lept over, and the horse failed footing and fell in the river; wherefore sir Palomides was adread least that hee should have beene drowned, and then he avoided his horse and swamme to the land, and let his horse goe downe by adventure.

CHAP. LXXVII.—How sir Palomides came to the castle where sir Tristram was, and of the quest that sir Launcelot and ten knights made for sir Tristram.

AND when hee came to the land, he put off his harneis and sate roaring and crying as a man out of his minde. Right so there came a damosell even by sir Palomides, that was sent from sir Gawaine and his brother unto sir Mordred, that lay sicke in the same place with the old knight where sir Tristram was. For sir Persides hurt so sir Mordred ten dayes before, and if it had not beene for the love of sir Gawaine and his brother, sir Persides had slaine sir Mordred. And so this damosell came by sir Palomides, and shee and hee had language together, the which pleased neither of them. And so the damosell rode her way till shee came to the old knights place, and there shee told that old knight how shee had met with the wooddest knight by adventure that ever she met withall. "What thing bare hee in his shield?" said sir Tristram. "It was endented with white and blacke," said the damosell. "Ah!" said sir Tristram,

"that was the good knight sir Palomides; for well I know him," said sir Tristram, "for one of the best knights now living in this realme." Then the old knight tooke a little hackney, and rode for sir Palomides, and brought him unto his manour. And then full well knew sir Tristram sir Palomides; but he said but little, for at that time sir Tristram was walking upon his feete and well amended of his hurts, and alwayes when sir Palomides saw sir Tristram he would behold him full mervailously, and ever him seemed that he had seene him, and then would he say to sir Dinadan, "And ever I may meete with sir Tristram, he shall not escape my hands." "I mervaile," said sir Dinadan, "that yee boast behind sir Tristram, for it is but late that hee was in your hands; why would yee not hold him while yee had him? for I saw my selfe twice or thrice that yee gat but little worship of sir Tristram." And then was sir Palomides ashamed. So leave wee them a little while in the castle with the old knight sir Darras.

Now shall wee speake of king Arthur, that said to sir Launcelot, "Had not ye beene, we had not lost sir Tristram, for he was heere daily unto the time ye met with him, and in an evill time," said king Arthur, "yee encountred with him." "My lord Arthur," said sir Launcelot, "ye put upon mee that I would bee causer of his departing; God knoweth it was against my will, but when men bee hot in deeds of armes, often they hurt their friends as well as their foes. And my lord," said sir Launcelot, "yee shall understand that sir Tristram is a man that I am loath to offend, for hee hath done for me more then ever I did for him, as yet." Then sir Launcelot made to bring forth a booke; and then sir Launcelot said: "Heere be tenne knights that will sweare upon a booke never to rest one night where wee rest another these twelve moneths till wee find sir Tristram. And as for mee," said sir Launcelot, "I promise you upon this booke, that if I may meete with him, either by fairenesse or foulnesse I shall bring him

with me unto this court, or else I shall die therefore." And the names of these ten knights that had undertaken this quest were these following: first sir Launcelot, sir Ector de Maris, sir Bors de Ganis, sir Bleoberis, sir Blamor de Ganis, and sir Lucas the butler, sir Ewaine, sir Galihad, sir Lyonell, and sir Galihodin. So these ten noble knights departed from the court of king Arthur. And so they rode upon their quest all together untill they came to a crosse that stood betweene four high wayes, and there departed the fellowship in foure parts for to seeke sir Tristram. And as sir Launcelot rode by adventure he met with the damosell dame Bragwaine, the which was sent into that countrey for to seeke sir Tristram, and shee fled as fast as her palfray might runne. So sir Launcelot met with her, and asked her why she fled. "Ah, faire knight," said dame Bragwaine, "I flee for dread of my life, for heere followeth me sir Breuse saunce Pitty for to slay me." "Hold you nigh me," said sir Lancelot. And when sir Lancelot saw sir Breuse, he cryed on him and said, "Thou false knight, destroyer of ladies and damosels, now thy last dayes bee come." When sir Breuse saunce Pitty saw sir Launcelots shield, he knew it well, for at that time he bare not the armes of Cornewaile, but he bare his owne shield. And then sir Breuse saunce Pitty fled, and sir Launcelot followed after him; but sir Breuse was so well horsed that when him list to flee he still might well flee, and so abide when him list. And then sir Launcelot returned unto dame Bragwaine, and shee thanked him of his great labour.

CHAP. LXXVIII.—How sir Tristram, sir Palomides, and sir Dinadan were taken and put in prison.



OW will wee speake of sir Lucas[1] the butler, which by fortune came riding to the same place where sir Tristram was, and hee came for none other entent but for to aske harbour.

[1] *Sir Lucas.*—Caxton has here always *Lucan.*

So the porter asked what was his name. "Tell your lord that my name is sir Lucas the butler, a knight of the round table." So the porter went unto sir Darras, lord of the place, and told him who was there to aske harbour. "Nay, nay," said sir Daname (the which was nephew unto sir Darras), "tell him that hee shall not lodge here, but let him wit that I sir Daname will meet with him anon, and bid him make him ready." So sir Daname came forth on horsebacke, and there they met together with speares, and sir Lucas smote downe sir Daname over his horse croupe; and then he fled into the place, and sir Lucas rode after him and asked after him many times. Then sir Dinadan said to sir Tristram, "It is shame to see the lords cosin of this place defouled." "Abide," said sir Tristram, "and I shall redresse it." And in the meane while sir Dinadan was on horsebacke, and he justed with sir Lucas the butler, and there sir Lucas smote sir Dinadan through the thicke of the thigh, and so hee rode his way, and sir Tristram was wroth that sir Dinadan was hurt, and followed after and thought to avenge him. And within a while he overtooke sir Lucas, and bad him turne. And so they met together that sir Tristram hurt sir Lucas passing sore, and gave him a fall. With that came sir Ewaine, a gentle knight, and when he saw sir Lucas so hurt, he called sir Tristram to just with him. "Faire knight," said sir Tristram, "tell me your name, I require you." "Sir knight, wit yee well my name is sir Ewaine le fise du roy Urein." "Ah," said sir Tristram, "by my will I would not have to doe with you at no time." "Yee shall not so," said sir Ewaine, "but that yee shall have to doe with me." And when sir Tristram saw none other but he must just, he rode against him and overthrew sir Ewaine, and hurt him in the side, and so he departed unto his lodging againe. And when sir Dinadan understood that sir Tristram had hurt sir Lucas, he would have ridden after sir Lucas for to have slaine him, but sir Tristram would not suffer him. Then

sir Ewaine let ordeine an horse-litter, and brought sir Lucas unto the abbey of Ganis, and the castle thereby hight the castle of Gadis,[1] of the which sir Bleoberis was lord. And at that castle sir Launcelot promised all his fellowes to meete in the quest of sir Tristram. So when sir Tristram was come to his lodging, there came a damosell and tolde unto sir Darras that three of his sonnes were slaine at the turneyment, and two grevously wounded that they were never like to helpe themselves, and all this was done by a noble knight that bare the blacke shield, and that was he that bare the prise; so came there one and told sir Darras that the same knight was with him that bare the blacke shield. So sir Darras went unto the chamber of sir Tristram, and there he found his shield and shewed it to the damosell. "Ah, sir," said the damosell, "that same is he that slew your three sonnes." So without any tarrying sir Darras put sir Tristram, sir Palomides, and sir Dinadan within a strong prison; and there sir Tristram was like to have died of great sicknesse, and sir Palomides would every day reprove sir Tristram of old hate that had beene betweene them. And alway sir Tristram spake faire, and said but little. But when sir Palomides saw the falling of sicknesse of sir Tristram, then was he heavy for him, and comforted him in the best wise that he could. And there came fortie knights to sir Darras that were of his kinne, and they would have slaine sir Tristram and his two fellowes, but sir Darras would not suffer it, and kept them in prison, and meate and drinke they had enough. So sir Tristram endured there great paine, for sicknesse had undertaken him, and that is the greatest paine that a prisoner may have; for all the while a prisoner may have his health of his body he may endure under the mercy of God and in hope of good deliverance; but when sicknesse toucheth a prisoners body, then a prisoner may say all wealth is him bereft, and then hath he cause to waile and

[1] *Castle of Gadis.—Ganys,* Caxton.

to weepe. And so did sir Tristram when sicknesse had taken him, then he tooke such sorrow that almost he died.

CHAP. LXXIX.—How king Marke was sory of the good renowne of sir Tristram, and how some of king Arthurs knights justed with knights of Cornewaile.

NOW will we leave sir Tristram, sir Palomides, and sir Dinadan in prison, and speake we of the other knights that sought after sir Tristram in many divers parts of this land. And some went in Cornewaile. And by adventure sir Gaheris, nephew unto king Arthur, came unto king Marke, and there he was well received, and sate at king Markes owne table and eate of his owne meate.[1] And then asked king Marke sir Gaheris "what tidings there were of him in the realme of Logris." "Sir," said sir Gaheris, "the king reigneth as a noble knight, and now but late there was a great turneyment and justs as ever I saw in the realme of Logris, and the most noble knights were at the justs; but there was one knight that did mervailously three dayes, and he bare a black shield, and of all knights that ever I saw he proved the best knight." "Then," said king Marke, "that was sir Launcelot, or sir Palomides the panim."[2] "Not so," said sir Gaheris, "for sir Launcelot and sir Palomides both were on the contrarie part against the knight with the blacke shield." "Then it was sir Tristram," said the king. "Yea," said sir Gaheris. And therewith the king smote downe his head, and in his heart he feared sore that sir Tristram should get such worship in the realme of Logris, wherethrough he himselfe should not be able to withstand him. Thus sir Gaheris had great cheere with king Marke, and with the queene La beale Isoud, the which was glad of sir Gaheris words, for well

[1] *Owne meate.*—i. e. he was served from the same dish, a special mark of favour and honour.

[2] *Panim.*—Pagan.

shee wist by his deeds and manners that it was sir Tristram. And then the king made a feast royall, and unto that feast came sir Ewaine le fise du roy Ureine, and some folke called him sir Ewaine les blaunce Mains. And this sir Ewaine challenged all the knights of Cornewaile. Then was king Marke wood wroth that he had no knights to answere him. Then sir Andret, nephew unto king Marke, lept up and said, "I will incounter with sir Ewaine." Then he went and armed him and horsed him in the best manner as hee right well could; and so there sir Ewaine meet with sir Andret, and smote him downe, that he sowned on the earth. Then was king Marke sory and wroth out of measure that hee had no knight to revenge his nephew sir Andret. So the king called unto him sir Dinas the seneshall, and prayed him for his sake to take upon him to just with sir Ewaine. "Sir," said sir Dinas, "I am full loath to have to doe with any knight of the rounde table." "Yet," said the king, "for my love take upon thee to just with him." So sir Dinas made him ready, and anon they encountred together with great speares, but sir Dinas was overthrown, horse and man, and had a great fall on the earth, Who was wroth but king Marke? "Alas!" said he, "have I no knight that will encounter with yonder knight?" "Sir," said sir Gaheris, "for your sake I will just." So sir Gaheris made him ready, and when hee was armed hee rode forth into the field. And when sir Ewaine saw sir Gaheris shield, hee rode unto him and said: "Sir, yee doe not your part, for the first time that yee were made knight of the rounde table yee swore that yee would not have to do with your fellowship wittingly. And pardy, sir Gaheris, ye know me well enough by my shield, and so too doe I know you by your shield, and though ye would breake your oath, I will not breake mine, for there is not so much as one here nor yee that shall thinke I am afeard of you; but I durst right well have to doe with you, and yet we bee sisters sonnes." Then

was sir Gaheris ashamed. And so therewith every knight went his way, and sir Ewaine rode into the countrey. Then king Marke armed him, and tooke his horse and his speare with a squire with him, and then he rode after sir Ewaine, and sudainly at a gap he ran upon him as he that was not ware of him, and there he smote him almost through the body, and there left him lying on the ground. So within a while there came sir Kay and found sir Ewaine, and asked him how he was hurt. "I wote not," said sir Ewaine, "why nor wherfore, but by treason I am sure I gat this hurt, for here came a knight sudainly upon mee or I was ware, and sudainly hurt me." Then was there come sir Andret for to seeke king Marke. "Thou traitour knight," said sir Kay, "and I wist it were thou that thus traytorously hast hurt this noble knight, thou shouldest never passe my hands." "Sir," said sir Andret, "it was not I that did hurt him, and that I will reporte me unto himselfe." "Fie upon you, false knights," said sir Kay, "for all yee of Cornewaile be nought worth." So sir Kay made sir Ewaine to be caried to the abbey of the black crosse, and there he was healed of his wounds. And then sir Gaheris tooke his leave of king Marke; but or he departed he said, "Sir king, yee did a foule shame to you and your court when yee banished sir Tristram out of this countrey, for yee needed not to have doubted no knight and he had beene here." And so he departed.

CHAP. LXXX.—Of the treason of king Marke, and how sir Gaheris smote him downe and sir Andret his cosin.

THEN there came sir Kay the seneshall unto king Marke, and there he had good cheere outwardly. "Now, faire lords," said king Marke, "will yee goe prove any adventures in the forrest of Maris,[1] in the which I know an hard adventure

[1] *Maris.—Morris*, Caxton.

as I know any?" "Sir," said sir Kay, "I will prove it." And sir Gaheris said he would bee advised, for king Marke was alway full of treason. And therewith sir Gaheris departed and rode his way, and by the same way that sir Kay should ride hee laid him downe to rest, charging his squire to waite upon[1] sir Kay, "and warne me when he commeth." So within a while sir Kay came riding that way. And then sir Gaheris tooke his horse and met him, and said, "Sir Kay, yee are not wise to ride at the request of king Marke, for he dealeth all with treason." Then said sir Kay, "I require you let us prove this adventure." "I shall not faile you," said sir Gaheris. And so they rode that time to a lake that was that time called the perillous lake, and there they abode under the shadow of the wood. The meane while king Marke within the castle of Tintagill avoyded all his barons, and all other, save such that were privie with him, were all avoided out of his chamber. And then he let call his nephew sir Andret, and bad arme him and horse him lightly, and by that time it was midnight, and so king Marke was armed in blacke, his horse and all, and so at a privy posterne they two issued out with their berlets[2] with them, and rode till they came to the lake. Then sir Kay espied them first, and gat a speare and profered to just, and king Marke rode against him, and hit each other full hard, for the moone shone as faire as the bright day. And there at that justs sir Kais horse fell downe, for his horse was not so big as the kings horse was, and sir Kais horse bruised him full sore. Then sir Gaheris was full wroth that sir Kay had a fall. And then he cried, "Sir knight, sit thou fast in thy sadle, for I will revenge my fellow if I can." Then king Marke was afferd of sir Gaheris, and with an evill will king Marke rode against him. And sir Gaheris gave him such a strooke that he fell downe. So then foorthwith sir Gaheris rode unto sir Andret, and smot him from his horse quite and cleane a

[1] *Waite upon.*—Watch for. [2] *Berlets.*—*Varlets,* Caxton.

speares length, so that his helme smote in the earth well halfe a foote deepe,[1] and had nigh broken his necke. And therewith sir Gaheris alighted, and set sir Kay againe upon his horse.[2] And then sir Gaheris and sir Kay went both on foote to king Marke and sir Andret, and bad them for to yeeld them and tell them their names, or else they should die. And then with great paine sir Andret spake first, and said, "This knight that smote downe sir Kay is king Marke of Cornewaile, and therfore beware what yee doe, and I am sir Andret his cosin." "Fie upon you both," said sir Gaheris, "for a false traytour, and false treason hast thou wrought and he both, under a fained cheere that yee made us; it were great pitie," said sir Gaheris, "that thou shouldest live any longer." "Save my life," said king Marke, "and I will make amends, and consider that I am a king anoynted." "It were more shame," said sir Gaheris, "to save thy life, thou art a king anoynted with creme,[3] and therefore thou shouldest hold with all men of worship, and therefore thou art worthy to die." With that he lashed at king Marke without saying any more. And he covered him with his shield, and defended him as he might. And then sir Kay lashed at sir Andret. And therewith king Marke yeelded him unto sir Gaheris; and then he kneeled downe, and made his oath upon the crosse of the sword that never while he lived he would bee against arraunt knights. And also he swore to be good friend unto sir Tristram, if ever hee came into Cornewaile. By then sir Andret was on the earth, and sir Kay would have slaine him. "Let be," said sir Gaheris, "sley him not, I pray you." "It were pitty," said sir Kay, "that he should live any longer, for this is nigh cosin unto sir Tristram, and ever he hath beene a traytour unto him, and by him he was exiled out

[1] *Halfe a foote deepe.*—This, as well as the spear's length, is an addition to Caxton's text.

[2] *Againe upon his horse.*—Caxton has merely, *and gate up sir Kay*, which corresponds better with what follows.

[3] *Creme.*—Crism; the holy oil.

of Cornewaile, and therefore I will sley him," said sir Kay. "Yee shall not," said sir Gaheris, "sithence I have given the king his life, I pray you to give him his life." And therewith sir Kay let him goe. And so sir Kay and sir Gaheris rode forth their way unto sir Dinas the seneshall, for because they heard say that he loved well sir Tristram, there they rested them. And soone after they rode unto the realme of Logris. And so within a little while they met with sir Launcelot, which had alwayes dame Bragwaine with him, to that entent he wend for to have met the sooner with sir Tristram; and sir Launcelot asked them what tiding in Cornewaile, and whether they heard of sir Tristram or not. Sir Kay and sir Gaheris answered and said that they had not heard of him. Then they told sir Launcelot word by word of their adventure; so sir Launcelot smiled, and said, "Hard it is to take out of the flesh that is bred in the bone." And so made them merry together.

CHAP. LXXXI.—How after that sir Tristram, and sir Palomides, and sir Dinadan had beene long in prison, they were delivered out.


OW leave we off this tale, and speake we of sir Dinas, that had within the castle a paramour, and shee loved another knight better then him. So when sir Dinas went out on hunting, shee slipped downe by a towell, and tooke with her two brachets, and so shee went to the knight that she loved, and he her againe. And when sir Dinas came home, he missed his paramour and his two brachets, then was he more wroth for his two brachets then he was for the lady. So then he rode after the knight that had his paramour, and bad him for to turne and just. So sir Dinas smote him downe, that with the fall hee brake one of his legs and an arme. And so then his lady and his paramour cryed unto sir Dinas mercy, and said shee would love him better than ever shee did. "Nay, nay," said sir Dinas, "I shall never trust them

that once have betrayed me, and therefore as yee have begun so end, for I will never meddle with you." And so sir Dinas departed, and tooke his brachets with him, and rode to his castle.

Now leave we him and turne we unto sir Launcelot, that was right heavy that he could heare no tidings of sir Tristram; for all this while hee was in prison with sir Darras, and sir Palomides, and sir Dinadan. Then dame Bragwaine tooke her leave to goe into Cornewaile, and sir Launcelot, sir Kay, and sir Gaheris rode for to seeke sir Tristram in the country of Surluse. Now speaketh this tale of sir Tristram and of his two fellowes, for every day sir Palomides brawled and said language against sir Tristram. "I mervaile," said sir Dinadan, "of thee, sir Palomides, and thou hadst sir Tristram heere, thou wouldst doe him no harme; for and a wolfe and a sheepe were together in prison, the wolfe would suffer the sheepe to bee in peace. And wit thou well," said sir Dinadan, "this same is sir Tristram at a word, and now maist thou doe thy best with him, and let see now how yee can shift with your hands." Then was sir Palomides abashed, and said little. "Sir Palomides," said sir Tristram, "I have heard much of your mauger[1] against mee, but I will not meddle with you at this time by my will, because I dread the lord of this place that hath us in governaunce, for and I dread him not more then I doe thee, soone should it be shift." So they pleased themselves.[2] And with that came in a damosell, and said, "Gentle knights, be glad and make good cheere, for ye are sure of your lives, and that heard I say of my lord sir Darras." And then were they glad all three, for daily they wend to have beene put to death. Then sir Tristram fell sicke, that he thought to have died. Then sir Dinadan

[1] *Mauger.—Maugré*, Caxton; i. e. ill-will.

[2] *Shift . . . themselves.*—Caxton has, rather more intelligibly, *soone hit shold be skyfte. Soo they peaced them self*, i. e. they appeased themselves.

wept, and so did sir Palomides under them, making great sorrow. So a damosell came into them, and found them mourning, and then she went to sir Darras and told him how the mighty knight that bare the blacke shield was likely for to die. "That shall not bee," said sir Darras, "for God defend when any knights come to me for succour that I should suffer them to die within my prison; therefore," said sir Darras unto the damosell, "fetch that knight and both his fellowes before me." And then anon when sir Darras saw sir Tristram before him, he said, "Sir knight, I me repent of thy sicknesse, for thou art called a full noble knight, and so it seemeth by thee. And wit ye well, it shall never be said that sir Darras hath destroyed such a noble knight as thou art in prison, how be it thou hast slaine three of my sonnes, whereby I was greatly agrieved. But now thou shalt goe hence and thy fellowes; and all your harneis and your horses have beene faire and cleane kept, and ye shall goe wheresoever it please you, upon this covenant, that thou, sir knight, shalt promise me for to be good friend unto me and my sonnes that be on live, and also thou shalt shew and tell mee what is thy name, and of thy being?"

"Sir," said he, "as for mee, my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, and in Cornewaile was I borne,[1] and king Meliodas was my father, and I am nephew unto king Marke. And as for the death of your sonnes, I might not doe withall, for, and they had beene the next kinne that I have, I might have done non other wise. And if I had slaine them by treason or trechery, I had beene worthy to have died." "All this I consider," said sir Darras, "that all that yee did was by force of knighthood, and that was the cause I would not put you to death. But sithen yee bee the good knight sir Tristram, I pray you heartily for to bee my good friend and to my sonnes." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I promise

[1] *In Cornewaile was I borne.*—This is not quite in accordance with the accounts given in other parts of Tristram's story. But see p. 10.

you by the faith of my body ever while I live I will doe you service, for ye have done to us but as a naturall knight ought to doe." And then sir Tristram reposed him there till hee was amended of his sicknesse. And when he was whole and strong, they tooke their leave, and every knight tooke his horse and so departed, and rode together till they came unto a crosse-way. "Now fellowes," said sir Tristram, "heere will wee depart in sundry wayes." And because sir Dinadan had the first adventure, of him I will begin.

CHAP. LXXXII.—How sir Dinadan rescewed a lady from sir Breuse saunce Pittie, and how sir Tristram received a shield of Morgan le Fay.

AND so as sir Dinadan rode by a well, he found a lady making great mone. "What ayleth you?" said sir Dinadan. "Sir knight," said the lady, "I am the wofullest lady of the world, for within these five dayes here came a knight called sir Breuse saunce Pittie, and hee slew mine owne brother, and ever sith hee hath kept mee at his owne will, and of all men in the world I hate him most; and therefore I require you of your knighthood for to avenge me, for he will not tarry but will be heere anone." "Let him come," said sir Dinadan, "and because of the honour of all women, I will doe my part." With this came sir Breuse saunce Pitty, and when hee saw a knight with his lady, he was wood[1] wroth, and said to sir Dinadan, "Sir knight, keepe[2] thee from mee." So they hurled together as thunder, and either smote other passing sore. But sir Dinadan put him through the shoulder a greevous wound, and or ever sir Dinadan might turne him to sir Breuse, hee was gone and fled. And then the lady prayed him to bring her to a castle there

[1] *Wood.*—Mad; furiously.
[2] *Keepe.*—Defend yourself against me.

beside, but foure mile thence. And so sir Dinadan brought her there, where shee was welcome, for the lord of that castle was her unkle. And so sir Dinadan rode his way upon his adventure.

Now turne wee this tale unto sir Tristram, that by adventure came to a castle to aske lodging, wherein was queene Morgan le Fay. And so when sir Tristram was let into that castle, hee had good cheere all that night. And on the morrow, when he would have departed, the queene said, "Wit yee well yee shall not depart lightly, for yee are here as a prisoner." "Jesu defend mee," said sir Tristram, "for I was but late agoe prisoner." "Faire knight," said the queene, "yee shall abide with me till I know what yee are, and from whence ye come." And ever the queene would set sir Tristram on her side, and her paramour on the other side; and ever Morgan le Fay would behold sir Tristram, and thereat the knight was jealous, and was in will suddainly to have runne upon sir Tristram with a sword, but hee left it for shame. So the queene said to sir Tristram, "Tell mee thy name, and I shall suffer thee to depart when thou wilt." "Upon that covenant I will tell you, my name is sir Tristram de Lyones." "Ah!" said Morgan le Fay, "and I had wist that, thou shouldest not have departed as soone as thou shalt; but sithen I have made a promise, I will hold it, with that thou wilt promise mee to beare a shield upon thee, that I shall deliver thee, unto the castle of the Hard Roch, where king Arthur hath cryed a great turnament; and there I pray you that yee will bee, and to doe for mee as much deeds of armes as yee may doe.

"For at that castle of Maidens, sir Tristram, yee did mervalous deeds of armes as ever I heard knight doe." "Madam," said sir Tristram, "let me see the shield that I shall beare." So the shield was brought forth, and the shield was goldish,[1] with a king and a queene therein painted, and a knight standing above them upon the kings

[1] *Goldish.—Guldyssh*, Caxton.

head with one foote, and the other upon the queenes head. "Madam," said sir Tristram, "this is a faire shield and a mightie; but what signifieth this king and this queene and that knight standing upon both their heads?" "I shall tell you," said Morgan le Fay, "it signifieth king Arthur and queene Guenever, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and servage." "Who is that knight?" said sir Tristram. "That shall yee not know at this time," said the queene; but queene Morgan le Fay loved sir Launcelot best, and ever shee desired him, and he would never love her, nor doe nothing at her request, and therefore shee held many knights together for to have taken him by strength. And because shee deemed that sir Launcelot loved queene Guenever as paramour, and shee him againe, therefore queene Morgan le Fay ordained that shield to put sir Launcelot to a rebuke, to the entent that king Arthur might understand the love betweene them. So sir Tristram tooke that shield, and promised her to beare it at the turnament at the castle of the Heard Roch; but sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against sir Launcelot, but afterward he knew it.

CHAP. LXXXIII.—How sir Tristram tooke with him the shield, and also how hee slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay.

SO then sir Tristram tooke his leave of the queene, and tooke the shield with him. And then came the knight that held queene Morgan le Fay as paramour, and his name was sir Hemison, and hee made him ready for to follow after sir Tristram. "My faire friend," said Morgan le Fay, "ride not after that knight, for certainely ye shall winne no worship of him." "Fie upon him, coward," said sir Hemison, "for I wist never good knight came out of Cornewaile, but if it were sir Tristram de Lyones." "What and that be hee?" said Morgan le Fay. "Nay, nay," said hee, "hee is with La

beale Isoud; this is but a daffish[1] knight." "Alas, my faire friend, yee shall find him the best knight that ever yee met withall, for I know him better then yee doe." "And for your sake," said sir Hemison, "I shall slay him, or else beate him well." "Ah, faire friend," said queene Morgan le Fay, "mee repenteth that yee will follow that knight, for I feare mee sore of your againe comming." With that this knight rode his way wood wroth, and he rode after sir Tristram as fast as he had beene chaced with knights. When sir Tristram heard a knight come after him so fast, he returned about and saw a knight comming against him. And when he came nigh unto sir Tristram, hee cryed on high, "Sir knight, keepe thee from mee." Then they rashed together as it had beene thunder, and sir Hemison brised[2] his speare upon sir Tristram; but his harneis was so good that he might not hurt him. And so sir Tristram smote him harder, and bare him through the body, and fell over his horse croupe. And then sir Tristram turned for to have done more with his sword, but hee saw so much blood goe from him that him seemed hee was likely to die; and so hee departed from him, and came unto a faire mannor to an old knight, and there sir Tristram lodged.

CHAP. LXXXIV.—How Morgan le Fay buried her paramour, and how sir Tristram praysed sir Launcelot and his kinne.

NOW leave we to speake of sir Tristram, and speake we of the knight that was wounded to the death. And then his varlet alighted, and tooke off his helme, and then he asked his master whether there were any life in him. "There is in me life," said the knight, "but it is very little, and therefore leape thou up behind me; and when thou hast holpen me up, then hold me fast that I fall not, and bring me to

[1] *Daffish.*—Foolish; soft. [2] *Brised.*—Caxton, *brysed*, *broke.*

queene Morgan le Fay, for the deepe draughts of death draw to my heart that I may no longer live; for I would faine speake with her or ever I died, for else my soule will be in great perill and I die."

And with full great paine his varlet brought him unto his castle, and there sir Hemison fell downe dead. And when queene Morgan le Fay saw him dead, shee made great sorrow out of measure. And then shee dispoyled him unto his shirt; and so she let him to be put in a tombe, and about the tombe she let write, "Here lyeth sir Hemison, slaine by the noble[1] hands of sir Tristram de Lyones."

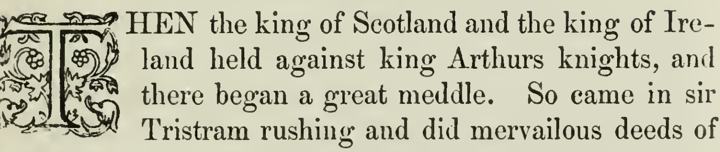
Now turne wee unto sir Tristram, that asked the knight his hoost if he saw of late any knight adventurous. "Sir," said hee, "the last night here lodged with mee sir Ector de Maris and a damosell with him, and that damosell told mee that he was one of the best knights of the world." "It is not so," said sir Tristram, "for I know foure better knights of his owne blood; and the first is sir Launcelot du Lake, call him the best knight, and sir Bors de Ganis, sir Bleoberis, sir Blamor de Ganis, and sir Gaheris."

"Nay," said his hoost, "sir Gawaine is a better knight then hee." "It is not so," said sir Tristram, "for I have met with them both, and I felt sir Gaheris for the better knight; and sir Lamoracke I call him as good as any of them, except sir Launcelot." "Why name ye not sir Tristram?" said his hoost, "for I account him as good as any of them." "I know him not," said sir Tristram. Thus they talked and bourded[2] as long as them list, and then they went to rest. And on the morrow sir Tristram departed and tooke his leave of his hoost and rode toward the Roch-Dure, and none adventure had sir Tristram but that; and so hee rested not till hee came to the castle, where hee saw a hundred[3] tents.

[1] *Noble.*—This word is not found in Caxton.

[2] *Bourded.*—Jested. [3] *A hundred.*—*Fyve c. tentys*, Caxton.

CHAP. LXXXV.—How sir Tristram at a turnament bare the shield that Morgan le Fay had delivered him.



THEN the king of Scotland and the king of Ireland held against king Arthurs knights, and there began a great meddle. So came in sir Tristram rushing and did mervailous deeds of armes, for hee smote downe many knights, and ever he was before king Arthur with that shield. And when king Arthur saw that shield, hee mervailed to what entent it was made. But queene Guenever deemed as it was, wherefore she was heavy. And then was there a damosell of queene Morgan in a chamber by king Arthur, and when she heard king Arthur speake of that shield, then shee spake openly to king Arthur: "Sir king, wit ye well this shield was ordained for you to warne you of your shame and dishonour, and that belongeth to you and to your queene." And then anon the damosell piked her away prively, that no man wist where shee was become; and then was king Arthur sad and wroth, and asked from whence that damosell came. There was not one that knew her, nor wist where shee was become. Then queene Guenever called to her sir Ector de Maris, and there shee made her complaint to him, and said, "I wot well this shield was made by Morgan le Fay, in despite of mee and of sir Launcelot, wherefore I dread sore least I should bee destroyed." And ever the king beheld sir Tristram that did such deeds of armes, that hee woundred sore what hee might bee, and well hee wist it was not sir Launcelot. And it was told him that sir Tristram was in little Britaine with Isoud le blaunch Mains, for hee deemed and hee had beene in the realme of Logris, sir Launcelot or some of his fellowes that were in the quest of sir Tristram, that they should have found him or that time. So king Arthur had mervaile what knight hee might bee, and ever king Arthurs

eyes were on that shield. And that espied the queene, and that made her sore afeard. But ever sir Tristram smote downe knights that it was great wonder to behold, both on the right hand and on the left hand, that uneth[1] no knight might withstand him. And the king of Scotland and the king of Ireland began to withdraw them. When king Arthur espied that, hee thought that the knight with the strange shield should not escape him. So hee called unto him sir Ewaine[2] le blaunch Mains, and bad him arme him and make him ready. So anone king Arthur and sir Ewaine dressed them before sir Tristram, and required him to tell them where hee had that shield. "Sir," said hee, "I had it of queene Morgan le Fay, sister unto king Arthur."

CHAP. LXXXVI.—How sir Tristram justed, and smote downe king Arthur and sir Ewaine, and would not tell them his name.

"THEN," said king Arthur, "if yee can describe what yee beare, ye be worthy to beare those armes." "As for that," said sir Tristram, "I will answere you. This shield was given me undesired of queene Morgan le Fay; as for me I cannot describe these armes, for it is no point of my charge, and yet I trust to God to beare them with worship." "Truely," said king Arthur, "yee ought not to beare no armes, but if ye wist what ye beare. But I pray you tell me your name." "To what intent?" said sir Tristram. "For I would wit," said king Arthur. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "yee shall not wit as at this time." "Then shall ye and I doe battaile together," said king Arthur. "Why," said sir Tristram, "will yee doe battaile with mee but if I tell you my name? that little needeth you and yee were a man of worship; for yee have seene me this day that I had

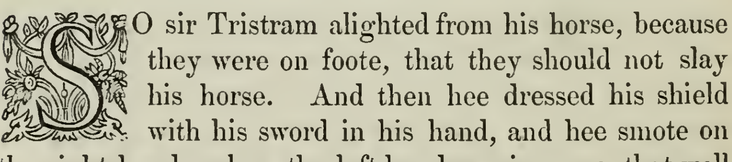
[1] *Uneth.*—Hardly. [2] *Ewaine.*—*Gawayn*, Ed. 1634.

great travaile, how bee it I will not faile you; and have yee no doubt that I feare you not, though yee thinke yee have mee at a great advantage, yet shall I right well endure you." And therewithall king Arthur dressed his shield and his speare, and sir Tristram against him, and then they came right egerly together. And there king Arthur brake his speare upon sir Tristrams shield. But sir Tristram hit king Arthur againe, that horse and man fell to the ground. And there was king Arthur wounded on the left side a great wound and a perillous. Then when sir Ewaine saw that his lord king Arthur lay upon the ground sore wounded, he was passing heavy. And then hee dressed his shield and his speare, and cryed aloud unto sir Tristram, and said, "Sir knight, defend thee." So they came together as thunder, and sir Ewaine brake his speare upon sir Tristrams shield all to peeces. And sir Tristram smote him harder and sorer with such a might that hee bare him cleane out of his saddle, that he fell downe to the earth. With that sir Tristram turned him about, and said: "Faire knights, I had no neede for to just with you, for I have had enough to doe this day." Then arose king Arthur, and went unto sir Ewaine, and said to sir Tristram, "Wee have as wee have deserved, for through our pride wee demaunded battaile of you, and yet wee knew not your name." "Neverthelesse," said sir Ewaine, "by the holy roode, hee is a strong knight in mine advise as any now living." Then sir Tristram departed, and in every place hee asked and demaunded after sir Launcelot, but in no wise hee could not heare of him whether hee were dead or alive; wherefore sir Tristram made great moane and sorrow. So sir Tristram rode by a forrest, and then was he ware of a faire towre by a maries on that one side, and on that other side a faire meddow; and there hee saw tenne knights fighting together. And ever the neerer hee came, hee saw how there was but one knight did battaile against nine knights, and that one knight did so mervailously that

sir Tristram had great wonder that ever one knight might doe so great deeds of armes.

And then within a little while hee had slaine halfe their horses and unhorssed them, and their horses ranne into the fields and forrest. Then sir Tristram had great pittie upon that one knight that endured so great paine, and ever hee thought it should bee sir Palomides by his shield. And so hee rode unto the knights, and cryed to them, and bad them cease their battaile, for they did themselves great shame, so many knights to fight with one knight. Then answered the master of those knights, whose name was sir Breuse saunce Pittie, that was at that time the most mischevous knight living, and thus hee said: "Sir knight, "what have yee to doe to meddle with us? and therefore, if yee bee wise, depart on your way as yee came, for this knight shall not escape from us." "That were pittie," said sir Tristram, "that so good a knight as hee is should bee slaine so cowardly; and therefore I warne you I will succour him with all my puissance."[1]

CHAP. LXXXVII.—**How sir Tristram and sir Palomides met, and how they promised to fight together within fourteene dayes after.**



SO sir Tristram alighted from his horse, because they were on foote, that they should not slay his horse. And then hee dressed his shield with his sword in his hand, and hee smote on the right hand and on the left hand passing sore, that well nigh at every strooke he strake downe a knight. And when they had felt his strookes, they fled all with sir Breuse saunce Pittie unto the towre, and sir Tristram followed fast after with his sword in his hand. But they escaped into the towre, and shut sir Tristram without the gate. And when sir Tristram saw this, hee turned backe unto sir Palomides, and found him sitting under a tree, sore wounded.

[1] *Puissance.*—Power; strength.

"Ah, faire knight," said sir Tristram, "well be yee found." "Gramercy, sir," said sir Palomides, "of your great goodnesse, for yee have rescewed mee of my life, and saved mee from death." "What is your name?" said sir Tristram. "Sir," said hee, "my name is sir Palomides." "O Jesu," said sir Tristram, "thou hast a faire grace of me this day that I should rescew thee, and thou art the man in the world which I most hate; but now make thee ready, for I will doe battaile with thee." "What is your name?" said sir Palomides. "My name is sir Tristram, your mortall enemy." "It may bee so," said sir Palomides, "but ye have done overmuch for mee this day that I should fight with you; for in as much as yee have saved my life, it will bee no worship for you to have to doe with mee, for yee are fresh, and I am sore wounded; and therefore, and yee will needs have to doe with mee, assigne me a day, and I shall meete with you without any faile." "Yee say well," said sir Tristram; "now I assigne you to meete me in the medow by the river of Camelot, where Merlin set the peron." [1] So they were both agreed. Then sir Tristram asked sir Palomides why those nine knights did battaile with him. "For this cause," said sir Palomides; "as I rode on mine adventures in a forrest heere beside, I espied where as lay a dead knight, and a lady weeping beside him; and when I saw her making such dole, I asked her who slew her lord? 'Sir,' said she, 'the most falsest of the world now living; and he is the most villaine that ever any man heard speake of; and men call him sir Breuse saunce Petie.'

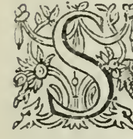
"Then for pitie I made the damosel to leape upon her palfray, and I promised her to be her warrant and to helpe her for to bury her lord. And so sodainely, as I came riding by this tower, there came out sir Breuse saunce Pittie, and sodainely hee strooke me from my horse. And then,

[1] *Peron.*—The tomb-stone. See before, vol. i. p. 70; and a subsequent chapter of the present volume (p. 177).

or that I might recover my horse againe, this knight sir Breuse slew the damosell. And so I tooke my horse againe, and I was sore ashamed, and so began the meddle betweene us. And this is the cause wherefore wee did this battaile." "Well," said sir Tristram, "now I understand the manner of your battaile; but in any manner of wise let it not be out of your remembrance the promise that yee have made with mee to doe battaile with mee this day fourteene daies." "I shall not faile you," said sir Palomides. "Well," said sir Tristram, "as at this time I will not assaile you till yee bee out of the danger of your enemies." So they mounted upon their horses, and rode together into that forrest, and there they found a faire well with cleare water burbeling. "Faire sir," said sir Tristram, "to drinke of that water have I a lust." And then they alighted from their horses, and then were they ware by them where stood a great horse tied to a tree, and ever he neyed; and then were they ware of a faire knight armed under a tree, lacking no peece of harneys, save his helme lay under his head. "By God," said sir Tristram, "yonder lieth a well faring knight; what is best to doe?" "Awake him," said sir Palomides. So sir Tristram wakned him with the end of his speare. And so the knight arose up hastely, and put his helme on his head, and gat a great speare in his hand, and without any moe words hee hurled unto sir Tristram, and smote him cleane from his sadle to the earth, and hurt him on the left side, that sir Tristram lay in great perill. Then he galloped farther, and set his course, and came hurling upon sir Palomides, and there he strooke him a part through the body, that he fell from his horse unto the ground. And then this strange knight left them there, and tooke his way through the forrest. With this sir Palomides and sir Tristram were on foote, and gat their horses againe, and either asked counsaile of other what was best to doe. "By my head," said sir Tristram, "I will follow after this strong knight that thus hath shamed us."

" Well," said sir Palomides, " and I will rest mee heereby with a friend of mine." " Beware," said sir Tristram unto sir Palomides, " that yee faile not that day that yee have set with me to do battaile, for as I deeme ye will not hould your day, for I am much bigger then yee are." " As for that," said sir Palomides, " be it as be may, for I feare you not; for and I bee not sicke nor prisoner, I will not faile you; but I have cause for to have more doubt of you, that yee will not meete with me, because yee ride after yonder strong knight, and if that yee meete with him, it shall bee an hard adventure if ever yee escape his hands." Right so sir Tristram and sir Palomides departed asunder, and either tooke divers waies.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.—How sir Tristram sought the strong knight that had smitten him downe, and many other knights of the round table.



O sir Tristram rode long after this strong knight, and at the last he saw where as lay a lady overthwart a dead knight. " Faire lady," said sir Tristram, " who hath slaine your lord?" " Sir," said shee, " heere came a knight riding as my lord and I rested us heere, and asked him of whence he was, and my lord said, ' Of king Arthurs court.' ' Therefore,' said the strong knight, ' I will just with thee, for I hate all those that be of king Arthurs court.' And my lord, which lieth heere dead, mounted upon his horse, and the strong knight and my lord encountred together, and there he smote my lord throughout the body with his speare, and thus he hath brought me in great woe and damage." " That me repenteth," said sir Tristram, " of your great woe, but I require you tell me your lords name." " Sir," said she, " his name is sir Galardoun, that would have proved a good knight." So departed sir Tristram from that dolorous lady,

and had good lodging.[1] Then on the third day sir Tristram met with sir Gawaine and with sir Bleoberis, in a forrest at a lodge, and either were sore wounded. Then sir Tristram asked sir Gawaine and sir Bleoberis if they met with such a knight with such a cognisaunce with a covered shield. "Faire sir," said those knights, "such a knight met with us to our great dammage, and first he smote downe my fellow sir Bleoberis, and sore wounded him, because he bad mee I should not have to doe with him, for why he was over strong for mee. That strong knight tooke his words at scorne, and hee said that hee said it for mockery. And then they rode together, and so hurt my fellow. And when hee had done so, I might not for shame but I must just with him. And at the first course he cast me downe and my horse to the earth, and there hee had almost slaine me. And from us hee tooke his horse and departed. And in an evill time wee met with him." "Faire knights," said sir Tristram, "so hee met with mee, and with another knight that was called sir Palomides, and hee smote us both downe with one speare, and hurt us full sore." "By my faith," said sir Gawaine, "by my counsaile yee shall let him passe, and seeke him no further. For at the next feast of the round table, upon paine of my head, yee shall find him there." "By my faith," said sir Tristram, "I shall never rest till that I have found him." And then sir Gawaine asked him his name, and hee answered and said, "My name is sir Tristram de Lyones." And so either told other their names. And then departed sir Tristram, and rode forth his way. And by fortune in a meddow sir Tristram met with sir Kay the seneshall and sir Dinadan. "What tidings with you, faire knights?" said sir Tristram. "None that are very good," said the knights. "Why so?" said sir Tristram; "I pray you tell mee, for I ride to seeke a knight." "What cognisance beareth

[1] *Had good lodging.*—Caxton's text has, on the contrary, *and hadde moche evylle lodgyng.*

hee?" said sir Kay. "Hee beareth," said sir Tristram, "a covered shield close with a cloth." "By my head," said sir Kay, "that is the same knight that met with us, for this night wee were lodged within a widdowes house, and there was that same knight lodged. And when hee wist that wee were of king Arthurs court, hee spake of the king great vilany, and especially of queen Guenever. And then on the morrow wee waged battaile for the same cause with him; and at the first encounter," said sir Kay, "he smote me downe from my horse, and hurt me passing sore. And when my fellow, sir Dinadan, saw mee so smitten downe and hurt, hee would in no wise revenge mee, but fled fast away from mee. And thus hee is departed and gone." And then sir Tristram required them to tell him their names. And so either told other their names. And sir Tristram departed from sir Kay and sir Dinadan, and so he passed through a great forrest into a plaine, till he was ware of a priory, and there rested him with a good man sixe dayes.

CHAP. LXXXIX.—How sir Tristram smote downe sir Sagramore le Desirous and sir Dodinas le Savage.



AND then hee sent his man that hight Governale, and commanded him to goe to a citie there beside to fetch him new harneis, for it was long time before that sir Tristram had not beene refreshed, his harneis was bruised and broken. And when Governale his servant was come with his apparell, hee tooke his leave of the widdow, and mounted on horsebacke, and rode his way early in the morning. And by suddaine adventure sir Tristram met with sir Sagramore le Desirous and with sir Dodinas le Savage. And when these two knights met with sir Tristram, they questioned with him, and asked him if hee would just with them. "Faire knights," said sir Tristram, "with a good will I would just with you; but I have promised a day set neere hand to doe

battaile with a strong knight, and therefore I am loath to have to doe with you. For and it misfortuned mee heere to be hurt of you, I should not bee able to doe my battaile which I promised." "As for that," said sir Sagramore, "maugre your head yee shall just with us or yee passe from us." "Well," said sir Tristram, "if ye enforce me thereto, I must do what I may." And then they dressed their shields, and came running together with great ire. But through sir Tristrams great force hee strooke sir Sagramore from his horse. Then he ranne further with his horse, and said unto sir Dodinas, "Sir knight, make thee ready." And so through fine force sir Tristram strooke sir Dodinas from his horse. And when hee saw them both lye on the ground, hee tooke his bridle, and rode forth on his way, and his man Governale with him. So anon, as sir Tristram was past, sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas gat againe their horses, and mounted up lightly and followed after sir Tristram as fast as they could. And when sir Tristram saw them come so fast after him, hee returned with his horse unto them, and asked them what they would have; "it is not long agoe sith I smote you downe to the ground at your owne request and desire; I would have ridden by you, but yee would not suffer me, and now mee seemeth yee would doe more battaile with me." "That is truth," said sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas; "for we will be revenged of the despite that ye have done us." "Faire knights," said sir Tristram, "that shall little neede you, for all that I did to you yee caused me to doe it, wherefore I require you of your knighthood leave me at this time; for I am sure if that I doe battaile with you, I shal not escape without great hurts, and as I suppose ye shal not escape all lotlesse. And this is the very cause why that I am so loth to have to doe with you, for I must fight within these three dayes with as good a knight and as valiant as any is now living." "What knight is that," said sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas, "that yee shall fight with?" "Faire knights," said

sir Tristram, "it is a good knight called sir Palomides." "By my head," said sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas, "ye have cause to dread him, for yee shall find him a passing good knight and a valiant. And because ye shall have to doe with him, wee will forbeare you as at this time, and else yee should not lightly escape from us. But, gentle knight," said sir Sagramore, "tell us your name?" "Sir," said hee, "my name is sir Tristram de Lyones." "Ah!" said sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas, "well be ye found, for much worship have we heard of you." And then either tooke their leave of other, and departed forth on their way.

CHAP. XC.—How sir Tristram met at the Peron with sir Launcelot, and how they fought together, not knowing the one the other.

THEN departed sir Tristram, and rode straight unto Camelot, to the peron which Merlin had made before, where sir Lanceor (that was the kings sonne of Ireland) was slaine by the hands of Balin. And in the same place was the faire Columbe slaine, that which was love unto sir Lanceor; for after he was dead, she tooke his sword and thrust it through her body. And by the craft of Merlin he made to enter[1] this knight sir Lanceor and his faire Columbe under a stone. And at that time Merlin prophecied, that in that same place should fight two of the best knights that ever were in king Arthurs days and the truest lovers. So when sir Tristram came to the tombe where sir Launceor and his lady were there buried, hee looked about after sir Palomides. Then was hee ware of a seemely knight that came riding against him all in white, with a covered shield; when he came nigh unto sir Tristram, hee said on high, "Yee bee welcome, sir knight, and well and truely have yee holden your promise." And then they dressed their shields and their speares, and came together with all the might that their horses could

[1] *Enter.*—i. e. to inter.

runne, and they met so fiercely that both horses and knights fell to the earth. Then as soone as they might they avoided their horses, and put their shields before them, and they strake together with bright swords, like men that were of might, and either wounded other wondrous sore, that the bloud ranne upon the grasse. And thus they two fought the space of foure houres, that neither of them would speake unto other one word. And of their harneis they had hewen off many peeces. "O Lord Jesu," said Governale, "I have great mervaile of the strookes that my master hath given unto your master." "By my head," said sir Launcelots servant, "your master hath not given so many but your master hath received as many or moe." "O Jesu," said Governaile, "it is too much for sir Palomides to suffer or sir Launcelot, and yet were it pittie that either of these good knights should destroy others blood." So they stood and wept both and made great moane, when they saw their bright swords covered with the blood of their bodies. Then at the last spake sir Launcelot, and said, "Sir knight, yee fight wondrous well as ever I saw knight, therefore I require you, if it please you, tell me your name." Then said sir Tristram, "I am full loth to tell any man my name." "Truely," said sir Launcelot, "and I were required, I was never loth to tell my name." "It is well said," quoth sir Tristram; "then I require you tell me your name." "Sir," said he, "my name is sir Launcelot du Lake." "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "what have I done? for ye are the man in the world that I most love." "Now, faire knight," said sir Launcelot, "tell me your name." "Truely," said he, "my name is sir Tristram de Lyones." "Oh, Jesu," said sir Launcelot, "what adventure is now befallen mee?" And therewithall sir Launcelot kneeled downe and yeelded him up his sword. And so either gave other the degree.[1] And then they both forthwith went to the stone and set them downe upon it, and

[1] *The degree.*—The precedence; the gree, or prize.

tooke off their helmes for to keele[1] them, and either kissed other an hundred times. And then anon after they tooke up their helmes, and rode straight unto Camelot, and there met with sir Gawaine and sir Gaheris, which made promise unto king Arthur never to come againe to the court till they had brought sir Tristram with them.

CHAP. XCI.—How sir Launcelot brought sir Tristram to the court, and of the great joy that king Arthur and other made for the comming of sir Tristram.

"RETURNE againe," said sir Launcelot, "for your quest is done, for I have met with sir Tristram; loe, here is his owne person." Then was sir Gawaine glad, and said unto sir Tristram, "Yee are right heartily welcome, for now yee have eased mee greatly of my labour." "For what cause," said sir Gawaine, "came yee into this countrey?" "Faire sir," said sir Tristram, "I came into this countrey because of sir Palomides, for hee and I assigned at this day to have done battaile together at the peron, and I mervaile that I heare nothing of him; and thus by adventure my lord sir Launcelot and I did meete together." With this came king Arthur, and when hee wist that sir Tristram was there, then hee ranne unto him, and tooke him by the hand, and said, "Sir Tristram, yee bee as welcome as any knight that ever came unto this court." And when king Arthur had heard how sir Launcelot and hee had foughten, and either had wounded other wonderous sore, then the king made great moane. Then sir Tristram told the king how hee came thither for to have had to doe with sir Palomides.

And then hee told the king how hee had rescewed him from nine knights and sir Breuse saunce Pitie, and hee found a knight lying by a well, "and that knight smote

[1] *Keele.*—Cool; refresh.

downe sir Palomides and mee, but his shield was covered with a cloth. So sir Palomides left me, and I followed after that knight, and in many places I found where as he had slayne many knights, and had also forjusted many." "By my head," said sir Gawaine, "that same knight smote mee downe and sir Bleoberis, and hurt us both wounderous sore." "Ah!" said sir Kay, "that same knight smot me downe and hurt me passing sore; and faine would I have knowne him, but I might not." "Jesus, mercy!" said king Arthur, "then what manner of knight was that with the covered shield?" "I know him not," said sir Tristram. And so said they all. "Now," said king Arthur, "if yee know not, then doe I, for I assure you that it was sir Launcelot du Lake." Then all together at once looked upon sir Launcelot, and said, "Yee have beguiled us with your covered shield." "It is not the first time," said king Arthur, "that hee hath done so." "My lord," said sir Launcelot, "truely wit yee well I was the same knight that bare the covered shield; and because I would not be knowne that I was of your court, I said no worship of your court." "That is truth," said sir Gawaine, sir Kay, and sir Bleoberis. Then king Arthur tooke sir Tristram by the hand, and led him unto the round table. Then came queene Guenever, and many ladies with her, and all these ladies said, all with one voice, "Welcome, sir Tristram;" "welcome," said the damosels; "welcome," said the knights; "welcome," said king Arthur, "for one of the best knights and gentilest of the world, and knight of the most worship; for of all manner of hunting thou bearest the prise, and of all measures of blowing thou art the beginner, and of all the termes of hunting and hawking yee are the beginner; of all instruments of musicke yee are the best. Therefore, gentle knight," said king Arthur, "yee are right heartily welcome unto this court. And also I pray you," said king Arthur, "graunt me a boone." "It shall bee at your commandement," said

sir Tristram. "Well," said king Arthur, "I will desire of you that yee will abide in my court." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "thereto am I loth, for I have to doe in many countries." "Not so," said king Arthur, "yee have promised it me, yee may not say nay." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "I will as ye will." Then went king Arthur unto the sieges about the rounde table, and looked in every siege which were voide that lacked knights. And the king then saw in the siege of Marhaus letters that said:

"This is the siege of the nobelest knight sir Tristram." And then king Arthur made sir Tristram knight of the round table, with great noblenesse and great feast, as might bee thought. For sir Marhaus was slaine afore by the hands of sir Tristram in an iland, and that was full well knowen at that time in the court of king Arthur; for this sir Marhaus was a worthy knight, and evill deeds he did unto the countrey of Cornewaile. Sir Tristram and he fought, and they fought so long, trasing and traversing, till they fell bleeding to the earth; for they were so sore wounded that they might not stand for bleeding. And sir Tristram by fortune recovered, and sir Marhaus died through the strooke on the head. So leave wee off sir Tristram, and speake wee of king Marke.

CHAP. XCII.—**How, for the despite of sir Tristram, king Marke came with two knights into England, and how he slew one of his knights.**

THEN king Marke had great despit of the renowne of sir Tristram. And then he chased him out of Cornewaile, yet was he nephew unto king Marke, but hee had great suspection on sir Tristram for his queene La beale Isoude; for him seemed there was too much love betweene them. So when sir Tristram went out of Cornewaile into England, king Marke heard of the great prowesse that sir Tristram

did there, the which grieved him sore. So he sent on his part men to espie what deeds he did. And the queene sent prively on her part spies for to know what deeds hee had done, for great love was betweene them twaine. So when the messengers were come home, they told the truth as they heard, that he passed all other knights, but if it were the noble knight sir Launcelot. Then king Mark was right hevie of these tidings, and the queene La beale Isoud was passing glad. Then in great despite he tooke with him two good knights and two squires, and disguised himselfe, and tooke his way into England, to the entent to sley sir Tristram. And one of these two knights hight sir Bersules, and that other knight was called sir Amant. So as they rode, king Marke demanded a knight that hee met where he should find king Arthur. He said, "At Camelot." Also he asked the knight after sir Tristram, whether he heard of him in the court of king Arthur. "Wit yee well," said the knight, "yee shall finde sir Tristram there for a man of as great worship as now liveth; for through his prowesse he wane the turnement of the castle of Maidens, that standeth by the hard roch, and sithen he hath wonne with his owne hands thirtie knights that were men of great honour; and the last battaile that ever he did, he fought with sir Launcelot, and that was a mervailous battaile. And not by force sir Launcelot brought sir Tristram unto the court. And of him king Arthur made passing great joy, and hath made him knight of the round table; and his seate was where the good knight sir Marhaus seate was." Then was king Marke passing heavie and sory, when he heard of the honour of sir Tristram, and so they departed. Then said king Marke unto his two knights: "Now will I tell you my counsell, yee are the men that I trust most unto on live; and I will that yee wit, my comming hither is to this entent, for to destroy sir Tristram by wiles or by treason; and it shall be hard if hee ever escape our hands." "Alas!" said sir

Bersules, "what thing meane yee? for to bee set in such a way, yee are shamefully disposed; for sir Tristram is the knight of most worship that wee know now living, and therefore I warne you plainly I will never consent for to doe him to death, and therefore I will yeeld my service and forsake you." When king Marke heard him say so, sodeinly he drew his sword and said, "A! false traitour!" and smote sir Bersules on the head, so that his sword went to his teeth. When sir Amant the knight saw him doe that vilainous deed and his squires, they said al it was foul done and mischevously, "wherefore wee will doe no more service; and wit thou well wee will apeach thee of treason before king Arthur." Then was king Marke wonders wroth, and would have slaine sir Amant; but hee and the two squiers held them together, and set nought by his malice. When king Marke saw he might not bee revenged on them, he said thus unto sir Amant: "Wit thou well, and thou appeach mee of treason, I shall never defend me afore king Arthur; but I require thee thou tel not my name that I am king Marke, what soever come of me." "As for that," said sir Amant, "I will not discover your name." And so they departed. And sir Amant and his fellowes tooke the body of sir Bersules and buried it.

CHAP. XCIII.—**How king Marke came to a fountaine, where as he found sir Lamoracke complaining for the love of king Lots wife.**



THEN king Marke rode till hee came to a fountaine, and there he reposed him, and stoode in a doubt whether hee would ride unto king Arthurs court or not, or returne againe to his countrey. And as he thus rested him by that fountaine, there came by him a knight well armed upon horsebacke, and he alighted and tied his horse unto a tree, and sate him downe by the bancke[1] of the fountaine, and there hee

[1] *Bancke.—Brynke,* Caxton.

made great langour and moone, and made the pittifullest complaint of love that ever man heard; and all this while was hee not ware of king Marke, and this was a great part of his complaint: hee cryed and wept, saying, "O faire queene of Orkeney, king Lots wife, and mother unto sir Gawaine, and unto sir Gaheris, and mother unto many other, for your love I am in great paine." Then king Marke arose and went neere to him and said, "Knight, yee have made a pitious complaint." "Truly," said the knight, "it is well an hundred part more rewfull then my heart can utter." "I require you," said king Marke, "tell me your name." "Sir," said he, "as for my name I will not hide it from no knight that beareth shield, and my name is sir Lamoracke de Ganis." But when sir Lamoracke heard king Marke speake, then wist he well by his speach that he was a Cornish knight. "Sir," said sir Lamoracke, "I understand by your tongue yee are of Cornewaile, wherein dwelleth the shamefullest king that liveth, for hee is a great enemy unto all good knights; and that proveth well, for hee hath chased out of that countrey sir Tristram, which is the worshipfullest knight that liveth, and all knights of him speake worship; and for a jelousie of his queene hee hath chased him out of his countrey. It is pitie," said sir Lamoracke, "that ever such a false knight coward as king Marke is should bee matched with such a faire lady and good as La beale Isoude is; for all the world speaketh of him shame, and of her worship as any queene may have." "I have not to doe in this matter," said king Marke, "neither nought will I speake thereof." "Well," said sir Lamoracke. "Sir, can yee tell mee any tidings?" "I can tell you," said sir Lamoracke, "that there shall be a great turnement in haste beside Camelot, at the castle of Jagent; and the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Ireland, as I suppose, maketh it." Then came there a knight that was called sir Dinadan, and he saluted them both. And when hee wist that king Marke was a knight

of Cornewaile, hee reproved him for the love of king Marke a thousand fold more then did sir Lamoracke. Then hee proffred to just with king Marke, and hee was full loth thereto; but sir Dinadan egged him so, that hee justed with sir Lamoracke. And sir Lamoracke anon smote king Marke so sore on his shield that hee beare him on the speare end over his horse croupe. And then king Marke arose againe, and followed after sir Lamoracke. But sir Dinadan would not just with sir Lamoracke, but hee told king Marke that sir Lamoracke was sir Kay the seneshall. "That is not so," said king Marke, "for he is much bigger then sir Kay." And so he followed after and overtooke him, and then hee bad him abide. "What will yee doe?" said sir Lamoracke. "Sir," said hee, "I will fight with a sword, for yee have shamed me with your speare." And therewith they dashed together, and sir Lamoracke suffered him and forbeare him long; and king Marke was passing hasty, and smote him many thicke strookes. When sir Lamoracke saw that hee would not stinth, hee waxed somewhat wroth, and doubled his strookes, for hee was one of the noblest knights of the world, and he beate him so sore upon the helme, that his head hung nigh unto the sadle bow. When sir Lamoracke saw him fare so, thus he said: "Sir knight, what cheere with you? me thinketh yee have nigh your fill of fighting, it were pitie to do you any more harme, for yee are but a meane knight, therefore I give you leave for to goe where as yee list." "Sir, gramercy," said king Marke, "for you and I are not matches." Then sir Dinadan mocked with king Marke, and said to him, "Yee are not able for to match a good knight." "As for that," said king Marke, "at the first time that I justed with this knight yee refused him." "Thinke yee that it is a shame to mee?" said sir Dinadan. "Nay, sir, it is ever worship unto a knight for to refuse that thing the which hee may not attaine; therefore your worship had beene much more for to have refused him as

I did. For I warne you plainly he is able to beate such five as you and I bee; for yee knights of Cornewaile be no men of worship as other knights are, and because that yee are not men of worship, yee hate all men of worship; for never was there bred in your countrey such a knight as is sir Tristram."

CHAP. XCIV.—How king Marke, sir Lamoracke, and sir Dinadan, came into a castle, and how king Marke was knowne there.

THEN they rode forth all together, king Marke, sir Lamoracke, and sir Dinadan, till that they came unto a bridge; and at the end of that bridge stood a faire toure. Then saw they a knight on horsebacke well armed, braundishing a speare, crying and proffering himselfe to just. "Now," said sir Dinadan unto king Marke, "yonder are two brethren, and the one is called sir Alleine, and that other is called sir Trian, that will just with any that passeth this passage; now proffer your selfe," said sir Dinadan unto king Marke, "for alwayes yee are laid to the ground." Then was king Marke ashamed, and therewith hee feutred his speare and ranne against sir Trian, and there either bracke their speares all to peeces, and passed through anon. Then sir Trian sent to king Marke another speare for to just more, but in no wise would he just againe. Then they came into the castle all three knights, and they prayed the lord of the castle of harbour. "Yee are heartily welcome," said the knights of the castle, "for the love of the lord of this castle, that hight sir Tor[1] le fise Aries." And they came into a faire court, well repaired. And they had passing good cheere, till the lieutenant of the castle (that was called sir Bersules) espied king Marke of Cornewaile. Then said sir Bersules, "Sir knight, I know you better then yee weene, for yee are king Marke, that slew my father

[1] *Sir Tor.*—See, on this individual, vol. i. pp. 94-96.

before mine eyes, and also yee would have slaine me if I had not escaped into a wood; but wit yee well for the love of the lord of this castle I will neither hurt you nor harme you nor none of your fellowship; but wit yee well that when yee bee past this lodging I will hurt you and I may, for ye slew my father traiterously; but first for the love of sir Lamoracke, that honourable knight that here is lodged, ye shall have none evill lodging. And it is pitie that yee should bee in the company of good knights, for yee are the most vilainous knight or king that is now knowne on live; yee are, and ever hath beene, a destroyer of good knights, and all that yee doe and goe about is but treason."

CHAP. XCV.—How sir Berluses met with king Marke, and how sir Dinadan tooke his part.

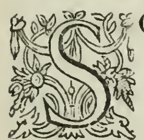
THEN was king Marke sore ashamed, and said but little againe. But when sir Lamoracke and sir Dinadan wist that it was king Marke, they were sorrie of his fellowship. So after supper they went unto their lodging. And on the morrow they arose early, and king Marke and sir Dinadan rode together. And three mile from their lodging there met with them three knights, and sir Berluses was one, and the two other his two cosins. Sir Berluses saw king Marke, and then he cryed on high, "Traytour, keepe thee from mee, for wit thou well that I am Berluses." "Sir knight," said sir Dinadan, "I counsell thee to leave off at this time, for hee goeth unto king Arthur, and because I have promised to conduct him unto my lord king Arthur, needs I must take his part, how be it I love not his conditions, and faine I would bee from him." "Well, sir Dinadan," said sir Berluses, "me repenteth that ye will take part with him, but now doe your best." And then he hurled unto king Marke, and smote him sore upon the helme, that he bare him cleane out of his saddle to the

earth. That saw sir Dinadan, and hee feutred his speare, and ranne to one of sir Berluses fellowes, and smote him downe out of his saddle. Then sir Dinadan turned his horse, and smote the third knight in the same wise to the earth, for sir Dinadan was a good knight on horsebacke; and there began a great battaile, for sir Berluses and his fellowes held them together strongly on foote. And so through the great force of sir Dinadan, king Marke had sir Berluses to the earth, and his fellowes fled; and had not beene sir Dinadan, king Marke would have slaine him. And so sir Dinadan rescewed him of his life, for king Marke was but a murtherer. And so they tooke their horses and departed, and left sir Berluses sore wounded. When king Marke and sir Dinadan had ridden about foure mile,[1] they came unto a bridge where as hoved a knight on horsebacke and ready to just. "Loe," said sir Dinadan unto king Marke, "yonder hoveth a knight that will just, for there shall none passe this bridge but hee must just with that knight." "It is well said," quoth king Marke, "for this justing falleth with thee." Sir Dinadan knew well that the knight was a noble knight, and faine he would have justed, but hee would rather that king Marke had justed with him; but by no manner of meanes king Marke would just with him. Then sir Dinadan might not refuse him in no manner; and then either dressed their speares and their shields, and smote together, so that through fine force sir Dinadan was smitten to the earth; and lightly hee arose up againe, and gat his horse, and required that knight for to doe battaile with their swords. And hee answered and said: "Faire knight, as at this time I may not have to doe with you no more, for the custome of this passage is such." Then was sir Dinadan passing wroth with him, that he might not be revenged on that knight. And so hee departed. And in no wise would that knight tell his name; but ever sir Di-

[1] *Foure mile.—A four leges Englysshe,* Caxton. It would seem from this that an English league and a mile were equivalent.

nadan thought that hee should know him by his shield that it should bee sir Tor.

CHAP. XCVI.—How king Marke mocked sir Dinadan, and how they met with six knights of the round table.

O as they rode on their way, king Marke then began for to mocke sir Dinadan, and said to him, "I wend ye knights of the round table might in no wise find their matches." "Yee say well," said sir Dinadan, "as for you, on my life I call you none of the best knights; but sith yee have such a despite at mee, I require you to just with me for to prove my strength." "Not so," said king Marke, "for I will not have to doe with you in no manner of wise; but I require you of one thing, that when yee come unto king Arthurs court, yee discover not my name, for I am there sore hated." "It is the more shame unto you," said sir Dinadan, "that yee governe your selfe so shamefully, for I see by you that yee are full of cowardise, and ye are a great murderer, and that is the greatest shame that a knight may have; for never knight being a murtherer hath worship, nor never shall have; for I saw but late agone through my force yee would have slaine sir Berluses, a better knight then yee are, or ever yee shall be, and more of prowesse." Thus they rode forth talking till they came unto a faire place, where as stoode a knight, and hee praied them to take their lodging with him. So at the request of the knight they rested them there, and made them well at ease, and had great cheere; for all arraunt knights were welcome to him, and especially all those knights that were of king Arthurs court. Then sir Dinadan demanded of his hoost what was the knights name that kept the bridge. "For what cause demand you it?" said his hoost. "For it is not yet long agoe," said sir Dinadan, "sith that I justed with him, and hee gave me a fall." "Ah, faire

knight," said his hoost, "thereof yee ought to have no mervaile, for hee is a passing good knight, and his name is sir Tor, sonne of Aries le Vassher." "Ah!" said sir Dinadan, "was that sir Tor? for truely so me thought ever." Right so as they stood thus talking together, they saw comming riding toward them over a plaine six knights of king Arthurs court, well armed at all points, and there by their shields sir Dinadan knew them well. The first was the good knight sir Ewaine, the sonne of king Uriens; the second was the noble knight sir Brandiles; the third was Ozana le Cuer hardy; the fourth was sir Ewaine les Adventurous; the fifth was sir Agravaine; the sixth was sir Mordred brother to sir Gawaine. When sir Dinadan had seene these six knights, he thought to himselfe hee would bring king Marke by some wiles to just with one of them. And anon they tooke their horses and ranne after these knights well a three mile English.

Then was king Marke ware where they sat all six about a well, and eate and dranke such meate as they had, and their horses walking, and some were tied, and their shields being in divers places about them. "Loe," said sir Dinadan, "yonder I see knights arraunt that will just with us." "God forbid," said king Marke, "for they beene six, and we are but two." "As for that," said sir Dinadan, "let us not spare, for I will assay the foremost." And therewith he made him ready. When king Marke saw him so doe, as fast as sir Dinadan rode toward them, king Marke rode from them with all his might. So when sir Dinadan saw that king Marke was gone, he set his speare out of the rest, and threw the shield upon his backe, and came riding to fellowship of the round table. And anon sir Ewaine knew sir Dinadan, and welcomed him, and so did all his fellowship.

CHAP. XCVII.—How the six knights set sir Dagonet to just with king Marke, and how king Marke refused him.

AND they asked him of the adventures, and whether hee had seene sir Launcelot or sir Tristram. "So God mee helpe," said sir Dinadan, "I saw none of them sith I departed from Camelot." "What knight is that," said sir Brandiles, "that suddainly departed from you and rode over yonder field?" "Sir," said hee, "it is a knight of Cornewaile, and the most horrible coward that ever bestrod horse." "What is his name?" said all the knights. "I wote not," said sir Dinadan. So when they had rested them and spoken together, they tooke their horses, and rode to a castle where dwelled an old knight that made all arraunt knights good cheere. Then in the meane while that they were talking, came into the castle sir Griflet le fise de Dieu, and there hee was welcome, and they asked him whether hee had seene sir Launcelot or sir Tristram. "Sirs," answered hee, "I saw him not sith hee departed from Camelote." So as sir Dinadan walked and beheld the castle, thereby in a chamber hee espied king Marke, and then he rebuked him and asked why he departed so. "Sir," said hee, "for I durst not abide because there were so many; but how sped yee?" said king Marke. "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "there were better friends then I wend they had beene." "Who is captaine of that fellowship?" said the king. Then for to feare him sir Dinadan said it was sir Launcelot. "Oh, Jesu," said king Marke, "might I know sir Launcelot by his shield?" "Yea," said sir Dinadan, "for hee beareth a shield of silver and blacke bends." All this he said for to feare the king, for sir Launcelot was not in the fellowship. "Now I pray you," said king Marke, "that yee will ride in my fellowship." "That am I loth to doe," said sir Dinadan, "because yee

forsooke my fellowship." Right so sir Dinadan went from king Marke, and went to his owne fellowship; and so they mounted upon their horses, and rode forth their way, and talking of the Cornish knight. For sir Dinadan told them that hee was in the castle where as they were lodged. "It is well said," quoth sir Griflet, "for here have I brought sir Dagonet, king Arthurs foole, that is the best fellow and meriest in the world." "Well, yee doe well," said sir Dinadan; "I have told the Cornish knight that here is sir Launcelot, and the Cornish knight asked me what shield hee beare; truely I told him that hee beare the same shield that sir Mordred beareth." "Will yee doe well?" said sir Mordred; "I am hurt and may not well beare my shield nor my harneis, and therefore put my shield and harneis upon sir Dagonet, and let him set upon the Cornish knight."

"That shall be done," said sir Dagonet, "by the faith I owe to God." Then anon sir Dagonet was armed in sir Mordreds harneis and his shield, and he was set upon a great horse, and a speare in his hand. "Now," said sir Dagonet, "shew mee the knight, and I trow I shall beare him downe." So all these knights rode unto a woods side, and abode till king Marke came by the way. Then they put forth sir Dagonet, and hee came on as fast as his horse might runne streight to king Marke. And when hee came nigh unto king Marke, he cried as hee were wood and said, "Keepe the, knight of Cornewaile, for I will slay thee." Anon as king Marke beheld his shield he said to himselfe, "Yonder is sir Launcelot; alas, now I am destroyed." And therewith hee made his horse to runne as fast as hee might through thicke and thinne. And ever sir Dagonet followed king Marke crying and rating him as a woodman[1] through a great forrest. And when sir Ewaine and sir Brandiles saw sir Dagonet chase so king Marke, they laughed all as they had beene wood.[2] And

[1] *Woodman.*—A madman. [2] *Wood.*—Mad.

then they tooke their horses and rode after for to see how sir Dagonet sped; for they would not for no good that sir Dagonet were hurt, for king Arthur loved him passing well, and made him knight with his owne hands, and at every turneyment he made king Arthur laugh. Then the knights rode here and there crying and chasing after king Marke, that all the forrest range of the noise.

CHAP. XCVIII.—How sir Palomides by adventure met with king Marke flying, and how he overthrew sir Dagonet and other knights.

SO king Marke rode by fortune by a well in that way, where stood a knight arraunt on horsebacke, armed at all points, with a great speare in his hand. And when he saw king Marke come flying, he said, "Knight, returne againe for shame, and stand with me and I shall be thy warrant." "A! faire knight," said king Marke, "let me passe by thee, for yonder commeth after me the best knight of the world with the blacke bended shield." "Fie for shame," said the knight, "he is none of the worthy knights; and it were sir Launcelot or sir Tristram, I should not doubt to meete the better of them both." When king Marke heard him say so, hee turned his horse and abode by him. And then that strong knight beare a speare against sir Dagonet, and smote him so sore that he beare him over his horse taile, and neere hand had broken his necke. And anon after him came sir Brandiles; and when he saw sir Dagonet have that fall, he was passing wroth, and cryed, "Keepe thee." And so they hurled together wonderous sore. But the knight smot sir Brandiles so sore that hee went to the earth horse and man. Sir Ewaine came after. and saw all this. "Jesu," said he, "yonder is a strong knight." And then they feutred their speares, and this knight came so egerly that he smote downe sir Ewaine alone. Then came Ozana with the hardy heart, and he

was smitten downe. "Now," said sir Griflet, "by my counsaile, let us send unto yonder knight arraunt, and wit whether hee be of king Arthurs court, for I deeme it is sir Lamoracke de Galis." So they sent unto him, and prayed the strange knight to tell his name, and whether he were of king Arthurs court or not. "As for my name, they shall not wit, but tell them then I am a knight arraunt as they are, and let them wit that I am no knight of king Arthurs court." And so the squier rode againe to them, and rehearsed unto them his answere. "By my head," said sir Agrawaine, "hee is one of the strongest knights that ever I saw, for hee hath overthrowne three noble knights, and needs we must encounter with him for shame." So sir Agrawaine feutred his speare, and that other was ready and smote him downe over his horse taile to the earth. And in the same wise he smote sir Ewaine les Avoutres, and sir Griflet. Then had hee served them all but onely sir Dinadan, for hee was behind the other company, and sir Mordred, for hee was unarmed. So when this was done, the strong knight rode on his way a soft pace. And alwayes king Marke rode after him, praising him much; but he would answere no words, but sighed wonderous sore, hanging down his head toward the ground, taking no heed to the words that king Marke said. Thus they rode well a three mile English, and then this knight called to him a page,[1] and said to him, "Ride lightly unto yonder manner that standeth so faire, and recommend mee unto the lady of that manner, and pray her for to send mee some refreshing of good meates and drinkes; and if shee aske thee what knight that I am, tell her that I am the knight that followeth the glatisant beast, that is to say, in English, the questing beast; for that beast there soever hee went he quested in the belly with such a noise, as if that it had beene about a thirtie couple of hounds." And then the page went as he was bidden, and came to the

[1] *A page.—A varlette,* Caxton.

manner, and saluted the lady, and hee told her from whence hee came. And when she understood that hee came from the knight which followed the questing beast, "O sweete Jesu," said shee, "when shall I see the noble knight, my deere sonne sir Palomides? alas! will hee not abide with me?" And therewith she wept and sowned and made passing great dole. And then as soone as she might shee gave the varlet all that hee asked. And then the varlet returned unto sir Palomides, for hee was a varlet of king Marke. And as soone as hee came, hee told that the knights name was sir Palomides. "I am well pleased," said king Marke, "but hold thee still and say nothing." Then they alighted, and set downe, and reposed them a while. And anon therewith king Marke fell on sleepe. When sir Palomides saw him sound on sleepe, hee tooke his horse and rode his way, and said to them, "I will not bee in the company of a sleeping knight." And so hee rode forth a great pace.

CHAP. XCIX.—How king Marke and sir Dinadan heard sir Palomides making great sorrow and mourning for La beale Isoude.

NOW returne wee unto sir Dinadan, that found these seven knights passing heavy; and when hee wist how they had sped, hee was as heavy as they. "My lord sir Ewaine," said sir Dinadan, "I dare lay my head it is sir Lamoracke de Galis; I promise you all that I shall find him, and hee may bee found in this countrey." And so sir Dinadan rode after this knight; and so did king Marke, that sought him through the forrest. So as king Marke rode after sir Palomides, he heard a noise of a man that made great dole. Then king Marke rode as nigh that noise as hee might, and as hee durst. Then was he ware of a knight that was descended off his horse, and had put of his helme, and there hee made a piteous complaint and a dolorous of love.

Now leave we of that, and talke wee of sir Dinadan, which rode to seeke sir Palomides. And as hee came within a forrest, hee met with a knight that chased a deere. "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "have yee not met with a knight that had a shield of silver and lyons heads therein?" "Yee, faire knight," said the other, "with such a knight met I but a while agoe, and straight yonder way he went." "Sir, I thanke you," said sir Dinadan, "for might I find the tract of his horse, I should not faile to find that knight." Right so as sir Dinadan rode late in an evening, hee heard a dolefull noyse, as it were of a man. Then sir Dinadan rode toward that noyse; and when he came nigh unto that noyse, he alighted from his horse and went neere him on foote. Then sir Dinadan was ware of a knight that stood under a tree, and his horse tied by him, and the helme of his head; and alwaies that knight made a dolefull complaint as ever made knight. And alwaies hee made his complaint of La beale Isoud, the queene of Cornewaile, and said: "Ah, faire lady, why love I thee? for thou art the fairest lady of all other ladies, and yet shewed you never love to me nor bountie; and yet must I love you; and I may not blame you, faire lady, for mine eyes beene cause of this sorrow, and yet to love I am but a foole, for the best knight of the world loveth you, and him yee love againe; that is sir Tristram de Lyones. And the falsest king and knight is your husband, and the most coward and full of treason is your lord king Marke. Alas! that ever so faire a lady and pearlesse of any other should be matched with the most vilanous king and knight of the world." All this language heard king Marke what sir Palomides said by him; wherefore he was adread when hee saw sir Dinadan, least, and hee espied him, that hee would tell sir Palomides that it was king Marke; and therefore hee withdrew him, and tooke his horse and rode to his men where as hee had commanded them for to abide, and so he rode as fast as hee might to Camelot. And the same day hee

found there sir Amant the knight, there ready, that before king Arthur had appealed him of treason. And so lightly king Arthur commanded them to doe battaile together, and by misadventure king Marke smote sir Amant through the body, and yet was sir Amant in the rightwise quarrell.

And right so hee tooke his horse, and departed from the court, for dread of sir Dinadan, that hee would tell sir Tristram and sir Palomides what hee was. Then were there maidens which La beale Isoud had sent to sir Tristram that knew sir Amant well.

CHAP. C.—How king Marke had slaine sir Amant wrongfully before king Arthur, and how sir Launcelot fetcht king Marke to king Arthur.



HEN, by the licence of king Arthur, they went unto him, and spake with him, for while the troncheon of the speare strake within his body hee spake: "Ah, faire damosels," said he, "recommend mee unto La beale Isoud, and tell her that I am slaine for the love of her and of sir Tristram." And there he told the damosels how cowardly king Marke had slaine him and sir Bersules his fellow. "And for that deede I appealed him for treason; and here I am slaine in a righteous quarrell; and all was because sir Bersules and I would not consent by treason to slay that noble knight sir Tristram." Then the two maidens cryed aloud, that all the court might heere it, and said: "Oh, sweet lord Jesu, which knoweth all things hid and unknowne, why sufferest thou so false a traytour to vainquish and slay a true knight that fought in a righteous quarrell?" Then anon sprang unto the king and the queene, and unto lords and ladies, that it was king Marke that had slaine sir Amant and sir Bersules afore hand, wherefore they did their battaile. Then was king Arthur wroth out of measure, and so were all the other knights. But when sir Tristram knew all the

matter, hee made great dole out of measure, and wept for sorrow for the noble knights sir Bersules and sir Amant. When sir Launcelot espied that sir Tristram wept, hee went hastily unto king Arthur and said, "Sir, I pray you give mee leave to returne againe yonder false king and knight king Marke." "I require you," said king Arthur, "fetch him againe to mee; but I would not that yee slew him, for my worship." Then sir Launcelot armed him in all the hast, and mounted upon a great horse, and tooke a speare in his hand, and rode after king Marke. And from thence a three mile English, sir Launcelot overtooke him and bad him "turne, recreant king and knight; and whether thou wilt or not, thou shalt goe with me to king Arthurs court." King Marke returned, and looked upon sir Launcelot, and said: "Faire sir, what is your name?" "Wit thou well," said hee, "my name is sir Launcelot du Lake, and therefore defend thee." And so when king Marke wist that it was the noble knight sir Launcelot that came so fast upon him with a speare, hee cryed then aloud and said: "I yeeld me unto thee, honourable knight sir Launcelot." But sir Launcelot would not heere him, but came fast upon him. King Marke saw that, and made no defence, but tombled downe out of his saddle to the earth as a sacke, and there he lay still, and cryed sir Launcelot mercy. "Arise, recreant knight and king," said sir Launcelot. "I will not fight," said the king, "but whether yee will, I will goe with you." "Alas, alas," said sir Launcelot, "that I may not give thee one buffet for the love of sir Tristram and of La beale Isoud, and for the two knights that thou hast slaine trayterously." And so he mounted upon his horse, and brought him unto king Arthurs court. And there king Marke alighted in the same place, and threw his helme from his head upon the earth and his sword, and fell flat unto the earth before king Arthurs feete, and put him in his grace and mercy. "So God mee helpe," said king Arthur, "yee are welcome in

a manner, and in a manner yee are not welcome. In this manner yee are welcome, that yee come hither maugre your head, as I suppose." "That is truth," said king Marke, "or else had I not beene heere, for my lord sir Launcelot brought mee hither by his force, and to him I am yolden as recreant." "Well," said king Arthur, "yee understand yee ought to doe me service, homage, and feaulte, and never ye would doe me none, but ever yee have beene against mee, and a destroyer of my knights; now how will yee acquit you?" "Sir," said king Marke, "right as your highnesse will require me to my power, I will make a large amends;" for hee was a faire speaker and a false dissembler. Then for great pleasure of sir Tristram, to make them two accorded, the king withheld king Marke as at that time, and made a broken love day[1] betweene them.

CHAP. CI.—How sir Dinadan told sir Palomides of the battaile betweene sir Launcelot and sir Tristram.

NOW turne wee againe unto sir Palomides, how sir Dinadan comforted him in all that ever he might from his great sorrow. "What knight be yee?" said sir Palomides. "Sir, I am a knight arraunt as yee are, that hath sought you long by your shield." "Here is my shield," said sir Palomides, "wit ye well, and if yee will ought therewith I shall defend it." "Nay, sir Dinadan, I will not have to doe with you but in good manner." "And if that yee will, yee shall find mee soone ready." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "whetherward are yee riding this way?" "By my head," said sir Palomides, "I wote not, but as fortune leadeth mee."

[1] *A broken love day.*—A love day was a day fixed for the settlement of personal differences by arbitration. By a *broken* love day is meant an arrangement or reconciliation which the one party intended not to keep.

"Heard yee or saw yee not of sir Tristram?" "So God me helpe, of sir Tristram I both heard and saw, and not for then we loved not inwardly together, yet at my mischiefe sir Tristram rescewed mee from my death. And yet or hee and I departed, by both our assents wee assigned a day that we should have met at the stony grave that Merlin set by Camelot, and there to have done battaile together; how be it I was letted," said sir Palomides, "that I could not hold my day, the which grieved me sore; but I have a large excuse, for I was prisoner with a lord, and many other moe, and that shall sir Tristram right well understand, that I brake it not for feare or cowardise." And then sir Palomides told sir Dinadan the day that they should have met together. "So God me helpe," said sir Dinadan, "that same day met sir Launcelot and sir Tristram at the same grave of stone, and there was the most mightiest battaile that ever was seene in this land betweene two knights, for they fought more then foure houres, and there they bled both so much blood that all men mervailed that ever they might endure it. And so at the last by both their assents they were made friends and sworne bretheren for ever, and no man can judge the better knight; and now is sir Tristram made a knight of the round table, and hee sitteth in the siege of the noble knight sir Marhaus." "By my head," said sir Palomides, "sir Tristram is farre bigger then sir Launcelot, and the hardier knight." "Have yee assaied them both?" said sir Dinadan. "I have seene sir Tristram fight," said sir Palomides, "but never sir Launcelot to my witting." But at the fountaine where sir Launcelot lay and slept, there with one speare hee smote downe sir Tristram and also sir Palomides, but at that time they knew not the one the other. "Faire knight," said sir Dinadan, "as for sir Launcelot and sir Tristram, let them bee, for the worst of them will not be lightly matched of no knight that I know living." "No," said sir Palomides, "God defend, but and I had a quarrell to the better of them

both, I would with as good a will fight with them as with you." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I require you tell mee your name; and in good faith I shall hold you company till that wee come to Camelot, and there ye shall have great worship at the great and noble turnament; for there shall bee queene Guenever and La beale Isoud of Cornewaile." "Wit yee well, sir knight," said sir Palomides, "for the love of La beale Isoud I will bee there, or else not, but I shall not have to doe in king Arthurs court." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I shall ride with you and doe you service, so that yee will tell me your name." "Sir knight, yee shall understand that my name is sir Palomides, brother unto sir Safre the good knight, and sir Segwarides and I bee Sarasins borne both of father and mother." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I thanke you heartily for the telling of your name, for I am glad that I know your name and what ye be; and heere I promise you, by the faith that I owe to God, yee shall not be hurt by me by my will, but much more rather advanced unto great honour and worship, and thereto will I helpe you with all my power, I promise you, doubt yee not, and certainely upon my life ye shall winne great worship in the court of king Arthur, and bee right welcome." So then they dressed on their helmes, and put on their shields, and mounted upon their horses, and tooke the broad way toward Camelot, and then were they ware of a castle that was faire and rich, and also passing strong as any was within this realme.

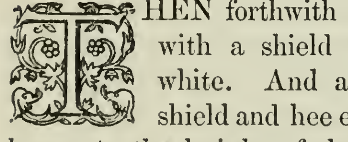
CHAP. CII.—How sir Lamoracke justed with divers knights of the castle wherein was Morgan le Fay.

SIR Palomides," said sir Dinadan, "here is a castle that I well know, and therein dwelleth queene Morgan le Fay, king Arthurs sister, and king Arthur gave her this castle, the which hee hath repented him sithence a thousand times; for sithence

king Arthur and shee have beene at debate and strife, but this castle could hee never get nor winne of her by no manner of engine; and ever as shee might shee made warre on king Arthur, and all dangerous knights she withholdeth with her for to destroy all those knights that king Arthur loveth, and there shall no knight passe this way but he must just with one knight, or with two or three. And if it happen that king Arthurs knight be beaten, he shall leese his horse and his harneys and all that hee hath, and hard if hee escape that he shall be prisoner." "So God helpe me," said sir Palomides, "this is a shamefull custome and a vilanous usance for a queene to use, and namely to make such warre upon her owne brother, which is called the floure of chivalrie that is christen or heathen; and with all my heart I would destroy that shamefull custome, and I will that all the world know it, that she shall have no service of mee. And if that shee send out any knights, as I suppose shee will, for to just, they shall have both their hands full." "And I shall not faile you," said sir Dinadan, "unto my puissance, upon my life." So as they sate on horsbacke before the castle, ther came a knight riding with a red shield, and two squires afore him. And then hee came straight unto sir Palomides the good knight, and said unto him, "Faire and gentill knight arraunt, so God me helpe, for the love thou owest unto the true order of knighthood, that thou wilt not have to doe heere with these men of this castle." (This was sir Lamoracke de Galis that said thus.) "For I came hitherto to seeke this deed, and it is my request, and therefore I beseech the, knight, let me deale with it, and if I bee beaten, revenge mee." "In the name of God," said sir Palomides, "let see how yee will speede, and wee shall behold your deeds." Then anon there came foorth a knight of the castle, and he proffered to just with the knight with the red shield; and anon they encountred together, and hee with the red shield smote him so hard that he beare him over unto the earth. Therwith anon came another

knight of the castle, and hee was smitten so sore that he avoided his saddle. And forthwith came the third knight, and the knight with the red shield smote him unto the ground. Then came sir Palomides, and besought him that hee might helpe him to just. "Faire knight," said he unto him, "suffer me as at this time to have my will, for and they were twentie knights I shall not doubt them." And upon the wals of the castle there were many lords and ladies, which cried and said, "Well have yee justed, yee knight with the red shield." But as soone as the knight had smitten them downe, his squiers tooke their horses, and avoided the sadels and bridels of their horses, and turned them into the forrest, and made the knights to be kept to the end of the justs. Right so came out of the castle the fourth knight, and freshly proffered to just with the knight with the red shield. And he was ready, and hee smote him so hard that horse and man fell to the earth, and the knights backe brake with the fall and his necke also. "O Jesu," said sir Palomides, "that yonder is a passing good knight, and the best juster that ever I saw." "By my head," said sir Dinadan, "he is as good as sir Launcelot or sir Tristram, whatsoever knight hee bee."

CHAP. CIII.—How sir Palomides would have justed for sir Lamoracke with the knights of the castle.



THEN forthwith came out of the castle a knight with a shield bended with blacke and with white. And anon the knight with the red shield and hee encountred together so hard that he smote the knight of the castle through the body, and brake the horse backe. "Faire knight," said sir Palomides, "yee have overmuch in hand, therefore I pray you let mee just, for yee had need to rest you." "Why, sir," said the knight, "seeme yee that I am weake and feeble? and, sir, me seemeth yee proffer me wrong and to mee shame when

I doe well enough; I tell you now as I told you before, for and they were twentie knights I shall beate them, and if I be beaten or slaine then may ye revenge mee. And if ye thinke that I be weary, and that yee have an appetite to just with mee, I shall find you justing enough." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I said it not because that I should just with you, but me seemeth that yee have overmuch in hand." "And therefore, if yee were gentle," said the knight with the red shield, "yee should not proffer me shame. Therefore I require you that yee will just with me, and yee shall find that I am not weary." "Sith yee require mee," said sir Palomides, "take heede to your selfe." Then those two noble knights came together as fast as their horses might runne, and the knight smote sir Palomides so sore on the shield that the speare went into his side and made a great wound and a perillous, and therwith sir Palomides avoided his saddle. And that knight turned unto Dinadan; and when hee saw him comming, he cryed aloud and said, "Sir, I will not have to doe with you." But for all that hee left not, but came running straight upon him. This saying, sir Dinadan put forth his speare and all to shevered it upon the knight with the red shield. But the knight smote sir Dinadan againe so hard upon the shield that he beare him cleane over his horse taile. But the knight would not suffer his squiers to meddle with their horses, because they were arraunt knights. Then hee dressed him againe to the castle, and justed with seaven knights moe, and there was none of them might withstand him, but he beare them to the earth. And of these twelve knights he slew in plaine justs foure; and the eight knights hee made them to swere on the crosse of a sword, that they should never more use the evill custome of the castle. And when hee had made them to swere that oath, he let them passe. And ever stood the lords and the ladies on the castle wals crying and saying, "Knight with the red shield, yee have mervailously well done, as ever wee saw knight doe." And therewith came

a knight out of the castle unarmed, and said, "Knight with the red shield, overmuch damage hast thou done to us this day, therefore returne whether thou wilt, for heere are no moe that will have to doe with thee, for we repent sore that ever thou camest here, for by thee is fordone the old custome of this castle." And with that word he returned againe into the castle, and locked the gates. Then the knight with the red shield turned, and called the squires, and so past forth on his way and rode a great pace. And when hee was past, sir Palomides went unto sir Dinadan and said, "I had never such a shame of no knight that ever I met, and therefore I cast me to ride after him, and to be revenged with my sword. For on horsebacke I deeme I shall get no worship upon him." "Sir Palomides," said sir Dinadan, "yee shall not meddle with him by my counsaile, for yee shall get no worship of him, and for this cause, yee have seene him this day that hee hath had overmuch to doe and hath overmuch travailed." "By Almightie Jesus," said sir Palomides, "I shall never bee well at ease till that I have had to doe with him." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I shall give you my beholding." "Well," said sir Palomides, "then shall yee see how we shall redresse our mights." So they tooke their horses of their pages, and rode after the knight with the red shield, and downe in a valey beside a fountaine they were ware where hee alighted to rest him, and had done off his helme for to drinke at the fountaine.

CHAP. CIV.—How sir Lamoracke justed with sir Palomides, and how he hurt him grievously.



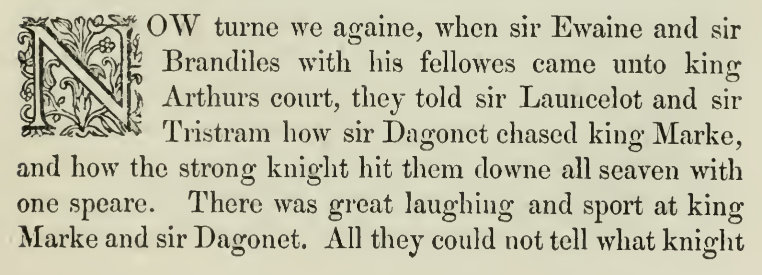
HEN sir Palomides rode fast till hee came nigh him, and then hee said, "Knight, remember of the shame yee did to mee right now at the castle, therefore dresse thee, for I will have to doe with thee." "Faire knight," said hee unto sir Palo-

mides, "of mee yee may winne no worship, for yee have seene this day that I have travailed sore." "As for that," said sir Palomides "I will not let, for wit ye well I will be revenged." "Well," said the knight, "I may happen to endure you." And therewith he mounted upon his horse, and tooke a great speare in his hand, and made him ready for to just. "Nay," said sir Palomides, "I will not just, for I am sure at justing I get no prize." "Faire knights," said that knight, "it would beseeme a knight to just and fight on horsebacke." "Ye shal see what I will doe," said sir Palomides. And therewith hee alighted downe on foote, and dressed his shield before him, and pulled out his sword. Then the knight with the red shield descended downe from his horse, and dressed his shield before him, and drew out his sword. And then they came together a soft pace, and wonderously they lashed together passing thicke, the mountenance of an hour or that they breathed. Then they traced and traversed, and waxed wonderous wroth, and either behight[1] others death. They hewed so fast with their swords, that they cut in sunder halfe their shields and mayles, that the bare flesh in some places stood above their harneis. And when sir Palomides beheld his fellowes sword overcovered with his blood, it greeved him full sore. Sometime they foyned, and sometime they strooke as wild men. But at the last sir Palomides waxed faint, because of the first wound that he had at the castle with a strooke of a speare; for that wound greeved him wonderous sore. "Faire knight," said sir Palomides, "me seemeth we have assayed either other passing sore, and it may please thee I require thee of thy knighthood for to tell me thy name." "Sir," said the knight unto sir Palomides, "that am I loth for to doe, for thou hast done me wrong and no knighthood to proffer me battaile, considering my great travaile; but and thou wilt tell me thy name, I will tell thee mine." "Sir," said he, "wit thou well my name is

[1] *Behight.*—Promised; threatened.

sir Palomides." "Ah, sir, ye shall understand my name is sir Lamoracke de Galis, son and heire unto the good knight and king, king Pellinore, and sir Tor the good knight is mine halfe brother." When sir Palomides heard him say so, he kneeled downe and asked him mercy, "for outragiously have I done to you this day, considering the great deeds of armes that I have seene you doe, shamefully and unknightly have I required you to doe battaile with me." "Ah, sir Palomides," said sir Lamoracke, "overmuch have yee done and said to mee." And therewith hee embraced him with both his hands, and said, "Sir Palomides the worthy knight, in all this land is no better than yee, nor of more prowesse, and me repenteth that wee have fought together." "So it doth not mee," said sir Palomides, "and yet I am sorrer wounded then yee be; but as for that, no force, for I shall soone thereof bee whole; but certainely I would not for the fairest castle in this land but that you and I had met, for I shall love you the better all the dayes of my life afore all other knights, except my brother sir Safere." "I except the same," said sir Lamoracke, "of my brother sir Tor." Then came sir Dinadan, and made great joy of sir Lamoracke. Then their squires dressed their shields and their harnies, and staunched their wounds. And thereby in a priory they rested them well and easily all that night.

CHAP. CV.—How it was told sir Launcelot that sir Dagonet chased king Marke, and how a knight overthrew him and six knights.



NOW turne we againe, when sir Ewaine and sir Brandiles with his fellowes came unto king Arthurs court, they told sir Launcelot and sir Tristram how sir Dagonet chased king Marke, and how the strong knight hit them downe all seaven with one speare. There was great laughing and sport at king Marke and sir Dagonet. All they could not tell what knight

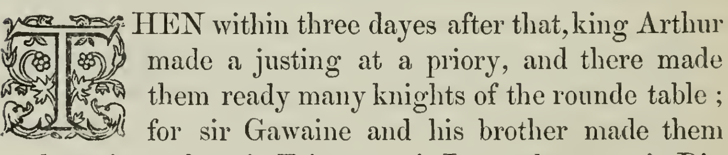
it was that had resccewed king Marke. Then they asked king Marke if hee knew him. And hee answered and said, " Hee nameth himselfe the knight that followeth the questing beast, and on that name hee sent one of his varlets unto a place where that his mother is ; and when she heard from whence hee came shee made a passing great dole, and discovered unto my varlet his name, and said, ' O deere sonne sir Palomides, why wilt thou not once see mee ? ' and therefore," said king Marke, " it is to understand that his name is sir Palomides the noble knight." Then were all these seaven knights passing glad that they knew his name.

Now let us turne againe, for on the morrow they tooke their horses, both sir Lamoracke, sir Palomides, and sir Dinadan, with their squires and varlets, till they saw a faire castle which stood upon a mountaine well closed. And there they rode, and there they found a knight that hight sir Galahalt, which was lord of that castle. And there they had good cheere, and were well at ease. " Sir Dinadan," said sir Lamoracke, " what will yee doe ? " " Sir," said sir Dinadan, " I will to morrow goe toward the court of my lord king Arthur." " By my head," said sir Palomides, " I will not ride these three dayes, for I am sore hurt and much have I bleeded, and therefore I will rest me a while." " Truely," said sir Lamoracke, " and I will abide here with you, and when yee ride then will I ride, unlesse that yee tarry not to long, then I will take my horse ; therefore I pray you, sir Dinadan, abide and ride with us." " By my faith," said sir Dinadan, " I will not abide, for I have such a talent unto sir Tristram that I may not abide long from him." " Ah, sir Dinadan," said sir Palomides, " now doe I understand that yee love my mortall enemy, and therefore how should I trust to you ?" " Well," said sir Dinadan, " I love my lord sir Tristram above all other, and him will I serve and doe honour." " So shall I," said sir Lamoracke, " in all that may lye in

my power." So on the morrow sir Dinadan rode unto the court of king Arthur; and by the way as hee rode he saw where stood an arraunt knight, and made him ready for to just. "Not so," said sir Dinadan, "for I have no will for to just." "With me shall yee just," said the knight, "or that yee passe this way." "Whether aske ye justs by love or by hate?" The knight answered and said, "Wit ye well, I aske it for love, and not for hate." "It may well be so," said sir Dinadan, "but yee proffer me hard love when ye will just with me with a sharpe speare; but faire knight," said sir Dinadan, "sith ye will just with mee, meete with me in the court of king Arthur, and there shall I just with you." "Well," said the knight, "sith ye will not just with me, I pray you tell mee your name." "Sir knight," said he, "my name is sir Dinadan." "Ah," said the knight, "full well I know you for a right good knight and a gentle, and wit you well I love you heartily." "Then shall heere bee no just betweene us," said sir Dinadan. So they departed; and that same day hee came to Camelot, where king Arthur lay, and there hee saluted the king and the queene, sir Launcelot and sir Tristram. And all the court was glad of sir Dinadan, for hee was gentle, wise, and curteous, and a good knight. And in especiall the valiant knight sir Tristram loved sir Dinadan passing well, above all other knights except sir Launcelot. Then the king asked sir Dinadan what adventures hee had seene. "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I have seene many adventures, and some king Marke knoweth, but not all." Then the king harkned sir Dinadan how he told that sir Palomides and he were before the castle of Morgan le Fay, and how sir Lamoracke tooke the justs afore them, and how he forjusted twelve knights, and of them he slew foure, "and after he smote downe sir Palomides and mee both." "I may not beleeve that," quoth king Arthur, "for sir Palomides is a passing good knight." "That is truth," said sir Dinadan, "but yet I saw him more better proved hand for hand."

And then he told king Arthur all the battaile, and how sir Palomides was more weaker and more hurt, and lost more of his blood. "And without doubt," said sir Dinadan, "had the battaile any longer endured, sir Palomides had there beene slaine." "Oh, Jesu," said king Arthur, "this is to me a great mervaile." "My lord," said sir Tristram, "marvaile yee no thing thereof, for at mine advise there is not a valianter knight in all the world living, for I know his might; and now I will say to you, I was never weary of no knight but if it were sir Launcelot, and there is no knight in the world except sir Launcelot I would that did so well as sir Lamoracke." "So God mee helpe," said king Arthur, "I would that that knight sir Lamoracke came unto this court." "My lord," said sir Dinadan, "he will be here in short space, and sir Palomides also; but I feare me that sir Palomides may not yet travaile."

CHAP. CVI.—How king Arthur let doe crie a just, and how sir Lamoracke came in and overthrew sir Gawaine and many more.



THEN within three dayes after that, king Arthur made a justing at a priory, and there made them ready many knights of the rounde table; for sir Gawaine and his brother made them ready to just; but sir Tristram, sir Launcelot, nor sir Dinadan would not just, but suffred sir Gawaine for the love of king Arthur, with his brethren, for to winne the degree if they might. Then on the morrow they apparailled them to just, sir Gawaine and his foure brethren, and did there great deeds of armes. And sir Ector de Maris did mervailously well, but sir Gawaine passed all that fellowship. Wherefore king Arthur and all the knights gave sir Gawaine the honour at the beginning. Right so king Arthur was ware of a knight and two squires that came out of a forrest side, with a shield covered with leather; and then hee came slily and hurtled here and there, and anon with

one speare he smote downe two knights of the round table. Then with his hurtling he lost the covering of the shield. Then was the king and all other ware that he beare the red shield. "O Jesu," said king Arthur, "see where rideth a stout knight, hee with the red shield." And there was crying, "Beware the knight with the red shield!" So within a while he had overthrowen the three brethren of sir Gawaine. "So God mee helpe," said king Arthur, "me seemeth yonder is the best knight that ever I saw." With that he saw him encounter with sir Gawaine, and he smote him downe with so great force, that hee made the horse to avoide the sadle. "How now," said the king, "sir Gawaine hath a fall; well were me and I knew what knight he were with the red shield." "I know him well," said sir Dinadan; "but as at this time yee shall not know his name." "By my head," said sir Tristram, "hee justeth better then sir Palomides, and if ye list to knowe his name, wit ye well his name is sir Lamoracke de Galis." As they stoode thus talking, sir Gawaine and he encountred together againe, and there hee smote sir Gawayne from his horse and brused him sore. And in the sight of king Arthur hee smote downe twentie knights beside sir Gawaine and his brother; and so clearely was the prise given to him as a knight peerelesse. Then slyly and mervailously sir Lamoracke withdrew him from all the fellowship into the forrest. All this espied king Arthur, for his eye went never from him. Then king Arthur, sir Launcelot, sir Tristram, and sir Dinadan tooke their hackneys and rode streight after the good knight sir Lamoracke de Galis, and there found him. Then said king Arthur, "A! faire knight, well bee ye found." And when hee saw the king, hee put off his helme and saluted him. And when he saw sir Tristram, he alighted downe from his horse, and ranne unto him for to take him by the thighes; but sir Tristram would not suffer him, but he alighted or that he came. And either tooke other in armes, and made great

joy of each other. The king was glad, and in likewise was all the fellowship of the round table, except sir Gawaine and his brethren. And when they wist that it was sir Lamoracke, they had great despite, and were wonderous wroth with him, because hee had put them unto dishonour that day. Then sir Gawaine called prively in counsaile all his bretherne, and unto them said thus: "Faire bretheren, here may yee see whom that wee hate king Arthur loveth, and whome that wee love he hateth; and wit yee well, my faire bretherne, that this sir Lamoracke will never love us, because we slew his father king Pellinor, for wee deemed that he slew our father king of Orkeney; and for the despite of king Pellinor sir Lamoracke did us a shame to our mother, therefore I will bee revenged." "Sir," said sir Gawains brethren, "let us see how yee will or may bee revenged, and yee shall find us ready." "Well," said sir Gawaine, "hold you still, and wee shall espie our time."

CHAP. CVII.—How king Arthur made king Marke to bee accorded with sir Tristram, and how they departed to ride toward Cornewaile.

NOW passe wee over this matter, and leave wee of sir Gawaine and his brethren, and speake wee of king Arthur, that upon a day said to king Marke, "Sir, I require you and pray you for to give me a gift that I shall aske you." "Sir," said king Marke, "I will give you what somever yee desire, and it bee in my power." "Sir, gramercy," said king Arthur, "this will I aske you, that yee will be good lord unto sir Tristram, for hee is a man of great honour, and that yee will take him with you into Cornewaile, and let him see his friends, and there cherish him for my sake." "Sir," said king Marke, "I promise you by the faith of my bodie, and by the faith I owe unto God and unto you, I shall worship him for your sake in all that I can or maie."

"Sir," said king Arthur, "and I will forgive you all the evill that ever I ought you, and so bee that yee will sweare that upon a booke before mee." "With a good will," said king Marke. And then he swore upon a booke before him and all his knights. And therewith king Marke and sir Tristram tooke either other by the hand hard fastened together; but for all this king Marke thoght falsly, as it shall be well proved afterward, for he put sir Tristram in prison, and cowardly would have slaine him. Then soone after king Marke tooke his leave for to ride into Cornewaile, and sir Tristram made him ready for to ride with him; wherefore the most part of the round table were angry and heavy, and in especiall sir Launcelot and sir Lamoracke and Dinadan were wroth out of measure; for well they wist that king Marke would sley or destroie sir Tristram. "Alas!" said sir Dinadan, "that my lord sir Tristram shall depart." And sir Tristram tooke such sorrow, that he was amased like a foole. "Alas!" said sir Launcelot unto king Arthur, "what have yee done? for yee shall leese the most man of worship that ever came into your court." "It was his owne desire," said king Arthur, "and therefore I might not doe withall; for I have done all that I can, and made them to bee accorded." "Accorded?" said sir Launcelot, "fie upon that accord! for yee shall heare that hee shall sley sir Tristram, or els put him in prison; for he is the most coward and the most vilainous king and knight that is now living." And therewith sir Launcelot departed, and came to king Marke, and said to him thus: "Sir king, wit thou well the noble knight sir Tristram shall go with thee, beware, I red[1] thee, of treason; for and thou mischeve or sley that knight by any manner of falshood or treason, by the faith that I owe unto our Lord Jesu Christ, and unto the high order of knighthood, I shall sley thee with mine owne hands." "Sir Launcelot," said the king, "overmuch have yee said to

[1] *Red.*—Advise, counsel.

me, and I have sworne and said over largely before king Arthur, in hearing of all his knights, that I should not sley nor betray him; it were to mee overmuch shame to breake my promisse." "Yee say well," said sir Launcelot, "but yee are called so false and full of treason, that no man can beleeve you; forsoth, it is full well knowen wherfore ye came into this countrey, and for none other cause but for to sley sir Tristram." So with great dole king Marke and sir Tristram roode together, for it was sir Tristram wills and his meanes to goe with king Marke, and al was to the entent to see La beale Isoud, for without the sight of her sir Tristram might not endure.

CHAP. CVIII.—How Percivale was made knight of king Arthur, and how a dombe maide speake and brought him to the round table.



NOW turne wee againe unto Lamoracke, and speake wee of his bretherne. Sir Tor was king Pellenores first sonne, begoten on Aries wife the cowheard, for he was a bastard, and sir Aglavale was his first sonne begotten in wedlocke; sir Lamoracke, Dornar, and Percivall, all these were his sonnes also in wedlocke. So when king Marke and sir Tristram were departed from the court, there was made great dole and sorrow for the departing of sir Tristram. Then the king and all his knights made no manner of joy eight daies after. After, at the eight dayes end, there came to the court a knight with a young squire with him. And when this knight was unarmed, he went unto the king, and required him for to make that young squire a knight. "Of what linnage is he come?" said king Arthur. "Sir," said the knight, "hee is the sonne of king Pellinor, that did you sometime good service; and hee is brother unto Lamoracke de Galis, the good knight." "Well," said king Arthur, "for what cause desire yee that of mee, that I should make

him a knight?" "Wit you well, my lord the king, that the yong squire is brother to me as well as to sir Lamoracke, and my name is sir Aglavale." "Sir Aglavale," said king Arthur, "for the love of sir Lamoracke, and for the love of his father, hee shall bee made knight to morrow; now tell me," said king Arthur, "what is his name?" "Sir," said the knight, "his name is Percival de Galis."[1] So on the morrow the king made him knight in Camelot; but the king and all his knights thought it would be long or he proved a good knight. Then at the dinner, when the king was set at the table, and every knight after hee was of prowesse, the king commanded him to bee set among the meane knights. And so was sir Percival set as the king commanded. Then was there a maide of the queenes court that was come of high blood, and shee was dombe, and had never spoken word. Right so shee came streight into the hall, and went unto Percival and tooke him by the hand, and said aloud that the king and all the knights might heare it, "Arise, sir Percival, the noble knight and Goddes knight, and goe with mee." And so he did. And there shee brought him unto the right side of the siege perillous, and said, "Faire knight, take here thy siege, for that appertaineth unto thee, and unto none other." Right so she departed, and asked a priest. And when shee was confessed and houseled,[2] then she died. Then the king and all the court made great joy of sir Percival.

[1] *Percival de Galis.*—Percival was a very favourite hero of this cycle of romances. The earlier part of the older story—in which Percival is represented as a youth who had been brought up by his mother in perfect ignorance of everything connected with chivalry, to save him from the fate of his father and two elder brothers, but whose natural disposition gains the mastery over this defective education—has been considerably modified to fit it into our history of king Arthur. The early English metrical romance of sir Percival of Galles is printed in Mr. Halliwell's Thornton Romances.

[2] *Houseled.*—Received the sacrament; communicated.

CHAP. CIX.—How sir Lamoracke lay with king Lots wife, and how sir Gaheris slew her, which was his owne mother.

OW turne wee unto sir Lamoracke, which was much praysed there. Then by the meanes of sir Gawaine and his brethren, they sent for their mother there beside fast by a castle beside Camelot, and all was to the entent for to slay sir Lamoracke. The queene of Orkeny was there but a while, but sir Lamoracke wist of her being, and was full faine, and, for to make an end of this matter, he sent unto her, and there betweene them was a night appointed that sir Lamoracke should come to her. Thereof was ware sir Gaheris, and hee rode before the same night, and waited upon sir Lamorake, and then hee saw where he came all armed; and where sir Lamoracke alighted, hee tied his horse to a prevy posterne. And then hee went into a parlour and unarmed him; and then he went unto the queenes bed, and shee made of him passing great joy, and he of her againe, for either loved other passing sore. So when the knight sir Gaheris saw his time, he came unto their beds side all armed, with his sword naked, and sodainely he gate his mother by the haire, and strooke off her head.

When sir Lamorake saw the hot blood dash upon him, the which hee loved passing well, yee may right well thinke that hee was sore abashed and dismaied of that dolorous knight. And therewith sir Lamoracke lept out of his bed in his shirt, as a man all dismaied, saying to them thus: "Ah, sir Gaheris, knight of the round table, full foule and evill have yee done, and to you a great shame; alas! why have yee slaine your owne mother which bare you? with more right yee should have slaine mee." "The offence hast thou done," said sir Gaheris, "notwithstanding a man is borne to offer his service; but yet thou shouldest beware with whom thou medlest, for thou hast put mee and my

brethren to a shame; and thy father slew our father, and thou to lye by our mother it is much shame for us to suffer; and as for thy father king Pellinor, my brother sir Gawaine and I slew him." "Yee did him the more wrong," said sir Lamoracke, "for my father slew not your father; it was Balan le Savage, and as yet my fathers death is not yet revenged." "Leave these words," said sir Gaheris, "for and thou speake fellonously I will slay thee; but because thou art naked, I am ashamed to sley thee, but wit thou well in what place that I may get thee, I shall slay thee. And now my mother is quite of thee, and therefore withdraw thee and take thine armour that thou were gone." Sir Lamoracke saw that there was none other bote, fast armed him, and tooke his horse and rode his way, making great sorrow; but for shame and doloure he would not ride unto king Arthurs court, but rode another way. But when it was knowne that sir Gaheris had slaine his mother, king Arthur was passing wroth, and commanded him to goe out of his court. Wit yee well sir Gawaine was wroth that sir Gaheris had slaine his mother and let sir Lamoracke escape. And for this matter was the king passing wroth, and so was sir Launcelot, and many other of the round table. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "here is a great mischiefe befallen by fellony and by forcast treason, that your sister is thus shamefully slaine; and I dare sày that it was wrought by treason, and I am sure yee shall leese that good knight sir Lamoracke, which is right great pittie; I wote well and I am sure, if sir Tristram wist it, hee would never more come within your court againe, the which should grieve you much more then all your knights." "God defend," said king Arthur, "that I should leese sir Lamoracke or sir Tristram, for then were gone two of my chiefe knights of the round table." "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "I am sure that yee shall leese sir Lamoracke, for sir Gawaine and his brethren will slay him by one meanes or other; for they among them have concluded and sworne

to slay him, and ever they may see their time." "That shall I let,"[1] said king Arthur.

CHAP. CX.—How sir Agravaine and sir Mordred met with a knight flying, and how they both were overthrowne, and sir Dinadan.

NOW leave wee of sir Lamoracke, and speake we of sir Gawaines brethren, and speciall of sir Agravaine and sir Mordred. As they rode on their adventures, they met with a flying knight sore wounded, and they asked him what tidings. "Faire knights," said hee, "here commeth a knight after me that will slay mee." With that came sir Dinadan, riding to them by adventure, but hee would promise him no helpe, but sir Agravaine and sir Mordred promised him to rescew him. Therewith came that knight streight unto them, and anon he proffered for to just. That saw sir Mordred, and rode to him, but he strooke sir Mordred over his horse taile. That saw sir Agravaine, and streight he rode toward that knight; and right so as hee served sir Mordred, so hee served sir Agravaine, and said to them, "Sir, wit you well both that I am sir Breuse saunce Pitie that hath done this to you." And yet he rode over sir Agravaine five or six times. When sir Dinadan saw this, hee must needs just with him for shame. And so sir Dinadan and hee encountred together, that with pure strength sir Dinadan smote him over his horse taile. Then he tooke his horse and fled; for hee was on foote one of the valiantest knights in king Arthurs dayes, and a great destroyer of all good knights. Then rode sir Dinadan unto sir Mordred and unto sir Agravaine. "Sir knight," said they, "well have yee done, and well have yee revenged us, wherefore wee pray you tell us your name." "Faire knights," said he, "yee shall know that mine name is sir Dinadan." When they understood that it was sir Dinadan, they were more wrother then they were before, for they hated him out of all mea-

[1] *Let.*—Prevent; hinder.

sure because of sir Lamoracke; for sir Dinadan had such a custome that hee loved all good knights that were valiant, and hee hated all those that were destroyers of good knights, that there were none that hated sir Dinadan but those that were called murtherers. Then spake the hurt knight which sir Breuse saunce Pitie had chased, whose name was sir Dalan, and he said, "If thou be sir Dinadan, thou slewest my father." "It may well bee so," said sir Dinadan, "but then it was in my defence, and at his owne request." "By mee head," said sir Dalan, "thou shat die therefore." And therewithall he dressed his speare and his shield. And for to make short tale, sir Dinadan smote him downe from his horse that his necke was nigh broken; and in the same wise hee smote sir Mordred and sir Agravaine. And after, in the quest of the Sancgreall, cowardly and fellonously they slew sir Dinadan, the which was right great dammage, for he was a great bourder,[1] and a passing good knight. And so sir Dinadan rode to a castle that hight Beale-valet, and there he found sir Palomides, that was not yet whole of the wound that sir Lamoracke gave him. And there sir Dinadan told sir Palomides all the tidings that he heard and saw of sir Tristram, and how he was gone with king Marke, and with him hee hath all his will and desire. Therewith sir Palomides waxed wroth, for he loved La beale Isoud, and then he wist that sir Tristram injoyed her.

CHAP. CXI.—How king Arthur, with the queene and sir Launcelot, received letters out of Cornewaile, and of the answere againe thether.



OW leave wee of sir Palomides and sir Dinadan in the castle of Beale-valet, and turne wee againe unto king Arthur. There came a knight of Cornewaile, whose name was Fergus, and a

[1] *Bourder.*—It is not quite clear whether this word is used here to signify a joker, or, in in its less usual sense, a juster.

fellow of the round table, and there hee told king Arthur and sir Launcelot good tidings of sir Tristram, and there were brought goodly letters, and how he left him in the castle of Tintagill. Then came the damosell that brought goodly letters unto king Arthur and unto sir Launcelot, and there shee had passing good cheere of king Arthur and queene Guenever, and of sir Launcelot. Then they wrote goodly letters againe. But sir Launcelot bad ever sir Tristram beware of king Marke, for ever hee called him in his letters king Fox, as who saith, he faireth all with wiles and treason; whereof sir Tristram in his heart thanked sir Launcelot. Then the damosell went unto La beale Isoud, and beare her letter from the king and the queene and sir Launcelot, whereof shee was in passing great joy. "Faire damosell," said La beale Isoud, "how fareth my lord king Arthur and queene Guenever, and the noble knight sir Launcelot du Lake?" She answered and said, "Much the better that yee and sir Tristram be in joy." "God reward them," said La beale Isoud, "for sir Tristram suffereth great paine for me, and I for him." So the damosell departed, and brought letters to king Marke. And when hee had read them and understood them, hee was wroth with sir Tristram de Lyones, for hee deemed that he had sent the damosell unto king Arthur, for king Arthur and sir Launcelot in a manner threatned king Marke. And as king Marke read these letters, he deemed treason by sir Tristram. "Damosell," said king Marke, "will yee ride and beare letters from mee unto king Arthur?" "Sir," said shee, "I will bee at your commandement for to ride when yee will." "Yee say well," said king Marke. "Come againe to morrow," said the king, "and fetch your letters." Then shee departed, and told them how shee should ride againe with letters unto king Arthur. Then sir Tristram and La beale Isoud said, "Wee pray you that when yee have received your letters, that yee will come by us, that wee may see the privitie of your letters." "All

that I may doe yee wote well, madame, I must doe for sir Tristram, for I have beene long his owne maide." And so on the morrow the damosell went to king Marke to have had the letters, and to depart. "I am not advised," said king Marke, "at this time to send my letters." Then prively and secretly hee sent letters unto king Arthur, and unto the queene Guenever, and unto sir Launcelot. So the varlet departed, and found the king and queene in Wales at Carlion. And then as the king and the queene were at masse, the varlet came with the letters. And then when masse was done, the king and the queene opened the letter prively by themselves; and the beginning of the kings letter spake wondrous short unto king Arthur, and bad him entermeete[1] with himselfe and with his wife and his knights, for hee was able enough to rule and keepe his wife.

CHAP. CXII.—How sir Launcelot was wroth with the letter that hee received from king Marke, and sir Dinadan that made a laie of king Marke.

AND when king Arthur understood the letter, hee mused upon many things, and thought upon his sisters words, queene Morgan le Fay, that shee had said betweene queene Guenever and sir Launcelot du Lake; and in his mind hee studied a great while, and then hee bethought him againe how his sister was his most enemy, and that shee hated the queene and sir Launcelot, and so hee put all that out of his thought. And then king Arthur read the letter againe, and the letter clause[2] said, that king Marke tooke sir Tristram for his mortell enemy, wherefore hee put king Arthur out of doubt hee would bee revenged on sir Tristram. Then was king Arthur wroth with king Marke. And when queene Guenever had read her letter, and understood it, shee was wroth out of measure, for the letter spake shame by her and by sir Launcelot. And so privily shee sent the letter to sir

[1] *Entermeete.*—Intermeddle. [2] *Letter clause.*—Closed letter.

Launcelot, and when hee wist the entent of the letter, he was so wroth that he laid him downe upon his bed to sleepe, whereof sir Dinadan was aware, for it was his manner to bee privy with all good knights. And as sir Launcelot slept, he stale the letter out of his hand, and read it word by word; and then hee made great sorrow for anger. And so sir Launcelot awaked, and went to a window and read the letter againe, which made him angry. "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "wherefore bee yee angry? discover your heart to mee, forsoth yee wote well that I owe you good will, how bee it I am a poore knight and a servant to you and to all good knights; for though I bee not of worship my selfe, yet I love all those that bee of worship." "It is truth," said sir Launcelot, "ye be a trusty knight, and for great trust I will shew you my counsaile." And when sir Dinadan understood all, he said, "Sir, this is my counsaile. Set yee right nought by all these threatnings, for king Marke is so vilanous that by faire speach shall never no man get ought of him; but yee shall see what I shall doe; I will make a lay for him, and when it is made, I shall make an harper to sing it before him." So anon hee went and made it, and taught it an harper that hight Elyot, and when hee could[1] it, hee taught it to many harpers. And so by the will of sir Launcelot and of king Arthur, the harpers went straight unto Wales and Cornewaile, to sing the lay that sir Dinadan made by king Marke, which was the worst[2] lay that ever harper sung with harpe or with any other instrument.

CHAP. CXIII.—How sir Tristram was hurt, and of a warre made to king Marke; and of sir Tristram, how he promised to rescew him.



OW turne we againe unto sir Tristram and king Marke. As sir Tristram was at the justes and turneiment, it fortuned that he was sore wounded, both with a speare and with a sword.

[1] *Could.*—Knew; i. e. when he had committed it to memory.
[2] *Worst.*—i. e. the most ill-natured or satirical.

But yet he wanne alwaies the degree. And for to rest him, hee went to a good knight that dwelled in Cornewaile in a castle, whose name was sir Dinas the seneshall. Then by misfortune there came one of Sessoyne[1] with a great number of men of armes and an hedious hoost, and they entred nigh unto the castle of Tintagill; and their captaines name was sir Elias, a good man of armes. When king Marke understood that his enemies were entred into his land, hee made great sorrow and dole, for in no wise by his will hee would not send for sir Tristram, for he hated him deadly. So when his counsaile was come, they devised and caste many perilles of the strength of their enemies, and they concluded all at once,[2] and said unto king Marke thus: "Sir, wit yee well that yee must send for sir Tristram the good knight, or else they will never be overcome; for by sir Tristram they must be fought withall, or else wee row against the streame." "Well then," said king Marke, "I will doe by your counsaile." But yet hee was full loth thereto, but need constrained him for to send for him. Then was he sent for in all the hast that might be, that he should come to king Marke. When sir Tristram understood that the king had sent for him, he mounted upon a soft hackney[3] and rode to king Mark. When he was come, the king said thus, "Faire nephew sir Tristram, this is all; heere be come our enemies of Sessoine, that are heere nigh hand, and without any tarying they must be met with shortly, or else they will destroy this countrey." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "wit yee well that all my power is at your commandement, and wit yee well, sir, these eight dayes may I beare none armes, for my wounds bee not as yet all garnished and hole, and by that day I shall doe what I may." "Yee say well," said king Marke, "then goe you againe, and rest you and make you fresh, and I shall

[1] *Sessoyne.*—An invasion of the Saxons is intended.

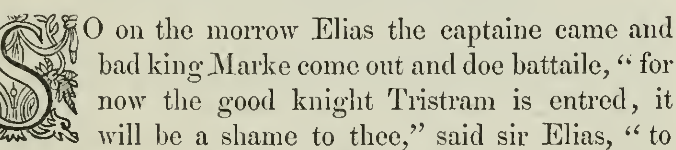
[2] *At once.*—i. e. in one opinion; unanimously. It is here a corruption of the older phrase *at ones.*

[3] *Hackney.*—*A softe ambuler,* Caxton.

goe and meete the Sessoins with all my power." So king Marke departed for to goe to Tintagill, and sir Tristram went to rest him. And the king made a great hoost, and departed them in three. The first part led sir Dinas the senshall, and sir Andret led the second part, and sir Argus led the third part, and hee was of king Markes blood. And the Sessoins had three great and mighty battailes, and many good men of armes. And so king Marke, by the advise of his knights, issued out of the castle of Tintagill upon his enemies. And the good knight sir Dinas rode out before, and slew two knights with his owne hands. And then began the battaile, and there was great breaking of speares, and smiting of good knights, and ever was sir Dinas the seneshall the best of all king Markes part. And thus the battaile endured long with great mortalitie. But at the last king Marke and sir Dinas, were they never so loth, they withdrew them to the castle of Tintagil, with great slaughter of people; and the Sessoines followed them fast that ten of them were put within the gates and foure slaine with the portcoleis. Then king Marke sent for sir Tristram by a varlet, that told him all the mortalitie. Then sir Tristram sent the varlet againe, and bad him tell king Marke that hee would come as soone as hee were hole, for no sooner could hee doe him good. Then king Marke had his answere. Therewith came sir Elias, and bad king Marke yeelde up the castle, "for yee may hold it no while." "Sir Elias," said the king, "so will I yield up the castle, if that I bee not soone resceewed." Anon king Mark sent againe for rescew unto sir Tristram. By then sir Tristram was hole; and hee had gotten him ten good knights of king Arthurs, and with them hee rode to the castle of Tintagill, and when he saw the great hoost of Sessoines hee mervailed greatly. And then sir Tristram rode by the woods and by the ditches as secretly as hee might, till he came nigh the gates. And there dressed a knight unto him, when hee saw that sir Tristram would enter; and sir Tristram smote

him downe dead, and so he served three moe. And every each of those ten knights slew a man of armes. So sir Tristram entred into the castle of Tintagill. And when king Marke wist that sir Tristram was come, hee was right glad of his comming, and so was all the fellowship, and of him they made great joye.

CHAP. CXIV.—How sir Tristram overcame the battaile, and how sir Elias desired a man to fight body for body.



SO on the morrow Elias the captaine came and bad king Marke come out and doe battaile, "for now the good knight Tristram is entred, it will be a shame to thee," said sir Elias, "to keepe thy walls." When king Marke understood him, hee was wroth, and said not one word, but went unto sir Tristram and asked him counsaile. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "will yee that I give him his answere?" "I will well," said king Marke. Then said sir Tristram unto the messenger thus: "Beare thy lord word from the king and me, that we will doe battaile with him to morrow in the plaine field." "What is your name?" said the messenger. "Wit thou well my name is sir Tristram de Liones.' Therewith the messenger departed, and told his lord sir Elias all that he had heard. "Sir," said sir Tristram to king Marke, "I pray you give me leave for to have the rule of the battaile." "I pray you take the rule," said king Marke. Then sir Tristram let devise the battailes in what manner it should bee. He let depart[1] his host in sixe parts, and ordeyned sir Dinas the seneshall to have the foreward, and other knights to rule the remnant. And the same night sir Tristram brent all the Sessoynes ships unto the cold water. Anon as sir Elias wist it, hee said it was of sir Tristrams dooing, "for he casteth that we shall never escape mothers sonne of us, therefore, faire fellowes, fight

[1] *Depart.*—Divide.

freely to morrow, and discomfort yee not, for one knight, though hee be the best knight of the world, he may not have to doe with us all." Then they ordeyned their battailes in foure parts, wonderous well apparailed and garnished with men of armes. Thus they within issued, and they without set freely upon them, and there sir Dinas did great deeds of armes. Not for then[1] sir Dinas and his fellowship were put to the worst. With that came sir Tristram, and slew two knights with one speare. Then he slew on the right hand and on the left hand, that men mervailed that ever he might doe such deeds of armes. And then he might see sometime the battaile was driven a bow draught from the castle, and sometime it was at the gates of the castle. Then came Elias the captaine rashing heere and there, and hit king Marke so sore upon the helme that hee made him to avoide the sadle. And then sir Dinas gate king Marke up againe on horsbacke. Therewith came sir Tristram like a lion, and there he met sir Elias the captaine, and smote him so sore upon the helme that he avoided his sadle. And they fought till it was night, and for great slaughter and for wounded people every partie drew to their rest. And when king Marke was come within the castle of Tintagill, hee lacked of his knights an hundred; and they of without two hundred. And they serched the wounded men on both parties; and then they went to counsaile, and wit ye well either partie were lothe to fight any more, so that either partie might escape with their worship. When sir Elias the captaine understood the death of his men, hee made great dole; and when hee wist that they were loth to goe unto battaile againe, then was he wroth out of measure. Then this sir Elias the captaine sent word unto king Marke in great despite and anger, whether he would find a knight that would fight for him body for body, and if that he might sley king Marks knight, he to have the truage of Cornewaile yearely; "and if that his

[1] *Not for then.*—i. e. nevertheless.

knight sley mine, I fully release my claime for ever hereafter." And then the messenger departed unto king Marke, and told him how that his lord and captaine sir Elias had sent him word for to find a knight to do battaile with him body for body. When king Marke understood the messenger, he bad him abide, and he should have his answere. Then called he al his baronage together to wit what was best to doe. They said all at once, "To fight in a field wee have no lust, for had not beene sir Tristrams prowesse, it had beene likely that we never should have escaped; and therfore, sir, as we deeme, it were well done to find a knight that would do battaile with him, for he knightly profereth."

CHAP. CXV.—How sir Elias and sir Tristram fought together for the truage of Cornewaile, and how sir Tristram slew sir Elias in the field.

NOTWITHSTANDING[1] all this said, no knight could be found that would fight with him. "Sir king," said they all, "heere is no knight that dare fight with sir Elias." "Alas!" said king Marke, "then am I utterly shamed and utterly destroyed, without that my nephew sir Tristram will take the battaile upon him." "Wit ye well," said they all, "he had yesterday overmuch in hand, and he is weary for travaile, and sore wounded." "Where is hee?" said king Marke. "Sir," said they, "hee is in his bed for to rest him." "Alas!" said king Marke, "but if I have the succour of my nephew, sir Tristram, I am utterly destroyed for ever." Therewith one went to sir Tristram and told him, where hee lay, what king Marke had said; and therewith sir Tristram arose lightly, and put upon him a long gowne, and came before king Marke and all the lords. And when hee saw them all so dismaied, hee asked king Marke and the lords

[1] *Notwithstanding.*—Caxton has the equivalent *not for thanne.* See the note on the previous page.

what tidings was with them. "Never worse," said king Marke. And therewith he told him all, how hee had word of sir Elias to find a knight to fight for the truage of Cornewaile, "and none can I find. And as for you," said king Marke and all the lords, "we may not demand no more of you for shame; for through your hardinesse yesterday, yee have saved all our lives." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "now I understand yee would have my succour, reason would that I should doe all that lieth in my power to doe, saving my worship and my life, how be it I am very sore bruised and hurt. And sith sir Elias profereth so largely, I shall fight with him, or else I shall be slaine in the plaine field, or else I shall deliver Cornewaile from the old truage. And therefore lightly call to mee his messenger, and he shall bee answered. For as yet my wounds be greene, and they will be more sorer seaven dayes hereafter then they be now, and therefore hee shall have his answere, that I will doe battaile with him to morrow." Then the messenger that was departed[1] was brought before king Marke. "Hearken unto my words, fellow," said sir Tristram; "goe fast unto thy lord, and bid him to make true assurance on his part for the truage, as the king here shall make upon his part. And that tell unto thy lord sir Elias, that I, sir Tristram, king Arthurs knight and knight of the round table, will as to morrow meete with thy lord on horsebacke for to doe battaile as long as my horse may endure, and after that to doe battaile with him on foote to the uttermost." Then the messenger beheld sir Tristram from the top to the toe, and therewith hee departed and came unto his lord, and told how hee was answered of sir Tristram. And therewith was made hostage on both parties, and made it as sure as it might bee, that whether part had the victory, so to the end. And then were both the hoosts assembled on both parties of the field without the castle of Tintagill.

[1] *Then the messenger that was departed.—Thenne was the messager departed brought before kynge Marke,* Caxton.

And there was none armed but sir Tristram and sir Elias. So when the appointment was made, they departed that one from that other, and they came together with all the might that their horses might runne, and either knight smote other so hard, that both horses and knights went unto the earth. Not for then they both lightly arose up, and dressed their shields on their shoulders, with naked swords in their hands, and they dashed together like as there had beene a flaming fire about them. Thus they traced and traversed, and hewed on helmes and hawberks, and cut away many peeces and cantels of their shields, and either wounded other passingly sore, so that the hote blood fell fresh upon the earth. And by then they had foughten the mountenance of an houre, sir Tristram waxed faint and forbled,[1] and gave sore abacke. That saw sir Elias, and followed freshly[2] upon him, and wounded him in many places. And ever sir Tristram traced and traversed, and went froward him heere and there, and covered him with his shield as hee might all weakely, that all men said he was overcome ; for sir Elias had given him twenty strooks against one. Then was there great laughing on the Sessoins part, and great dole on king Markes part. "Alas!" said king Marke, "wee are all shamed and destroied for ever; for sir Tristram was never so matched, but if it were sir Lancelot." Thus as then stood and beheld both parts, that one part laughing, and that other part weeping, sir Tristram remembred him of his lady La beale Isoud that looked upon him, and how he was likely never to come in her presence. Then hee pulled up his shield which before did hang full low; and then hee dressed up his shield unto sir Elias, and gave him many sad strookes, twentie against on, and all to-brake his shield and his hawberke, that the hote blood ranne downe to the earth. And then began king Marke to laugh and all Cornish men,

[1] *Forbled.*—Weak from bleeding. The edition of 1634 has printed, erroneously, *for blood.*

[2] *Freshly.*—*Fyersly*, Caxton.

and that other part began to weepe. And ever sir Tristram said to sir Elias, "Yeeld thee." Then when sir Tristram saw him so staggering on the ground, hee said, "Sir Elias, I am right sorie for thee, for thou art a passing good knight as ever I met withall, except sir Launcelot." Therewithall sir Elias fell to the earth there, and he died. "What shall I doe," said sir Tristram to king Marke, "for this battaile is at an end?" Then they of sir Elias part departed; and king Marke tooke of them many prisoners for to redresse the harmes and dammages that hee had of them, and the remnant he sent into their countrey to borrow out[1] their fellowes. Then was sir Tristram searched and well healed; yet for all this, king Marke would faine have slaine sir Tristram. But for all that ever sir Tristram saw or heard by king Marke, yet would hee never beware of his treason, but ever would hee be there as La beale Isoud was.

CHAP. CXVI.—How at a great feast king Marke made, an harper came and sung the lay that Dinadan had made.

NOW let us overpasse this matter, and speake wee of the harper that sir Launcelot and sir Dinadan had sent into Cornewaile with the lay, and the great feast that king Marke made for joy of the victorie which hee had because the Sessoines were so put out of his countrey. Then came Eliot the harper with the lay that sir Dinadan had made, and secretly brought it unto sir Tristram de Liones, and told him of the lay that sir Dinadan had made by king Marke. And when sir Tristram heard it, hee said, "O Lord Jesu, that sir Dinadan can make wonderous well good and ill, there as it shall bee!" "Sir," said Eliot, "dare I sing this song before king Marke?" "Yee, upon my perill," said sir Tristram, "for I shall be thy warrant." Then as king Marke was at meate, Eliot the harper came in. And because hee

[1] *To borrow out.*—i. e. to ransom.

was a curious harper, men heard him sing the same lay that sir Dinadan had made, the which spake the most vilanie by king Marke of his treason that ever man heard. When the harper had sung his song to the end, king Marke was wonderous wroth with him, and said, "Thou harper, how durst thou be so bold on thy head to sing this song before me?" "Sir," said Eliot, "wit you well I am a minstrell, and I must doe as I am commanded of these lords that I beare the armes of; and, sir king, wit you well that sir Dinadan, a knight of the round table, made this song, and he made me to sing it before you." "Thou saiest well," said king Marke, "I charge thee that thou hie thee fast out of my sight." So the harper departed, and went unto sir Tristram, and told him how he had sped; and then sir Tristram let make letters goodly as hee could devise unto sir Launcelot and unto sir Dinadan, and so he let conduct Eliot the harper out of the countrey. But for to say that king Marke was wonderous wroth, hee was; for hee deemed that the lay that was sung before him was made and ordained by sir Tristrams consaile, wherefore he thought to slay him and all his well willers in that countrey.

CHAP. CXVII.—How king Marke slew by treason his brother Boudwine for good service that he had done to him.

NOW turne wee to another matter, which befell betweene king Marke and his brother, that was called the good prince sir Boudwine, which all the people of the countrey loved passing wel. So it befel upon a time that the miscreants [1] Sarasins landed in the country of Cornwaile soone after that the Sessoines were gone; and then the good prince sir Boudwine, at the landing of them, he raised the countrey prively and hastily, and or it was day hee let put wild fire in three of his owne

[1] *Miscreants.*—Here, and in one instance in the next page, the edit. of 1634 has *marchants.*

ships, and suddainely hee pulled up the sailes, and with the wind hee made those ships to bee driven among the navy of the Sarasins. And to make short the tale, those ships set on fire all the other ships that none were saved. And at the point of the day the good prince sir Boudwine with all his fellowship set upon the miscreants with shouts and cries, and slew to the number of fortie thousand, and left none alive. And when king Marke wist this, hee was wonderous wroth that his brother should winne such worship; and because that this prince was better beloved then he in all that countrey, and also sir Boudwine loved well sir Tristram, therefore hee thought to slay him, and thus hastily, as a man being out of his wit and lacking naturall reason, sent for the noble prince sir Boudwine and Anglides his wife, and commanded them to bring their yong sonne with them, that hee might see him. And all this he did to the intent to slay the child as well as the father, for hee was the falsest traytour that ever was borne. Alas! for his goodnesse and for his good deeds, this gentle prince sir Boudwine was slaine. So when he came with his wife Anglides, the king made them faire semblance till they had dined; and when they had dined, king Marke sent for his brother, and said to him, "Brother, how speed you when the miscreants arrived by you? mee seemeth it had beene your part to have sent mee word, that I might have beene at that journey; for it had beene reason that I might have had the honour, and not you." "Sir," said the prince sir Boudwine, "it was so that if I had taried till I had sent for you, the miscreants had destroyed my countrey." "Thou liest, false traytour," said king Marke, "for thou art ever about to win worship from me, and put me to dishonour, and thou cherishest that I hate." And therewith he strooke him to the heart with a dagger, and he never after spake word. Then the lady Anglides his wife made great dole and swoned, for she saw her lord slaine afor her face. Then was there no more to do but that prince

Boudwine was despoiled[1] and brought to buriels, but Anglides prively gat her husbands doblet and his shirt, and that shee kept secretly. Then was there much sorrow and crying, and great dole made sir Tristram, sir Dinas, and sir Fergus, and so did all the knights that were there, for that prince was passingly wel beloved. So La beale Isoud sent to Anglides, prince Boudwins wife, and bad her avoide lightly, or else her young son, Alisaunder Lorfelin, should be slaine. When shee heard this, shee tooke her horse and her young child Alisaunder, and rode her way with such poore men as durst ride with her.

CHAP. CXVIII.—How Anglides, Boudwins wife, escaped with her young sonne, Alesaunder Lorfelin, and came to the castle of Aroundell.

NOTWITHSTANDING when king Marke had done this deede, yet he bethought him to doe more vengeance, and with his sword in his hand hee sought from chamber to chamber to find Anglides and her young sonne. And when shee was mist, he called a good knight that hight sir Sadocke, and charged him, upon paine of death, to fetch Anglides againe and her young sonne. So sir Sadocke departed, and rode after Anglides, and within ten mile he overtooke her, and bad her turne againe and ride with him unto king Marke. "Alas, faire knight," said shee, "what shall yee winne by my sonnes death, or by mine? I have had overmuch harme and too great a losse." "Madame," said sir Sadocke, "of your losse is dole and pitie; but, madame," said sir Sadocke, "would you depart out of this countrey with your son Alisaunder, and keepe him till hee bee of age, that hee may revenge his fathers death, then would I suffer you to depart from mee, so ye promise me for to revenge the death of prince Boudwin." "A! gentle knight, Jesu thanke thee, and if my sonne Alisaunder live to be a good

[1] *Despoiled.*—Stripped of his clothing.

knight, he shall have his fathers doublet and his shirt with the bloody markes; and I shall give him such a charge that hee shall remember it while he liveth." And therewith sir Sadocke departed from her, and either beetooke other to God. And when sir Sadoke came to king Marke, hee told him faithfully that he had drowned young Alisaunder her sonne; and thereof king Marke was full glad. Now turne we unto Anglides, which rode both night and day by adventure out of Cornewaile, and in a little and in few places shee rested her selfe, but ever shee drew southward unto the sea side, till by fortune shee came to a castle that was called Magounce,[1] and now it is called Arundell, in Southsex. And the constable of the castle welcomed her, and said shee was welcome to her owne castle. And there was Anglides worshipfully received, for the constables wife was nigh cosin to her. And the constables name was Bellander,[2] and the counstable told dame Anglides that the same castle was hers by right enheritance. Then dame Anglides endured yeares and winters till that her sonne Alisaunder was big and strong. There was none so mighty[3] in all that countrey, neither there was none that might doe no manner of mastry afore him.

CHAP. CXIX.—How Anglides gave the bloody doublet unto Alisaunder her sonne the same day that hee was made knight, and the charge withall.



HEN upon a day sir Bellander the constable came unto dame Anglides and said, "Madame, it were time that my lord Alisaunder were made a knight, for he is a passing strong young man."

[1] *Magounce.—Magouns*, Caxton. I cannot guess upon what grounds the compiler of this romance imagined this to be the ancient name of Arundel. The site of Arundel may have been occupied by the Romans, but no place named Maguntium is known to have existed in this island.

[2] *Bellander.—Belangere*, Caxton.

[3] *Mighty.—Soo wyght*, Caxton.

"Sir," said Anglides, "I would hee were made knight; but then I must give him the most charge that ever sinfull mother gave to her child." "Doe as yee list," said sir Bellander, "and I shall give him warning that hee shall bee made knight; now it will be well done that hee may bee made knight at our Lady-day in Lent." "I am content that it bee so," said dame Anglides, "and I will pray you for to make ready therefore." So the counstable came unto Alisaunder, and told him that he should at our Lady-day in Lent bee made knight." "God be thanked!" said Alisaunder, "these are the best tidings that ever were told to mee." Then the constable, sir Bellander, ordeined twentie of the greatest gentlemens sonnes and the best borne men of the countrey, that should all be made knights that same day that Alisaunder was made knight. So on the same day that Alisaunder and his twentie fellowes were made knights, at the offering of the masse, there came dame Anglides unto her sonne, and said unto him these words: "O, faire sonne, I charge thee upon my blessing, and upon the high order of knighthood that thou takest here this day, that thou understand what I shall say and charge thee withall." Therewithall shee pulled out a bloody doublet and a bloody shirt, that were bebled with old blood. And when sir Alisaunder saw this, hee start backe and wexed pale, and said, "Faire mother, what may this meane?" "I shall tell thee, faire sonne," said shee, "this was thine owne fathers doublet and shirt that hee weare upon him that same day that he was slaine." And there shee told him why and wherefore, and how that "for his goodnesse king Marke slew him with his dagger before my face in my presence, and therefore this shall bee your charge, the which I shall give to you now."

CHAP. CXX.—How it was told king Marke of sir Alisaunder, and how hee would have slaine sir Sadoke for saving of his life.

OW I require thee and charge thee upon my blessing, and upon the high order of knighthood, that thou be revenged on king Marke for the death of thy father." And therewith she swoned. Then sir Alisaunder lept unto his mother, and tooke her up in his armes, and said, " Faire mother, yee have given mee a great charge, and heere I promise you that I shall bee avenged upon king Marke when I may, and that I promise unto God and unto you." So this feast was ended. And the constable, by the advise of Anglides, let purvey that sir Alisaunder was well horsed and well armed. Then he justed with his twentie fellowes that were made knights with him; but for to make short tale, he overthrew all those twentie knights, so that none of them might withstand him a buffet. Then one of those knights departed for to goe to king Marke, and told him all how sir Alisaunder was made knight, and all the charge that his mother gave him, as ye have hard before. " Alas, false traitour!" said king Marke, " I weend that yong traitour had beene dead; alas! whom may I trust?" And therewithall king Marke tooke a sword in his hand, and sought sir Sadoke from chamber to chamber to slay him. When sir Sadoke saw king Marke come with his sword drawne in his hand, hee said thus: " Beware, king Marke, thou come not neere me, for wit thou well that I saved Alisaunder his life, of which I will never repent mee, for thou falsly and cowardly slewest his father Boudwine, and traitoursly, for his good deeds; wherefore I pray God send sir Alisaunder might and strength to bee revenged upon thee: and now beware, king Marke, of young sir Alisaunder, for hee is made a knight." " Alas," said king Marke, " that ever I should here a traitour say so before

me." And therewith foure of king Markes knights drew their swords to slay sir Sadocke; but anon sir Sadocke slew them all in king Markes presence. And so sir Sadocke passed forth into his chamber, and tooke his horse and his harneis, and rode his way a good pace; for there was neither sir Tristram, nor yet sir Dinas the seneshall, nor sir Fergus, that would sir Sadocke any evill will. Then was king Marke wroth, and thought for to destroy sir Alisaunder, and also sir Sadocke, that had saved his life; for king Marke dread and hated sir Alisaunder most of any man that lived. When sir Tristram understood that sir Alisaunder was made knight, anon forthwith he sent him a letter, praying him and charging him that hee would draw him unto the court of the noble king Arthur, and that he would put him in the governance of sir Launcelot. And so this letter was sent to sir Alisaunder from his cosin sir Tristram; and at that time hee thought to doe after his commandement and counsaile. Then king Marke called the knight which had brought him the tidings from sir Alisaunder, and commanded him for to abide still in that countrey. "Sir," said the knight, "needs must I doe so, for in mine owne countrey I dare not come." "No force,"[1] said king Marke, "I shall give thee here double as much land as thou haddest in thine owne countrey." But within short space sir Sadocke met with that false knight and slew him; wherewith king Marke was wonderous wroth out of measure. Then hee sent unto queene Morgan le Fay, and unto the queene of Northgalis, praying them in letters that they two sorceresses would set all the countrey in a fire, with ladies that were enchanteresses, and by such as were dangerous knights, as Malgrin, and Breuse saunce Pity, that by no meanes sir Alisaunder Lorfelin should escape them; but that either he should be taken or slaine. This ordinance made king Marke to destroy the young knight sir Alisaunder.

[1] *No force.*—No matter; never mind.

CHAP. CXXI.—How sir Alisaunder wanne the prise at a turnament, and of Morgan le Fay, and how hee fought with sir Malgrin, and slew him.

NOW turne wee againe unto sir Alisaunder, that at his departing his mother tooke him his fathers bloody shirt, and that alwayes hee beare with him till his dying day, in token for to thinke upon his fathers death. So sir Alisaunder was purposed for to ride to London (by the counsaile of sir Tristram) unto sir Launcelot. And by fortune hee went by the sea side, and rode wrong. And there hee wanne at a turnement the degree, which turnament king Carados made; and there hee smote downe king Carados and twentie of his knights, and also sir Safere a good knight, which was sir Palomides brother the good knight. All this saw a damosel, and said shee saw the best knight just that ever she saw. And ever as he smote downe knights, he made them for to sweare to weare no harneis in a twelve months and a day. "This is well said," quoth Morgan le Fay, "this is the knight that I would faine see." And so shee tooke her palfray, and rode a great while, and shee rested her in her pavilion. So there came foure knights, and two were armed and two were unarmed, and they told Morgan le Fay their names. The first was sir Elias de Gomeret, the second was sir Car de Gomeret; those were armed. And the other twaine were of Camilard, cosins unto queene Guenever, and the one hight sir Guy, and that other hight sir Garaunt, and those were unarmed. There these foure knights told queene Morgan le Fay how a young knight had smitten them downe by a castle; "for the damosell of the castle said that he was but late made knight and young; but as we suppose, but if it were sir Tristram, or sir Launcelot, or sir Lamoracke the good knight, there is none that might sit him a buffet with a speare." "Well,"

said queene Morgan le Fay, "I shall meete with that knight or it be long time, and hee dwell in that countrey."

So turne we unto the damosell of the castle, that when sir Alisaunder Lorfelin had forjusted the foure knights, shee called him unto her, and said, "Sir knight, wilt thou for my sake just and fight with a knight of this countrey, the which is and hath beene long time an evill neighbour unto me, and his name is called sir Malgrin; and he will not suffer me to be married in no manner of wise for all that I can doe, or any knight for my sake." "Damosell," said sir Alisaunder, "and hee come while I am here, I will fight with him, and my poore body I will jeopard for your sake." Then forthwith she sent for him, for he was at her command. And when either had a sight of other, they made them ready for to just, and they came together full egerly, and Malgrin bruised his speare upon sir Alisaunder, and sir Alisaunder smote him againe so hard that hee beare him quite from his saddle to the earth. But this sir Malgrin arose lightly, and dressed his shield and drew his sword, and bad him alight, saying, "Though thou have the better on mee on horsebacke, yet shalt thou finde that I shall endure like a knight on foote." "It is well said," quoth sir Alisaunder. And so lightly he avoided his horse, and betooke him to his varlet. And then they rashed together like two wild boores, and smote upon their helmes and shields long time by the space of three houres, that never man could say which was the better knight. And in the meane while came queene Morgan le Fay to the damosell of the castle, and they beheld the battaile. But this sir Malgrin was an old roted[1] knight, and hee was called one of the dangerous knights of the world to doe battaile on foote, but on horse there were found many better. And ever this sir Malgrin

[1] *Roted.*—This is copied exactly from Caxton's text into that of 1634, but the meaning of the word is not very certain. The modern reprint turns it into *rotted*, as though it meant rotten, yet this hardly agrees with the context.

awaited to slay sir Alisaunder. And so hee wounded him wonderous sore, that it was mervaile that ever he might stand on his feete, for hee had bled so much blood; for sir Alisaunder fought wildly and not wittily. And that other was a fellonious knight, and awaited him and smote him sore. And sometime they rashed together with their shields like two rammes or boores, and fell both downe groveling to the earth. "Now, knight," said sir Malgrin, "hold thy hand a while, and tell mee what thou art?" "I will not," said sir Alisaunder, "but if me list; but tell mee thy name, and why thou keepest this countrey, or else thou shalt die of my hands." "Wit thou well," said Malgrin, "that for the maidens love of this castle I have slaine ten knights by mishap, and by outrage and pride of my selfe I have slaine ten other knights." "So God me helpe," said sir Alisaunder, "this is the foulest confession that ever I heard knight make, nor never heard I speake of other men of such a shamefull confession, wherefore it were great pitty and great shame to me that I should let thee live any longer; therefore keepe thee as well as thou maiest, for I promise thee faithfully as I am a true knight either thou shalt slay me or else I shall slay thee." Then againe they lashed together fiercely, and at the laste sir Alisaunder smote sir Malgrin to the earth, and then he rashed off his helme and lightly smote off his head. And when he had thus done, and ended this battaile, anon he called unto him his varlet, the which brought him his horse. And then weening to be strong enough he would have mounted, but he fell downe flat to the earth for feeblenesse. The damosell of the castle seeing that, laid sir Alisaunder in a horse litter, and led him to the castle, for hee had neither force nor might to stand upon the ground; for he had sixteene great wounds, and in especiall one of them was like to be his death.

CHAP. CXXII.—How queene Morgan le Fay had sir Alisaunder in her castle, and how shee healed his wounds.

THEN queene Morgan le Fay searched his wounds, and gave him such an oyntment that he should have died. And in the morning after, when shee came to him, hee complained him sore, and then shee put other oyntments upon him, and then was he out of his paine. Then came the damosell of the castle and said unto Morgan le Fay, "I pray you, helpe me that this knight might wed mee; for hee hath wonne mee with his hands." "Yee shall see," said Morgan le Fay, "what I shall say." Then Morgan le Fay went to sir Alisaunder, and bad him in any wise that he should refuse this damosell "if shee desire to wed you, for shee is not for you." So the damosell came and desired of him marriage. "Damosell," said sir Alisaunder, "I thanke you, but as yet I cast me not to marriage in this countrey." "Sir," said she, "sithen yee will not marry mee, I pray you, in so much as yee have wonne me, that ye will give me unto a knight of this countrey that hath beene long my friend, and he hath loved me many yeares." "With all my heart," said sir Alisaunder, "I will assent therto." Then was the knight sent for, his name was sir Gerine le Grose; and anon he made them to handfast[1] and to wed together. Then came queene Morgan le Fay to Alisaunder, and bad him arise, and put him in a horse litter, and gave him such a drinke that in three daies and three nights he wakned not but slept. And so shee brought him unto her owne castle, which at that time was called La beale Regard. Then queene Morgan le Fay came to sir Alisaunder and asked him if he would faine be hole. "Who would be sicke," said sir Alisaunder, "and he might bee hole?" "Well," said queene Morgan le Fay, "then shall yee promise me by your knighthood, that this day twelve moneths and a day ye shall

[1] *To handfast.*—To betroth.

not passe the compasse of this castle, and without doubt yee shall lightly be whole." "I assent," said sir Alisaunder; and there hee made her a promise. Then was hee soone whole. And when sir Alisaunder was whole, then hee repented him of his oath, because hee might not bee revenged of king Marke. Right so there came a damosell that was cosin unto the earle of Pase, and shee was cosin to queene Morgan le Fay, and by right that castle of La beale Regard should have beene hers by true inheritance. So this damosell entred into this castle where sir Alisaunder lay, and there shee found him upon his bed passing heavy and all sad.

CHAP. CXXIII.—How sir Alisaunder was delivered from queene Morgan le Fay by the meanes of a damosell.

"SIR knight," said the damosell, "if yee would be merry, I could tell you good tidings." "Well were me," said sir Alisaunder, "and I might heare of good tidings, for I stand as a prisoner by my promise." "Sir," said she, "wit you wel that ye be a prisoner and worse then ye wenne; for my lady my cosin Morgan le Fay keepeth you here for none other intent but for to doe her pleasure with you, when it liketh her." "O Jesu, defend me," said sir Alisaunder, "from such pleasure, for I had lever cut away my hangers, rather then I would doe her such a pleasure." "So God helpe mee," said the damosell, "and yee would love me and be ruled by me, I shall make your deliverance with your worship." "Tell me," said sir Alisaunder, "by what meanes, and yee shall have my love." "Faire knight," said shee, "this castle of right ought for to be mine, and I have an unkle that is a mightie earle, for hee is earle of Pase, and of all folkes he hateth most Morgan le Fay, and I shall send unto him, and pray him that for my sake hee will destroy this castle for the evill customes that bee used therin, and

then will hee come and set wilde fire[1] on every part of the castle, and I shall get you out at a prevy posterne, and there yee shall have your horse and your harneys." "Yee say well, damosell," said sir Alisaunder. And then shee said, "Ye may keepe the roome of this castle these twelve moneths and a day, then breake yee not your oath." "Truely, faire damosell," said sir Alisaunder, "ye say soth." And then he kissed her, and did to her pleasaunce, as it pleased them both, at times and leisure. So anon shee sent to her unkle, and bad him come and destroy that castle, for he would have destroyed that castle long before that time, had not the damosell beene. When the earle understood her letters, hee sent her word againe, that upon such a day he would come and destroie that castle. So when the day came, she shewed sir Alisaunder a posterne, wherethrough hee should flee into a garden, and there he should finde his armour and his horse. When the day came that was set, thither came the earle of Pase with foure hundred knights, and set on fire all the parties of the castle, that or they ceased they left not a stone standing. And all this while that the fire was in the castle, hee abode still in the garden; and when the fire was done, hee let make a crie that he would keepe that peece of earth, there as the castle of La beale Regard was, twelve moneths and a day from all manner knights that would come. So it hapned that ther was a duke that hight Anserous, and he was of the kinne of sir Launcelot, and this knight was a great pilgrim, for every thirde yeare he would be at Jerusalem. And because he used al his life for to goe on pilgrimage, men called him duke Anserus the pilgrim. And this duke had a daughter that hight Alis, which was a passing faire woman, and because of her father she was called Alis la beale Pilgrim. And anon as

[1] *Wilde fire.*—What was called more technically Greek fire, a combustible substance which could not be easily extinguished. Cotgrave has, "*Feu Gregeois*—Wild-fire, or the best kind thereof; such as will burne within the water, &c."

shee hard of this crie, she went to king Arthurs court, and there said openly in hearing of many knights, that "what knight that may overcome the knight that keepeth the peece of earth, shall have me and all my lands." When the knights of the round table heard her say thus, many were glad, for she was passing faire, and of great lands. Right so she let crie in castels and townes as fast upon her side, as sir Alisaunder did upon his side. Then she ordeined her pavilion streight by the peece of earth that sir Alisaunder kept. So she was not so soone there but there came a knight of king Arthurs court, that hight Sagramore le Desirous, and hee profered to just with sir Alisaunder, and they encountred, and sir Sagramore le Desirous bruised his speare upon sir Alisaunder, but sir Alisaunder smote him so hard that he avoided his sadle. And when La beale Alis saw him just so well, shee thought him a passing goodly knight on horsebacke. And then shee lept out of her pavilion, and tooke sir Alisaunder by the bridle, and thus shee said, "Faire knight, I require thee of thy knighthood, shew me thy visage." "I dare right well shew my visage," said sir Alisaunder, and then hee put of his helme. And when she saw his visage, then she said, "Oh, sweete Jesu! thee I must love, and non other." "Then shew mee your visage," said hee.

CHAP. CXXIV.—How sir Alisaunder met with Alis la beale Pilgrim, and how hee justed with two knights, and after of him and of sir Mordred.

THEN shee unwimpled her visage, and when sir Alisaunder saw her, hee said, "Here have I found my love and my lady. Truly, faire lady," said hee, "I promise you to bee your knight, and none other that beareth life." "Now, gentle knight," said she, "tell mee your name." "Faire lady," said hee, "my name is sir Alisaunder Lorfelin. Now, faire

damosell," said hee, "tell mee your name." "My name is," said shee, "Alis la beale Pilgrim. And when wee bee more at our hearts ease, both yee and I shall tell each other of what blood we bee come." So there was great love betweene them. And as they thus talked together, there came a knight that hight sir Harsouse le Berbuse, and he asked part of sir Alisaunders speares. Then sir Alisaunder encountred with him, and at the first strooke sir Alisaunder smote him over his horse croupe. And then there came another knight that hight sir Hewgon, and there sir Alisaunder smote him downe as hee did the other. Then sir Hewgon proffered to doe battaile on foote; and sir Alisaunder overcame him with three strookes, and there would have slaine him, had he not yeelded him. So then sir Alisaunder made both those knights to sweare to weare none armour in a twelve moneths and a day. Then sir Alisaunder alighted downe from his horse, and went for to rest him. Then the damosell that had holpen sir Alisaunder out of the castle, in her play told dame Alis altogether, how he was a prisoner of the castle of La beale Regard, and there shee told how she gate him out of prison. "Sir," said Alis la beale Pilgrim, "mee seemeth yee are much beholding unto this damosell." "That is truth," said sir Alisaunder; and there La beale Alis told him of what blood shee was come. "Sir, wit ye well," said shee, "that I am of the blood of king Ban, that was father unto that noble knight sir Launcelot." "Truely, faire lady," said sir Alisaunder, "my mother told mee that my father was brother to a king, and I am nigh cosin to sir Tristram." This while came there three knights, that one hight Vains, and that other hight Harvis de les Marches, and the third hight Perin de la Mountaine. And with one speare sir Alisaunder smote them downe all three, and gave them such fals that they had no lust to fight on foote; so he made them to sweare to were no armoure in twelve moneths. So, when they were departed, sir Alisaunder beheld his lady Alis

on horsebacke as shee stood in her pavilion, and then he was so enamoured upon her that hee wist not whether he was on horsebacke or on foote. Right so came the false knight sir Mordred, and saw that sir Alisaunder was assotted on his lady; and therewithall tooke his horse by the bridle and led him here and there, and had thought to have led him out of that place to have shamed him. When the damosell that had holpen him out of the castle saw how shamefully he was led, anon shee let arme her, and set a shield on her shoulder, and forthwith she mounted upon his horse, and gate a naked sword in her hand, and she thrust unto sir Alisaunder with all her might, and shee gave him such a buffet that he thought the fire flew out of his eyes. And when sir Alisaunder felt that strooke, hee looked about him, and drew out his sword; and when hee saw that shee fled, and sir Mordred also, into the forrest, and the damosell fled into her pavilion, so when sir Alisaunder understood himselfe how the false knight would have shamed him, had not the damosell beene, then was he passing wroth with himselfe that sir Mordred had so escaped his hands. But then sir Alisaunder and dame Alis had good game at the damosell, how sadly shee hit him upon the helme. Then sir Alisaunder justed thus day by day, and on foote hee did many battailes with many knights of king Arthurs court, and with many knights strangers. Therefore to tell all the battailes that he did, it were overmuch to rehearse them all, for every day within those twelve moneths he had to doe with one knight or other, and some day hee had to doe with three or foure, and there was never knight that put him to the worse. And at the twelve months end he departed with his lady Alis la beale Pilgrim. And the damosell would never goe from him. And so they went into their countrey of Benoy, and lived there in great joy.

CHAP. CXXV.—How sir Galahalt the haut prince did doe cry a justs in Surluse, and queene Guenevers knights should just against all them that would come.

BUT king Marke would not stint till that he had slaine him by treason. And by Alis he gate a child which hight Bellengerus le Beuse, and by fortune he came to the court of king Arthur, and proved a passing good knight; and he revenged his fathers death. For the false king Marke slew both sir Tristram and sir Alisaunder Lorfelin falsly and feloniously. And it happined so that sir Alisaunder had never grace nor fortune for to come unto king Arthurs court; for if he had come unto sir Launcelot, all knights said that knew him that hee was one of the strongest knights that was in king Arthurs dayes, and great sorrow was made for him.

So let wee of him passe, and turne wee unto another tale. So it befell that sir Galahalt the haute prince was lord of the countrey of Surluse, wherefore came many good knights. And this noble prince was a passing good man of armes, and ever hee held a noble fellowship together; and then he came unto king Arthurs court, and told him all his intent, how this was his will, how hee would let doe crie a justs in the countrey of Surluse, the which countrey was within the lands of king Arthur, and there hee asked leave for to let cry a justs. "I will well give you leave," said king Arthur; "but wit you well that I may not bee there." "Sir," said queene Guenever, "pleaseth it you of your goodnesse to give me licence for to bee at that justs?" "With a right good will," said king Arthur, "so that sir Galahalt the haute prince take you unto his governance." "Sir," said sir Galahalt, "I will as you will." "Sir, then," said queene Guenever, "I will take such knights with mee as pleaseth mee best." "Doe as yee list," said king Arthur. So anon the queene commanded sir Launcelot for to make him ready with such knights as he thought

best. So in every good towne and castle of this land was made a cry, that in the countrey of Surluse sir Galahalt the haute prince should make justs that should last eight dayes, and how the haute prince, with the helpe of queene Guenevers knights, should just against all manner of men that would come. When the crie was knowne, kings, princes, dukes, and earles, barons, and many noble knights, made them ready to bee at that justs. And at the first day of justing there came in sir Dinadan disguised, and did many great deeds of armes.

CHAP. CXXVI.—How that sir Launcelot fought in the turnament, and how sir Palomides did there deeds of armes for a damosell.



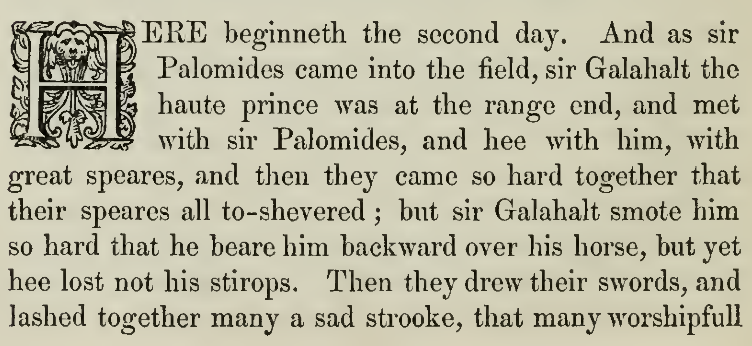
HEN, at the request of queene Guenever and king Bagdemagus, sir Launcelot came into the range, but hee was all disguised, and that was the cause that few folke knew him. And there met hee with sir Ector de Maris his owne brother, and either brake their speares upon other to their hands, and then either of them gate another great speare, and then sir Launcelot smote downe sir Ector de Maris his owne brother. That saw sir Bleoberis, and hee smote sir Launcelot such a buffet upon the helme, that hee wist not well where hee was. Then sir Launcelot was wroth, and smote sir Bleoberis so sore upon the helme that his head bowed downe backward, and hee smote eft another buffet that hee avoided his saddle. And so he rode by and thrust forth to the thickest. When the king of Northgalis saw sir Ector and sir Bleoberis lye on the ground, then hee was wounderous wroth, for they came on his part against them of Surluse. So the king of Northgalis ranne to sir Launcelot, and brake a speare upon him all in peeces. Therewith sir Launcelot overtooke the king of Northgalis, and smote him such a buffet on the helme with his sword that he made him to avoid his horse, and anon the king was horsed againe. So

both king Bagdemagus and the king of Northgalis parties hurled together. And then began a strong meddle,[1] but they of Northgalis were farre bigger.[2] When sir Launcelot saw his part goe to the worst, hee throng into the thickest presse with a sword in his hand, and there hee smote downe on the right hand and on the left hand, and pulled downe knights, and rased off their helmes, that all men had wonder that ever one knight should doe such deeds of armes. And when sir Meliagaunt, that was sonne unto king Bagdemagus, saw how sir Launcelot fared, he mervailed greatly; and when he understood that it was hee, hee wist well that hee was disguised for his sake. Then this sir Meliagaunt prayed a knight to slay sir Launcelots horse, either with a sword or with a speare. At that same time king Bagdemagus his father met with a knight that hight Sauseise, a good knight, unto whom he said, "Now, faire Sauseise, encounter with my sonne sir Meliagaunt, and give him large payment; for I would that he were well beaten of thy hands that hee might depart out of the field." And so then sir Sauseise encountred with sir Meliagaunt, and either smote other downe; and then they fought on foote together, and there sir Sauseise had wonne sir Meliagaunt, had not rescewes come there. So then sir Galahalt the haute prince blew to lodging, and every knight unarmed him and went to the great feast. Then in the meane while there came a damosell unto the haute prince, and complained that there was a knight the which hight Goneries, that withheld from her all her lands. And that same knight was there present, and cast his glove to him or to any that would fight in her name. So the damosell tooke up the glove all heavily, for default of a champion. Then there came a varlet to her, and said, "Damosell, will ye doe after me?" "Full faine," said the damosell. "Then goe to such a knight, that lyeth heere beside in an hermitage, and that followeth the questing beast, and pray him to take the bat-

[1] *Meddle.*—Fight. [2] *Bigger.*—Stronger.

taile upon him, and anon I wot well hee will take it upon him and graunt to you." So anon shee tooke her palfray, and within a while shee found that knight, that was sir Palomides. And when shee had required him, he armed him and rode with her and made her to go to the haute prince to aske leave for her knight to doe battale. "I will well," said the haute prince. And then the knights were ready in the field to just on horsebacke, and either gate a great speare in their hands, and met together so fiercely that their speares all to-shevered. And then they drew their swords, and sir Palomides smote sir Goncreis downe to the earth, and then he rased off his helme and smote off his head. Then they went to supper, and the damosell loved sir Palomides as paramour. So then sir Palomides disguised him in this manner: in his shield hee beare the questing beast, and in all his trappours; and when hee was thus ready, he sent to the haute prince to give him leave to just with other knights, but hee was in doubt of sir Launcelot. The haute prince sent him word againe that hee should bee welcome, and that sir Launcelot should not just with him. Then sir Galahalt the haute prince let cry, what knight somever hee was that smote downe sir Palomides should have his damosell to himselfe.

CHAP. CXXVII.—How sir Galahalt and Palomides fought together, and of sir Dinadan and sir Galahalt.



HERE beginneth the second day. And as sir Palomides came into the field, sir Galahalt the haute prince was at the range end, and met with sir Palomides, and hee with him, with great speares, and then they came so hard together that their speares all to-shevered; but sir Galahalt smote him so hard that he beare him backward over his horse, but yet hee lost not his stirops. Then they drew their swords, and lashed together many a sad strooke, that many worshipfull

knights left their businesse to behold them. But at the last sir Galahalt the haute prince smote a strooke of might unto sir Palomides sore upon the helme, but the helme was so hard that the sword nothing might bite, but slipped, and smote of the head of the horse of sir Palomides. And when the haute prince saw the good knight fall downe to the earth, he was right sore ashamed of that strooke, and therewith hee alighted downe from his horse, and prayed the good knight sir Palomides to take that horse of his gift, and to forgive him that deede. "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I thanke you of your great goodnesse, for ever of a man of worship a knight shall never have disworship." And so he mounted upon that horse, and the haute prince had another right soone. "Now," said the haute prince, "I release unto you that maiden, for yee have wonne her." "A! sir," said sir Palomides, "the damosell and I are at your commandement." So they departed, and sir Galahalt did great deeds of armes. And right so there came sir Dinadan, and encountred with sir Galahalt the haut prince, and either came to other so hard with their speares, that their speares brake to their hands. But sir Dinadan had wend the haute prince had beene more weary then he was, and then hee smote many sad strooke at the haute prince; but when sir Dinadan saw that he might not get him to the earth, he said, "My lord, I pray you leave me and take another." The haute prince knew not sir Dinadan, and left goodly for his faire words, and so they departed. But soone there came another, and told the haute prince that it was sir Dinadan. "Forsooth," said the haute prince, "therefore am I heavy that he is so escaped from me; for with his mocks and japes now shall I never have done with him." And then sir Galahalt rode fast after him, and bad him, "Abide, sir Dinadan, for king Arthurs sake." "Nay," said sir Dinadan, "so God me helpe, we meete no more together this day." Then in that wrath the haute prince met with sir Meliagaunt, and he smote him in the

throate, that, and hee had not fallen, his necke had broken; and with the same speare he smote downe another knight. Then came in they of Northgales, and many strangers, and were like to have put them off Surluse unto the worst; for sir Galahalt the haute prince had overmuch in hand. So there came in the good knight sir Simond the valiant, with fourty knights, and he beate them all backe. Then queene Guenever and sir Launcelot let blow unto lodging; and ever knight unarmed him, and dressed him to the feast.

CHAP. CXXVIII.—How sir Archad appealed sir Palomides of treason, and how sir Palomides slew him.

WHEN sir Palomides was unarmed, he asked lodging for himselfe and the damosell; and anon sir Galahalt the haute prince commanded them to lodging. And hee was not so soone in his lodging, but there came a knight that hight sir Archad, he was brother to sir Gonereis, that sir Palomides slew afore in the damosels quarell; and this knight sir Archad called sir Palomides traitour, and appelled him for the death of his brother. "By the leave of the haute prince," said sir Palomides, "I shall answere the." When the haute prince understood their quarrell, hee bad them goe to dinner, "and as soone as yee have dined, looke that either knight be ready in the field." So when they had dined, they were both armed, and tooke their horses, and the queene and the haute prince and sir Launcelot were set to behold them. And so they let run their horses, and there sir Palomides beare Sir Archad on his speare over his horse taile. And then sir Palomides alighted and drew his sword; but sir Archad might not arise, and there sir Palomides rased of his helme and smote off his head. Then the haute prince and queene Guenever went to supper. Then king Bagdemagus sent away his sonne sir Meliagaunt, because that sir Launcelot should not meete with him, for hee hated sir Launcelot, and that knew hee not.

CHAP. CXXIX.—Of the third day, and how sir Palomides justed with sir Lamoracke, and of other things.

NOW beginneth the third day of justing, and at that day king Bagdemagus made him ready; and there came against him king Marsill, that had in gift an iland of sir Galahalt the haute prince, and this iland had the name Pomitaine. Then it befell that king Bagdemagus and king Marsill of Pomitaine met together with speares, and king Marsill had such a buffet that he fell over his horse croup. Then there came in a knight of king Marsils to revenge his lord, and king Bagdemagus smote him downe horse and man to the earth. So there came an earle that hight sir Arouse, and sir Breuse, and an hundred knights with them of Pomitaine, and the king of Northwailes was with them, and all these were against them of Surluse. And then there began a great battaile, and many knights were cast under the horses feete, and ever king Bagdemagus did best, for he began first, and ever hee held on. Sir Gaheris, sir Gawaines brother, smote ever at the face of king Bagdemagus, and at the last king Bagdemagus hurled and smote downe sir Gaheris horse and man to the earth. And then by adventure sir Palomides the good knight met with sir Blamore de Ganis, sir Bleoberis brother, and there either of them smote other with their speares, that both horses and knights fell to the earth; but sir Blamore had such a fall, that hee had almost broken his necke, for the blood brast out of his nose, mouth, and eares; but at the last hee recovered by the helpe of good surgions. Then there came in duke Chaleins of Claraunce, and in his governance came a knight which hight sir Elias le Noyre, and there encountred with him king Bagdemagus, and he smote sir Elias that hee made him to avoid his saddle. So the duke Chalines of Claraunee did there great deeds of armes; and of so late as he came in

the third day there was no man that did so well as he except king Bagdemagus and sir Palomides, so that the prise was given that day unto king Bagdemagus. And then they blew unto lodging, and unarmed them, and went to the feast. Right so there came sir Dinadan, and mocked and japed at king Bagdemagus, that all knights laughed at him, for he was a great bourder,[1] and well loving all good knights. So anon as they had dined, there came a varlet bearing foure speares on his backe, and hee came to sir Palomides and said, "Sir, heere is a knight heereby hath sent you the choise of foure speares, and requireth you for your ladies sake to take that one halfe of these speares and just with him in the field." "Tell him," said sir Palomides, "I will not faile him." When sir Galahalt wist of this, hee bad sir Palomides make him ready. So queene Guenever, the haute prince, and sir Launcelot, were set upon scaffolds to give the judgement of these two knights. Then sir Palomides and the strange knight ranne so egerly together that their speares brake unto their hands. Anon therewith either of them tooke a great speare and all to-shevered them in peeces. And then either tooke a greater speare, and then the knight smote downe sir Palomides horse and man to the earth; and as he would have passed over him, the strange knights horse stumbled and fell downe upon sir Palomides. Then they drew their swords and lashed together wondrous sore a great while. Then sir Galahalt the haute prince and sir Launcelot said they saw never two knights fight better then they two did. But ever the strange knight doubled his strookes, and put sir Palomides backe; therewith the haute prince cried hoo,[2] and then they went unto lodging. And when they were unarmed they knew it was the noble knight sir Lamoracke. When sir Launcelot knew that it was sir Lamoracke, he made much of him, for above all earthly men hee loved

[1] *Bourder.*—A joker.

[2] *Cried hoo.*—See before, vol. i. p. 38.

him best except sir Tristram. Then queene Guenever commended him, and so did all other knights, and made much of him, except sir Gawaines bretheren. Then queene Guenever said unto sir Launcelot, "Sir, I require you that, and ye just any more, that yee just with none of the blood of my lord king Arthur." So hee promised he would not as at that time.

CHAP. CXXX.—Of the fourth day, and of many great feates of armes.



OW beginneth the fourth day. Then came into the field the king with the hundred knights, and all they of Northgalis, and the duke Chaleins of Claraunce, and king Marsill of Pomitane. And there came sir Safere, sir Palomides brother, and there hee told him tidings of his mother, and how hee appealed an earle before king Arthur, "for hee made warre on our father and mother, and there I slew him in plaine battaile." And so they went into the field, and the damosell with them, and there came to encounter against them sir Bleoberis de Ganis and sir Ector de Maris. And sir Palomides encountred with sir Bleoberis, and either smote other downe, and in the same wise did sir Safere and sir Ector; and those two couples did battaile on foote. Then came in sir Lamoracke, and he encountred with the king with the hundred knights, and smote him quite over his horse taile. And in the same wise he served the king of Northgalis, and also he smote downe king Marsill; and so or ever hee stinted he smote downe with his speare and with his sword thirtie knights. So when duke Chaleins saw sir Lamoracke doe so great prowesse, hee would not meddle with him for shame. And then hee charged all his knights upon paine of death that none of them should touch him, "for it were shame to all good knights and that knight were shamed." Then the two kings gathered them

together, and all they set upon sir Lamoracke, and he failed them not; but rashing heere and there, smiting on the right hand and on the left hand, hee rased off many helmes. And so the haute prince and queene Guenever said they saw never no knight doe such deeds of armes on horsebacke. "Alas," said sir Launcelot unto king Bagdemagus, "I will arme me and helpe sir Lamoracke." "And I will ride with you," said king Bagdemagus. And when they two were on horsebacke they came unto sir Lamoracke, which stood among thirtie knights, and well was him that might reach him a buffet, and ever he smote ful mightily againe. Then came there into the presse sir Launcelot, and he threw downe sir Mador de la Port, and with the truncheon of that speare he overthrew many good knights. And there king Bagdemagus smote on the right hand and on the left hand mervailously well. And then the three kings drew backe. And therewith the haute prince let blow unto lodging, and all the heraulds gave sir Lamoracke the degree. And all this while fought sir Palomides and sir Bleoberis de Ganis; and sir Safre and sir Ector fought on foote. Never were there foure knights evener matched. And then were they departed and had unto their lodging, and unarmed them, and so they went to the great feast. But when sir Lamoracke was come unto the court, queene Guenever took him in both her armes, and said, "Sir, well have yee done this day." Then came the haute prince, and he made of him great joy; and in likewise did sir Dinadan, for hee wept for joy. But the joy that sir Launcelot made of sir Lamoracke no man there might tell. So they went unto their rest, and on the morrow after, sir Galahalt the haute prince let blow unto the field.

CHAP. CXXXI.—Of the fifth day, and how sir Lamoracke behaved him.

HERE beginneth the fifth day. So it befell that sir Palomides came in the meane season and proffered to just there as king Arthur was, in a castle there beside Surluse, and there encountred with him a worshipfull duke, and there sir Palomides smote him over his horse croupe, so that hee fell to the earth; and this duke was unkle unto king Arthur. Then sir Elis, his sonne, rode unto sir Palomides, and sir Palomides served sir Elise in the same wise. So when sir Ewaine saw this, he was wonderous wroth; then hee tooke his horse and encountred with sir Palomides, and sir Palomides smote him so hard, that hee went unto the earth horse and man; and for to make short tale, hee smote downe three bretheren of sir Gawaines, that is to saie, sir Mordred, sir Gaheris, and sir Agrawaine. "O Jesu!" said king Arthur, "this is a great despite of a Sarasin, that he shall thus smite downe my blood." And therwith king Arthur was wood wroth, and thought to have made him ready to just. That espied sir Lamoracke, that king Arthur and his blood were discomfited, and anon he was ready, and asked sir Palomides if he would just any more. "Why should I not?" said sir Palomides. Then they hurled together, and brake their speares, and all to-shevered[1] them, that all the castle rang of their dints. Then either of them gat a great speare in their hands, and they came so fiersly together, that sir Palomides speare all to-brake, and sir Lamorackes did hold; therwith sir Palomides lost his stirops, and lay upright on his horsebacke. And then sir Palomides returned againe, and tooke his damosell, and sir Safre returned his way. So when hee was departed,

[1] *To-shevered.*—Shivered or broke to pieces. So, immediately afterwards, *to-brake*, broke to pieces.

king Arthur came unto sir Lamoracke, and thanked him of his goodnesse, and praied him to tell him his name. "Sir," said sir Lamoracke, "wit you well I owe you my service, but as at this time I will not abide heere, for I see of mine ennemies many about mee." "Alas," said king Arthur, "now I wot well it is sir Lamoracke de Galis. O, sir Lamoracke, abide with mee, and, by my crowne, I shall never faile thee, and not so hardy in sir Gawaines head, nor none of his brethren, to doe thee any wrong." "Sir," said sir Lamoracke, "wrong have they done to me and to you both." "That is truth," said king Arthur, "for they slew their owne mother and my sister, which me sore grieveth; it had beene much fairer and better that yee had wedded her, for yee are a kings sonne as well as they." "O Jesu!" said the noble knight sir Lamoracke unto king Arthur, "her death shall I never forget. I promise you, and make mine avow unto God, that I shall revenge her death as soone as I see time convenient; and if it were not at the reverence of your highnesse, I should now have beene revenged upon sir Gawaine and his bretheren." "Truly," said king Arthur, "I will make you to accord." "Sir," said sir Lamoracke, "as at this time I may not abide with you, for I must goe unto the justs, where as sir Launcelot is and the haute prince sir Galahalt." Then there was a damosell which was daughter unto king Ban, and there was a knight Sarasin which hight sir Corsabrin, and he loved the damosell, and in no wise he would suffer her to be maried; for ever this sir Corsabrin noysed[1] her, and named her that she was out of her mind; and thus he letted her that shee might not be maried.

[1] *Noysed her.*—i. e. defamed her.

CHAP. CXXXII.—How sir Palomides fought with sir Corsabrin for a lady, and how sir Palomides slew sir Corsabrin.

THEN by fortune this damosell heard tell that sir Palomides did much for damosels sakes: so she sent to him a pencell,[1] and prayed him to fight sir Corsabrin for her love, and he should have her and her lands of her fathers that should fall unto her. Then the damosell sent to sir Corsabrin, and bad him goe unto sir Palomides, that was a panim as well as he; and shee gave him warning that she had sent him her pencell, and if he might overcome sir Palomides, she would wed him. When sir Corsabrin wist of her deeds, then was hee wood wroth and angry, and rode to Surluse, where sir Galahalt the haute prince was, and there he found sir Palomides ready, which had the pensel; so they there waged battaile either with other afore sir Galahalt. "Well," said then the haute prince, "this day must noble knights just, and at after dinner yee shall see how yee can spede." Then they blew to justs, and in came sir Dinadan, and met with sir Gerin, a good knight, and sir Dinadan smote him downe over his horse croupe; and sir Dinadan overthrew foure knights moe, and there hee did great deeds of armes; and he had such a custome that he loved every good knight, and every good knight loved him againe. So then when the haute prince saw sir Dinadan do so well, he sent unto sir Launcelot, and bad him strike downe sir Dinadan, "and when yee have done so, bring him afore mee and queene Guenever." Then sir Launcelot did as hee was required. Then sir Lamoracke and hee smote downe many knights, and rased of helmes, and drove all the knights afore them. And so sir Launcelot smote downe sir Dinadan, and made his men to unarme him, and so brought him to the queene and to the haute prince, and they laughed at sir Dinadan so sore that they might not stand. "Well," said sir

[1] *Pencell.—Pensel,* Caxton. A small standard or ensign.

Dinadan, "yet have I no shame, for the old shrew sir Launcelot smote me downe." So they went to dinner, and all the court had a good sport at sir Dinadan. Then when dinner was done, they let blow to the field to behold sir Palomides and sir Corsabrin. Sir Palomides pight his pencell in the midst of the field, and then they hurled both together with their speares as it were thunder, and either smote other downe to the earth; and then they drew their swords, and dressed their shields, and lashed together mightily as mightie knights, that well nigh there was no peece of harneis would hold them, for this sir Corsabrin was a passing felonious knight. "Sir Corsabrin," said sir Palomides, "wilt thou release mee yonder damosell and the pencell?" Then was sir Corsabrin wroth out of measure, and gave unto sir Palomides such a buffet that hee made him to kneele upon one of his knees. Then sir Palomides arose up lightly, and gave him such a buffet upon the helme that he fell downe to the earth, and therewith hee rased off his helme, and said, "Yeeld thee, or else thou shalt die of my hands." "Fie on thee," said sir Corsabin, "doe the worst that thou canst." Then hee smote off his head, and therewithall came a stench out of his body when the soule departed, so that there might no body abide the savour. So was the corps had away and buried in a wood, because he was a paynim. Then they blew unto lodging, and sir Palomides was unarmed. Then hee went unto queene Guenever, to the haute prince, and unto sir Launcelot. "Sir," said the haute prince, "heere have yee seene this day a great miracle by sir Corsabrin, what savour there was when the soule departed from the body; therefore, sir, we will require you for to take the holy baptisme upon you, and I promise you all knights will set the more by you, and say more worship by you." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I will that yee all know that into this land I am come to be christined, and in my heart I am a Christian, and christined will I bee; but I have made such a vow that

I may not be christined till that I have done seaven true battailes for Jesus sake, and then will I bee christined; and I trust God will take mine intent, for I meane truely." Then sir Palomides prayed queene Guenever and sir Galahalt, the haute prince, to sup with him; and so did both sir Launcelot and sir Lamoracke, and many other good knights. So on the morrow they heard their masse, and blew to the field; and then the knights made them ready.

CHAP. CXXXIII.—Of the sixth day, and what then was done.

HEERE beginneth the sixth day. Then came there sir Gaheris, and there encountred with him sir Ossaill[1] of Surluse, and sir Gaheris smote him over his horse croupe. And then either party encountred with other, there was many speares broken, and many knights cast from their horses downe to the ground. So there came sir Dornard and sir Aglovaile, which were bretheren unto sir Lamoracke, and they met with other two knights, and either smote other so hard that all foure, knights and horses, fell to the ground. When sir Lamoracke saw his two bretheren downe, he was wroth out of measure; and then he tooke a great speare in his hand, and therewith he smote downe foure good knights, and then his speare brake. Then he drew out his sword, and smote about him on the right hand and on the left hand, and raced off helmes, and pulled downe many knights, that all men mervailed of such deedes of armes as hee did, for hee fared so that there were many knights that fled.

Then hee horsed his bretheren againe, and said to them, "Bretheren, yee ought to be ashamed to fall so from your horses; what is a knight but when hee is on horsbacke? I set not by a knight when hee is on foote; for all the battailes that are done on foote are but pelers[2] battailes, for

[1] *Ossaill.—Ossaise,* Caxton.

[2] *Pelers.—Pelowres,* Caxton; i. e. battles of pillers (pillagers), or common foot soldiers.

there should no knight fight on foote but if it were for treason, or else if hee were driven thereto by force; therefore, faire brethren, sit fast upon your horses, or else fight never more before me." During these words there came in duke Chaleins of Claraunce, and there encountred with him the earle Ulbawes of Surluse, and either of them smote other downe. Then the knights of both parties horsed their lords againe, for sir Ector and sir Bleoberis were on foote waiting upon the duke Chaleins of Claraunce, and the king with the hundred knights was with the earle Ulbawes. With that came sir Gaheris, and lashed at the king with the hundred knights, and hee at him againe. Then came the duke Chaleins, and departed them. Then they blew unto lodging, and the knights unarmed them, and drew them to their dinner. And in the midst of their dinner in came sir Dinadan, and hee began to rayle. Then hee beheld the haute prince, that seemed to bee wroth with some fault that hee saw; for hee had a custome that he loved no fish, and because hee was served with fish the which hee hated, therefore he was not merry. And when sir Dinadan had well espied the haute prince, he saw where was a fish with a great head, and he served the haute prince with that fish, and then said unto him thus sir Galahalt, "Well may I liken you unto a wolfe, for he will never eate no fish but flesh." Then the haute prince laughed at his words. "Well," said sir Dinadan unto sir Launcelot, "what divell doe you in this countrey? for here may no meane knights winne no worship for thee; and I ensure thee that I shall never meete thee no more, nor also with thy great speare, for I may not sit in my saddle when that speare met with me; and if I bee so happy, I shall bee ware of that boystrous speare that thou bearest." "Well," said sir Launcelot, "make ever good watch; God forbid that ever wee meete, but if it bee at a dish of meate." Then laughed queene Guenever and the haute prince, that they might not sit at the table. Thus

they made great joy till on the morrow, and then they heard masse and blew to the field. And queene Guenever and all the estates were set, and judges armed cleane with their shields for to keepe the right.

CHAP. CXXXIV.—Of the seaventh battaile, and how sir Launcelot, being disguised like a maide, smote downe sir Dinadan.

NOW beginneth the seaventh battaile. There came in the duke Cambines, and there encountred with him sir Aristaunce, that was counted a good knight, and they met so hard that either bare other downe horse and man. Then came there the earle of Lamball, and holpe the duke againe to horse. Then came there sir Ossayll of Surlusse, and hee smote the earle Lamball downe from his horse. Then they began to doe great deeds of armes, and many speares were broken, and many knights were cast to the earth. Then the king of Northwailes and the earle Ulbawes smote together that all the judges thought it was like mortall death. This meane while queene Guenever and the haute prince and sir Launcelot made sir Dinadan to make him ready to just. "I would ride into the field," said sir Dinadan, "but then one of you two will meete there with me." "Perdieu!" said the haute prince, "yee may behold and see how that we sit here as judges with our shields; and alway mayst thou behold whether that wee sit heere or not." So sir Dinadan departed, and tooke his horse, and met with many knights, and did passing well. And as hee was departed, sir Launcelot disguised himselfe, and put upon his armour a maidens garment freshly attired. Then sir Launcelot made sir Galahodin to lead him through the raungell.[1] And all men had wonder what damosell it was. And so as sir Dinadan came into the raunge, sir Launcelot, that was in the damosels aray, gate sir Galihodins

[1] *Raungell.*—The range of the lists in a tournament.

speare, and ranne unto sir Dinadan, and alway sir Dinadan looked up whereas sir Launcelot was, and than he saw one sit in the steed of sir Launcelot all armed. But when sir Dinadan saw a manner of damosell, hee dread perils that it was sir Launcelot disguised. But sir Launcelot came upon him so fast, that he smote him over his horse croupe. And then with great scornes they gate sir Dinadan into the forrest there beside, and there they despoyled him unto his shirt, and put upon him a womans garment, and so they brought him into the field. And then they blew unto lodging, and every knight went and unarmed him. Then was sir Dinadan brought in among them all. And when queene Guenever saw sir Dinadan so brought in among them all, then she laughed so heartily that shee fell downe, and so did all that were there. "Well," said sir Dinadan unto sir Launcelot, "thou art so false that I can never be ware of thee." Then, by the assent of them all, they gave sir Launcelot the prise. The next was sir Lamoracke de Galis; the third was sir Palomides; the fourth was king Bagdemagus; so these foure noble knights had the prise. And there was great joy and great nobley[1] in all the court. And on the morrow queene Guenever and sir Launcelot departed unto king Arthur; but in no wise sir Lamoracke would not goe with them. "I shall undertake," said sir Launcelot, "that and yee will goe with us unto king Arthur, hee shall charge sir Gawaine and his brethren never to doe you hurt." "As for that," said sir Lamoracke, "I will not trust sir Gawaine nor none of his brethren; and wit you well, sir Launcelot, and it were not for my lord king Arthurs sake, I would match sir Gawaine and all his brethren well enough: but to say that I shall trust them, that shall I never; and therefore I pray you recommend me unto my lord king Arthur, and unto all my lords of the round table, and in what place soever I come I shall doe your service unto my power; and, sir,

[1] *Nobley.*—Display of nobility.

it is but late that I was revenged when my lord king Arthurs kinne were put unto the worst by sir Palomides." Then sir Lamoracke departed from sir Launcelot, and either wept at their departing.

CHAP. CXXXV.—How by treason sir Tristram was brought unto a turnament for to have beene slaine, and how he was put in prison.

NOW turne wee from this matter, and speake wee of sir Tristram, of whom this booke is principally of; and leave we the king and the queene, sir Launcelot, and sir Lamoracke. And now here beginneth the treason of king Marke that he hath ordained against sir Tristram. There was cried by the coasts[1] of Cornewaile a great turnament and justs; and all was done by sir Galahalt the haute prince and king Bagdemagus, to the entent to slay sir Launcelot, or else utterly destroy him and shame him, because sir Launcelot had alway the higher degree. Therefore this prince and the king made these justs against sir Launcelot. And thus their counsaile was discovered unto king Marke, whereof he was full glad. And then king Marke bethought him that he would have sir Tristram unto that turnament disguised, that no man should know him, to that entent that the haute prince should wend that sir Tristram were sir Launcelot. So at these justs there came in sir Tristram, and at that time sir Launcelot was not there. But when they saw a knight disguised doe such deeds of armes, they weend that it had beene sir Launcelot, and in especiall king Marke said it was sir Launcelot plainely. Then there set upon him both Bagdemagus and the haute prince and their knights, that it was wonder that ever sir Tristram might endure that paine. Notwithstanding, for all the paine that sir Tristram had, he wanne the degree at that turnament, and there hee hurt and bruised many knights, and

[1] *Coasts.*—Sides; quarters.

they also hurt him and bruised his wounds sore. So when the justs was all done, they knew well that it was sir Tristram de Lyones. And all that were on king Markes parte were glad that sir Tristram was so hurt, and the other were sorie of his hurt; for sir Tristram was nothing so sore behated[1] as was sir Launcelot in the realme of England. Then came king Marke unto sir Tristram, and said, "Sir nephew, I am full sory of your hurts." "God thanke you, my lord," said sir Tristram. And then king Marke made sir Tristram for to bee put in an horse litter, in signe of great love, and said, "Faire nephew, I shall bee your lech my selfe." And so hee rode forth with sir Tristram, and brought him to a castle by day light. And then king Marke made sir Tristram for to eate, and then after he gave him a drinke, the which as soone as hee had drunke it hee fell on sleepe. And when it was night hee made him for to be caried into another castle, and there he put him in a strong prison, and there hee ordained a man and a woman for to give him his meate and his drinke; so there he was a great while. Then was sir Tristram missed, and no creature wist where he was become. When the queene La beale Isoud heard how sir Tristram was missed, previly she sent unto sir Sadocke, and prayed him to espie where sir Tristram was. Then when sir Sadock wist that sir Tristram was missed, anon hee had knowledge that he was put in prison by king Marke and the traitours of Magouns. Then sir Sadocke and two of his cosins laid them in an embushment fast by the castle of Tintagill, in armes; and by fortune there came riding by them king Marke and foure of his nephewes, and a certaine of the traitours of Magouns. When sir Sadocke espied them, he brake out of the bushment and set upon them; and when king Marke espied sir Sadocke he fled as fast as he might; and sir Sadocke slew all the foure nephewes unto king Marke. But these traitours of Magouns slew one of sir Sadocks cosins, and

[1] *Behated.*—Thoroughly hated.

gave another a great wound in the necke. But sir Sadocke smote the other to death. Then sir Sadocke rode on his way unto a castle that was called Lyones, and there hee espied of the treason and fellony of king Marke. So they of the castle rode with sir Sadocke till they came unto a castle that hight Albray,[1] and there in the towne they found sir Dinas the seneshall, that was a good knight. But when sir Sadocke had told sir Dinas of all the treason of king Marke, hee defied[2] such a king, and said hee would give up his lands that hee held of him. And when hee had said these words, all manner knights said as sir Dinas. Then by his advise and by sir Sadockes, hee let stuffe all the townes and castles within the countrey of Lyones,[3] and assembled all the people that they might make.

CHAP. CXXXVI.—How king Marke let doe counterfeit letters from the pope, and how sir Percivale delivered sir Tristram out of prison.

RETURNE we unto king Marke, that when he was escaped from sir Sadocke, he rode unto the castle of Tintagill, and there he made great cryes and noyse, and cried unto harneis all that were able to beare armes. Then they sought and found where were dead foure cosins of king Markes and the traitours of Magouns. Then the king let bury them within a chappell. Then the king let cry in all the countrey that held of him to goe unto armes, for he understood unto warre he must needs. When king Marke heard and understood how sir Sadocke and sir Dinas were risen in the countrey of Lyones, hee remembred him of wiles and treason. Loe thus he did. He let doe make and counterfeit

[1] *Albray.*—*Arbray*, Caxton.

[2] *Defied.*—This was a feudal ceremony, by which the holder of a fief formally renounced his duties to the suzerain.

[3] *Lyones.*—This, of course, is to be understood as a district in Cornwall, and not the Liones in Britany of which Tristram was a native.

letters from the pope, and made a strange clearke to beare them unto king Marke; the which letters specified that king Marke should make him ready, upon paine of cursing, with his hoost for to come to the pope to helpe to goe to Jerusalem, for to make warre upon the Sarasins. When this clearke was come by the meanes of king Marke, anon forthwith king Marke sent these letters unto sir Tristram, and bad him to say thus, that and hee would goe warre upon the Sarasins, he should be had out of prison, and to have all his power. When sir Tristram understood this letter, then hee said thus to the clearke, "Ah! king Marke, ever hast thou beene a traitour, and ever wilt be. But, clearke," said sir Tristram, "say thou thus unto king Marke: sithen the apostle pope hath sent for him, bid him to goe thither himselfe. For tell him, like a traitour king as hee is, that I will not goe at his command, get I out of my prison as I may; for I see I am well rewarded for my true service." Then the clearke returned unto king Marke, and told him of the answer of sir Tristram. "Well," said king Marke, "yet shall hee bee begiled." So hee went into his chamber, and counterfeited others letters; and the letters specified that the pope desired sir Tristram to come himselfe to make warre upon the Sarasins. When the clearke was come againe unto sir Tristram, and tooke him these letters, then sir Tristram beheld these letters, and anon hee espied that they were of king Markes counterfeiting. "Ah," said sir Tristram, "false hast thou beene ever, king Marke, and so wilt thou end." Then the clearke departed from sir Tristram, and came to king Marke againe. • By then there were come foure wounded knights within the castle of Tintagill, and one of them his necke was night broken in twaine, another had his arme striken away, the third was borne through with a speare, and the fourth had his teeth striken in twaine. And when they came afore king Marke, they cried and said, "King, why fliest thou not, for al this countrey is rison cleerely against thee?"

Then was king Marke wroth out of measure. And in the meane while there came into that countrey sir Percivale de Galis to seeke sir Tristram; and when he heard say that sir Tristram was in prison, sir Percivale made cleerely the deliverance of sir Tristram by his knightly meanes. And when he was so delivered, hee made great joye of sir Percivale, and so did each of other; sir Tristram said unto sir Percivale, "And yee will abide in these marches, I will ride with you." "Nay," said sir Percivale, "in this countrey may I not tary, for I must needs into Wales." So sir Percivale departed from sir Tristram, and rode streight to king Marke, and told him how he had delivered sir Tristram; and also hee told the king how hee had done himselfe great shame for to put sir Tristram in prison, "for hee is now the knight of most renowne in all the world living. And wit yee well, that the most noble knights of the world love sir Tristram, and if that he will make warre upon you, yee may not abide it." "That is truth," said king Marke, "but I may not love sir Tristram, because hee loveth my queene and my wife La beale Isoud." "Ah, fie for shame," said sir Percivale, "say ye never no more so. Are yee not unkle unto sir Tristram, and hee your nephew? Yee should never thinke that so noble a knight as sir Tristram is, that hee would do himselfe so great a vilanie for to hold his unkles wife; how bee it," said sir Percivale, "he may love your queene sinlesse, because that shee is called one of the fairest ladies of the world." And then sir Percivale departed from king Marke. And so when hee was departed, king Marke beethought him of more treason, notwithstanding that king Mark granted sir Percivale never by no manner of meanes to hurt sir Tristram. And then anon king Marke sent unto sir Dinas the seneshall, that hee should put downe all the people that he had raised, for hee sent him an oath that hee would goe himselfe unto the pope of Rome for to ware upon the Sarasins; "and this is a fayrer warre than thus to raise the people against your king."

When sir Dinas the seneshall understood that king Marke would go upon the Sarasins, then he anon in all the hast hee might put downe all this people. And when the people were departed, every man to his home, then king Marke espied where was sir Tristram with La beale Isoud, and there by treason king Marke let take him and put him in prison, contrary to his promise that hee made unto sir Percivale. When La beale Isoud understood that sir Tristram was in prison, shee made as great sorrow as ever made lady or gentlewoman. Then sir Tristram sent a letter unto La beale Isoud, and prayed her to be his good lady, and if it pleased her to make a vessel ready for her and him, he would goe with her to the realme of Logris, that is in this land. When La beale Isoud understood sir Tristrams letters and his intent, she sent him another, and bad him be of good comfort, for she would do make the vessell ready and all things to that purpose. Then La beale Isoud sent unto sir Dinas and unto sir Sadocke, and prayed them in any wise to take king Marke and put him in prison unto the time that she and sir Tristram were departed unto the realme of Logris. When sir Dinas the seneshall understood the treason of king Marke, he promised her againe, and sent to her word that king Marke should be put in prison, and as they had devised so it was done. And then sir Tristram was delivered out of prison, and anon in all the hast La beale Isoud and sir Tristram went and tooke their counsell with those that they would have with them when they departed.

CHAP. CXXXVII.—How that sir Tristram and La beale Isoud came into England, and how that sir Launcelot brought them unto Joyous-gard.



THEN La beale Isoud and sir Tristram tooke their vessel, and came by water into this countrey; and so they were not in this countrey foure dayes but there came a crie of justs and

turnement, which king Arthur let make. When sir Tristram heard tell of that turneyment, hee disguised himselfe and La beale Isoud and rode unto that turneyment; and when he came there, hee saw many knights just and turney, and so sir Tristram dressed him unto the range. And for to make short conclusion, he overthrew fourteene knights of the round table. And when sir Launcelot saw how all these knights were overthrowne, sir Launcelot dressed him unto sir Tristram. That saw La beale Isoud how that sir Launcelot was come into the field. Then La beale Isoud sent unto sir Launcelot a ring,[1] and bad him wit that it was sir Tristram de Liones. Then when sir Launcelot understood that sir Tristram was there, hee was right glad, and would not just. Then sir Launcelot espied whether that sir Tristram rode, and then hee rode after him; and then either made of other right great joy. And so sir Launcelot brought sir Tristram and La beale Isoud unto Joyous-gard, the which was his owne castle that hee had wonne with his owne hands; and there sir Launcelot put that castle into their governance as their owne, and wit you well that castle was right well garnished and furnished for a king and a queene there to have sojourned. And sir Launcelot charged all his people to honour them and love them as they would doe him selfe. So sir Launcelot departed, and rode to king Arthur, and then he told queene Guenever how hee that justed so well at the last turneyment was sir Tristram; and there hee told her how hee had with him La beale Isoud maugre king Marke. And so queene Guenever told all this unto her lord king Arthur. When king Arthur wist that sir Tristram was escaped and come from king Marke, and had brought La beale Isoud with him, then was he passing glad. So because of sir Tristram, king Arthur let make a crie, that on May day should be a turneyment before the castle of Lonazep.

[1] *A ring.*—In the Middle Ages the ring was an object of universal usage as a means of authenticating private messages and orders.

And that castle was fast by Joyous-gard. And thus king Arthur devised, that all the knights of this land, and of Cornewaile, and of North Wales, should just against all these countrys, Ireland, Scotland, and the remnant of Wales, and the countrey of Gore and Surluse, and of Listinoise, and they of Northumberland, and all they that held lands of king Arthur on this halfe the sea. When this crie was made, many knights were glad and many were not glad. "Sir," said sir Launcelot unto king Arthur, "by this crie which ye have made, ye will put us that be about you in great jeopardy, for there be many knights that have great envie at us; therefore when wee shall meete at that day of justs, there will be hard shift among us." "As for that," said king Arthur, "I care not, there shall we prove who shall be best of his lands." So when sir Launcelot understood wherefore king Arthur made this justing, then he made such purvaiance that La beale Isoud should behold the justs in a secret place that was honest for her estate.[1]

Now turne we unto sir Tristram and La beale Isoud, how they made great joy daily together with all manner of mirthes that they could devise. And every day sir Tristram would ride on hunting; for sir Tristram was that time called the best chacer of the world, and the noblest blower of an horne of all manner of measures. For as bookes report, of sir Tristram came all the good termes of venery and of hunting, and the sises and measures of blowing of an horne. And of him wee had first all the termes of

[1] *Honest for her estate.*—It is not easy to appreciate the sentiment of this passage. King Arthur, who is jealous of the adulterous intercourse between Lancelot and his own wife queen Guenever, nevertheless approves of and rejoices at the protection given to sir Tristram and the wife of king Mark in a similar adulterous intercourse carried on in Lancelot's castle. As it is thought, at the same time, that queen Isoude's position requires some concealment, a private lodge is made for her at the tournament, but fitted up in such a manner as became a queen, and apparently with the connivance of all these parties.

hawking, and which were beasts of chace, and beasts of venery, and which were vermines, and all the blasts that long to all manner of games. First to the uncoupeling, to the seeking, to the rechace, to the flight, to the death, and to strak,[1] and many other blasts and termes, that all manner of gentlemen have cause to the worlds end to praise sir Tristram and to pray for his soule.

CHAP. CXXXVIII.—How, by the counsell of La beale Isoud, sir Tristram rode armed, and how hee met with sir Palomides.

SO upon a day La beale Isoud said unto sir Tristram, "I mervaile me greatly," said shee, "that yee remember not your selfe, how that ye bee here in a strange countrey, and heere bee many perilous knights, and also well yee wote that king Marke is full of treason, and that yee will ride thus for to chace and hunt unarmed, yee might be destroyed." "My faire lady and my love, I crie you mercy, I will no more doe so." So then sir Tristram rode daily on hunting armed, and his men bearing his shield and his speare. So on a day, a little before the moneth of May, sir Tristram chased an hart passing egerly, and so the hart passed by a faire well. And then sir Tristram alighted and put off his helme for to drinke of that well.[2] Right so he heard and saw the questing beast come unto the well. So when sir Tristram espied that beast, he put his helme upon his head, for hee deemed he should here of Palomides, for that beast was in his quest. Right so sir Tristram saw where came a knight all armed upon a noble courser, and he saluted him, and they spake of many things. And this knights name was sir Breuse saunce Pitie. And right so foorthwith there came to them the good knight sir Palomides, and either saluted other and speake faire that one to that other.

[1] *To strak.—To strake*, Caxton. See before, p. 6.

[2] *Of that well.—To drynke of that burbley water*, Caxton.

"Faire knights," said sir Breuse saunce Pitie,[1] "I can tell you tidings." "What is that?" said those knights. "Sirs, wit you well," said hee, "that king Marke is put in prison by his owne knights, and all was for love of sir Tristram, because king Marke had put sir Tristram twise in prison. And once sir Percevale delivered the noble knight sir Tristram out of prison. And at the last time the queene La beale Isoud delivered him, and went cleerely away with him in this realme; and all this while king Marke, the false traitour, is in prison." "Is this truth?" said sir Palomides; "then hastely shall wee here of sir Tristram. And as for to say that I love La beale Isoud par amours, I dare make good that I doe, and that shee hath my service above all other ladies, and shall have the terme of my life." And right so as they stood talking, they saw before them where came a knight all armed upon a great horse, and one of his men beare his shield and the other his speares. And anon as that knight espied them, hee gate his shield and a speare, and dressed him to just. "Faire fellowes," said sir Tristram, "yonder is a knight that will just with us, let see which of us shall encounter with him, for I see well he is of king Arthurs court." "It shall not be long or hee bee met withall," said sir Palomides, "for I found never no knight in my quest of this glasting beast but, and he would just, I never refused him." "As well may I," said sir Breuse saunce Pittie, "follow that beast as yee." "Then shall yee doe battaile with me," said sir Palomides. So sir Palomides dressed him unto the other knight sir Bleoberis, that was a full noble knight and nigh kinne unto sir Launcelot; and so they met so hard that sir Palomides fell to the earth horse and man. Then sir Bleoberis cried aloude, and said, "Make the ready, thou false traitour knight sir Breuse saunce Pittie, for wit thou well certainely I will have to doe with thee to the uttermust, for all the noble knights and ladies which thou hast falsly betraied." When this false

[1] *Sir Breuse saunce Pitie.—Sir Palomydes,* Caxton.

knight and traitour sir Breuse saunce Pittie heard him say so, hee tooke his horse by the bridle and fled his way as fast as his horse might runne, for hee was sore afraid of him. When sir Bleoberis saw him flee, he followed fast after him through thicke and thinne. And by fortune as sir Breuse saunce Pittie fled thus, hee saw before him three knights of the round table, of the which the one hight sir Ector de Maris, that other hight sir Percival de Galis, and that other hight sir Harry le fise Lake, a good knight and a hardy; and as for sir Percival de Galis, hee was called that time one of the best knights of the world and the best assured. When sir Breuse saw these three knights, hee rode straight unto them, and cried aloud unto them and prayed them of rescewes. "What need have yee?" said sir Ector. "Ah, faire knights," said sir Breuse, "heere followeth mee the most traitour knight, and most coward, and most of vilany, his name is sir Breuse saunce Pittie, and if that hee may get mee, he will slay mee without any mercy or pitie." "Abide heere with us," said sir Percival, "and we shall warrant you." Then were they ware of sir Bleoberis, that came riding in all the hast that he might. Then sir Ector put himselfe forth for to just afore them all; and when sir Bleoberis saw that they were foure knights, and hee but himselfe alone, hee stood in a doubt whether hee would turne or hold his way. Then he said to himselfe, "I am a knight of the round table, and rather then I should shame mine oath and my blood, I will hold my way whatsoever fall thereof." And so then sir Ector dressed his speare, and smote either other passing sore; but sir Ector fell to the earth. That sawe sir Percival, and hee dressed his horse toward him all that ever he might drive; but sir Percival had such a strooke that both horse and man fell to the earth. When sir Harry saw that they were both on the earth, he said unto himselfe, that sir Breuse saunce Pittie was never of such prowesse; so sir Harry dressed his horse, and they met together so strongly that both

horses and knights fell to the earth, but sir Bleoberis horse began to recover againe. That saw sir Breuse, and hee came hurling and smote him over and over, and would have slaine him as hee lay on the ground. Then sir Harry le fise Lake arose lightly, and tooke the bridell of sir Breuse horse, and said, "Fie for shame, stricke never a knight when he is on the ground, for this knight may be called no shamefull knight of his deeds and acts; for yet as men may see there as he lyeth upon the ground hee hath done worshipfully, and put unto the worse passing good knights." "Therefore will I not let," said sir Breuse saunce Pittie. "Thou shalt not chose," said sir Harry, "as at this time." And when sir Breuse saunce Pittie saw that hee might not choose nor have his unhappy will, he spake faire; and then sir Harry let him goe. And then anon hee made his horse to runne over sir Bleoberis, and rashed him unto the earth as though he would have slaine him. And when sir Harry saw him doe so vilainously, he cried, "Traitour knight, leave off for shame of thy selfe." And as sir Harry would have taken his horse for to fight with sir Breuse, then sir Breuse ranne upon him as hee was halfe upon his horse, and smote him downe both horse and man to the earth, and had neere slaine sir Harry the good knight. That saw sir Percival, and then he cried, "Traitour knight, what doest thou?" And when sir Percival was upon his horse, sir Breuse tooke his horse and fled all that ever he might, and sir Percival and sir Harry followed after him fast; but ever the longer they chased the further they were behind. Then they turned againe, and came to sir Ector de Maris and sir Bleoberis. "Ah, faire knight," said sir Bleoberis, "why have yee succoured this false knight and traitour?" "Why," said sir Harry, "what knight is hee? for well I wot he is a false knight," said sir Harry, "and a coward and fellonious knight." "Sir," said sir Bleoberis, "he is of all cowards the most coward, and a devourer of ladies, and a destroyer of good knights, and specially of king Arthurs."

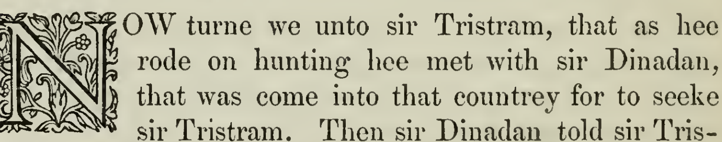
"What is your name?" said sir Ector. "My name is sir Bleoberis de Ganis." "Alas! faire cosin," said sir Ector, "forgive it mee, for I am sir Ector de Maris." Then sir Percival and sir Harry made great joy that they had met with sir Bleoberis, but all they were heavy that sir Breuse was escaped them, whereof they made great dole and sorrow.

CHAP. CXXXIX.—Of sir Palomides, and how hee met with Bleoberis and with sir Ector, and of sir Percival.

RIGHT so as they stood thus, there came sir Palomides, and when hee saw the shield of sir Bleoberis lye upon the earth, then said sir Palomides, "He that oweth that shield, let him dresse him to mee, for hee smote me downe heere fast by at a fountaine, and therefore I will fight with him on foote." "I am all ready," said sir Bleoberis, "here to answere thee, for wit thou wel, sir knight, it was I, and my name is sir Bleoberis de Ganis." "Well art thou met," said sir Palomides, "and wit thou well my name is sir Palomides the Sarasin." And either of them hated other to the death. "Sir Palomides," said sir Ector, "wit thou well there is neither thou nor no knight that beareth life that slayeth any of our blood, but he shal die for it; therfore, and thou list to fight, goe seeke sir Launcelot or sir Tristram, and there shall yee find your matches." "With them have I met," said sir Palomides, "but I had never no worship of them." "Was there never no manner knight," said sir Ector, "but they that ever matched with you?" "Yes," said sir Palomides, "there was the third, a good knight as any of them, and of his age hee was the best that ever I found; for and hee might have lived till that he had beene an hardier man, there liveth no knight now such, and his name was sir Lamoracke de Galis. And as he had justed at a turnament there, hee overthrew me and thirtie knights

moe, and there hee wanne the degree. And at his departing there met him sir Gawaine and his bretheren, and with great paine they slew him feloniously, unto all good knights great dammage." And when sir Percival heard that his brother sir Lamoracke was dead, hee fell over his horse mane in a sownd, and there hee made the most greatest dole that ever made knight. And when sir Percival arose up, hee said, "Alas! my good and noble brother sir Lamoracke, now shall wee never meete together; I trow in all the wide world a man might not find such a knight as hee was of his age. And it is too much to suffer the death of our father king Pellinore, and now the death of our good brother sir Lamoracke." Then in the meane while there came a varlet from king Arthurs court, and told them of the great turnament that should be at Lonazep, and how these lands of Cornewaile and Northwailes should bee against all them that should come.

CHAP. CXL.—How sir Tristram met with sir Dinadan, and of their devises, and what he said unto sir Gawaines bretheren.



NOW turne we unto sir Tristram, that as hee rode on hunting hee met with sir Dinadan, that was come into that countrey for to seeke sir Tristram. Then sir Dinadan told sir Tristram his name, but sir Tristram would not tell his name; wherefore sir Dinadan was wroth. "For such a foolish knight as yee are," said sir Dinadan, "I saw but late to day lying by a well, and he fared as hee had slept, and there he lay like a foole gerning[1] and would not speake, and his shield lay by him, and his horse stode by him, and well I wot he was a lover." "Ah, faire sir," said sir Tristram, "are yee not a lover?" "Mary, fie upon that craft," said sir Dinadan. "That is evill said," quoth sir Tristram, "for a knight may never bee of prowesse, but if

[1] *Gerning.*—i. e. grinning. *Grymmynge,* Caxton.

hee bee a lover." "It is well said," quoth sir Dinadan; "now tell mee your name, sith ye be a lover, or else I shall doe battaile with you." "As for that," said sir Tristram, "it is no reason to fight with mee but[1] I tell you my name; as for that, my name shall yee not know as at this time." "Fie for shame," said sir Dinadan, "art thou a knight and darest not tell me thy name? therefore I will fight with thee." "As for that," said sir Tristram, "I will be advised, for I will not fight but if me list; and if I doe battaile," said sir Tristram, "yee are not able for to withstand mee." "Fie on thee, coward," said sir Dinadan. And thus as they still hoved, they saw a knight come riding against them. "Loe," said sir Tristram, "see where cometh a knight riding that will just with you." Anon, as sir Dinadan beheld him, he said, "It is the same doting knight that I saw lye by the well neither sleeping nor waking." "Well," said sir Tristram, "I know that knight full well with the covered shield of asure; he is the kings sonne of Northumberland, whose name is sir Epinogris, and he is as great a lover as I know, and hee loveth the kings daughter of Wales, a faire lady; and now I suppose," said sir Tristram, "and ye require him, hee will just with you, and then shall yee prove whether a lover be a better knight or yee, that will not love no lady." "Well," said sir Dinadan, "now shalt thou see what I shall doe." And therewith sir Dinadan spake on hie and said, "Sir knight, make thee ready to just with me, for it is the custome of all arraunt knights one for to just with another." "Sir," said sir Epinogris, "is that the rule of you arraunt knights for to make a knight to just whether he will or not? then, sir Dinadan, as for that, make thee ready, for heere is for mee." And therewith they spurred their horses, and met together so hard that sir Epinogris smote downe sir Dinadan. Then sir Tristram rode to sir Dinadan, and said to him, "How is it with you now? me thinketh that

[1] *But.*—Unless.

the lover hath right well sped." "Fie upon thee, coward," said sir Dinadan, "and if thou be any good knight, now revenge my shame." "Nay," said sir Tristram, "I will not just as at this time, but take your horse and let us goe from hence." "God defend me," said sir Dinadan, "from thy fellowship, for I never sped well sith I met with thee." And so they departed. "Well," said sir Tristram, "peradventure I could tell you tidings of sir Tristram." "God defend me," said sir Dinadan, "from thy fellowship, for sir Tristram were much the worse and hee were in thy company." And then they departed. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "yet it may happen that I shall meete with you in other places." And so sir Tristram rode unto Joyousgard, and there heard in that towne great noise and crie. "What meaneth these noise?" said sir Tristram. "Sir," said they, "heere is a knight of this castle which hath beene long among us, and right now he is slaine with two knights, and for none other cause but that our knight said that sir Launcelot was a better knight then was sir Gawaine." "That was but a simple cause," said sir Tristram, "to slay a good knight because he said well by his master." "That is but a little remedy unto us," said the men of the towne; "for if sir Launcelot had beene heere, soone we should have beene revenged upon those false knights." When sir Tristram heard them say so, incontinent hee sent for his shield and for his speare, and lightly within a little while he had overtaken them, and bad them turne and amend that they had misdone. "What amends wouldst thou have?" said that one knight. And therewith they tooke their course, and either met other so hard, that sir Tristram smote downe that knight over his horse croupe. Then the other knight dressed him unto sir Tristram, and in the same wise as he served the first knight, so hee served him. And then they gate them upon their feete as well as they might, and dressed their shields and their swords to doe their battaile unto the uttermost. "Knights," said sir

Tristram, "yee shall tell mee of whence yee are and what bee your names; for such men yee might bee, yee should hard escape my hands, and yee might bee such men ot such a countrey that for all your evill deeds ye should passe quite." "Wit thou well, sir knight," said they, "wee feare us not to tell thee our names, for my name is sir Agravaine le Desirous, and my name is sir Gaheris, brother unto the good knight sir Gawaine, and we be nephewes unto the noble king Arthur." "Well," said sir Tristram, "for king Arthurs sake I shall let you passe as at this time; but it is great shame," said sir Tristram, "that sir Gawaine and ye, that be come of a great blood, that yee foure brethren are so named as yee bee, for yee be called the greatest destroyers and murtherers of good knights that bee now in all this realme; for it is but late agone (as I heard say) that sir Gawaine and yee slew among you a better knight than ever yee were, which was the noble knight sir Lamoracke de Galis; and it had pleased God," said sir Tristram, "I would I had beene by sir Lamoracke at his death." "Then shouldest thou have gone the same way as hee did," said sir Gaheris. "Faire knights," said sir Tristram, "then had it beene need to have been many moe knights than yee are." And therewith sir Tristram departed from them, and rode toward Joyous-gard. And so when he was departed, they tooke their horses, and said the one to the other, "Wee will overtake him and be revenged upon him in the despite of sir Lamoracke."

CHAP. CXLI.—How sir Tristram smote downe sir Agravaine and sir Gaheris, and how sir Dinadan was sent for by the queene La beale Isoud.


SO when they had overtaken sir Tristram, sir Agravaine bad him "turne, traitour knight." "That is evill said," quoth sir Tristram; and he therewith drew out his sword and smote sir

Agravaine such a mightie buffet upon the helme that he tumbled downe from his horse in a sowne, and had a grievous wound. And then sir Tristram turned him unto sir Gaheris, and he smote his sword and his helme together with such a might that sir Gaheris fell out of his saddle. And so sir Tristram rode straight unto Joyous-gard, and there he alighted and unarmed him. So sir Tristram told La beale Isoud of all his adventures, as yee have heard before. And when shee heard him tell of sir Dinadan, shee said, "Is not that hee that made the song by king Marke?" "That same is he," said sir Tristram, "for hee is of all men the best bourder and japer, and is also a good knight of his hands, and the best fellow that I know, and all good knights love his fellowship." "Alas," said shee, "why brought yee not him with you?" "Have yee no care," said sir Tristram, "for he rideth for to seeke mee in this countrey; and therefore hee will not away till that he hath met with mee." And there sir Tristram told La beale Isoud how sir Dinadan held against all lovers. And even so there came in a varlet and told sir Tristram how there was come in an arrant knight into the towne with such colours upon his shield. "That is sir Dinadan," said sir Tristram; "wot yee what yee shall doe," said sir Tristram, "send yee for him, my lady Isoud, and I will not bee seene, and yee shall heare the meriest knight that ever yee spake withall, and the maddest talker, and I pray you heartily that yee make him good cheere." Then anon La beale Isoud sent into the towne, and prayed sir Dinadan that hee would come into the castle and rest him there with a lady. "With a good will," said sir Dinadan; and so he mounted upon his horse, and rode into the castle; and there hee alighted, and was unarmed and brought into the castle. Anon La beale Isoud came unto him, and either saluted other. Then she asked him of whence he was. "Madame," said sir Dinadan, "I am of king Arthurs court, and knight of the round table, and my name is sir Dinadan." "What

doe yee in this countrey?" said La beale Isoud. "Madame," said hee, "I seeke the noble knight sir Tristram, for it was told me that he was in this countrey." "It may well bee," said La beale Isoud, "but I am not ware of him." "Madame," said sir Dinadan, "I mervaile of sir Tristram and moe other lovers, what ayleth them to be so mad and so assotted upon women." "Why," said La beale Isoud, "are yee a knight and bee yee no lover? it is shame unto you; wherefore yee may not bee called a good knight, but if that yee make a quarrell for a lady." "God defend mee," said sir Dinadan, "for the joy of love is to short, and the sorrow and what commeth thereof endureth over long." "Ah!" said La beale Isoud, "say yee not so, for heere fast by was the good knight sir Bleoberis, which fought with three knights at once for a damosels sake, and hee wanne her before the king of Northumberland." "It was so," said sir Dinadan, "for I know him well for a good knight and a noble, and come of noble blood; for all bee noble knights of whom hee is come of, that is sir Launcelot du Lake." "Now I pray you," said La beale Isoud, "tell me wil ye fight for my love with three knights that done mee great wrong? and in so much as yee be a knight of king Arthurs court, I require you to doe battaile for me." Then sir Dinadan said, "I shall say unto you, yee are as faire a lady as ever I saw any, and much fairer then is my lady queene Guenever; but wit yee well at one word that I will not fight for you with three knights, Jesu defend mee." Then La beale Isoud laughed and had good game at him; so he had all the cheere that shee might make him, and there he lay all that night. And on the morrow earely sir Tristram armed him, and La beale Isoud gave him a good helme; and then he promised her that hee would meete with sir Dinadan, and they two would ride together unto Lonazep, where the turnament should be; "and there shall I make ready for you, where yee shall see the turnament." Then departed sir Tristram with two

squires that beare his shield and his speares, which were great and long.

CHAP. CXLII.—How sir Dinadan met with sir Tristram, and how, with justing with sir Palomides, sir Dinadan knew him.

THEN after that sir Dinadan departed, and rode his way a great pace till hee had overtaken sir Tristram; and when sir Dinadan had overtaken him, he knew him anon, and hated the fellowship of him above all other knights. "Ah!" said sir Dinadan, "art thou that coward knight which I met with yesterday? keepe thee, for thou shalt just with me maugre thy head." "Well," said sir Tristram, "and I am loath to just." And so they let their horses runne, and sir Tristram missed of him wilfully, and sir Dinadan brake his speare upon sir Tristram. And therewith sir Dinadan began to draw out his sword. "Not so," said sir Tristram; "why are yee so wroth? I will not fight." "Fie on thee, coward," said sir Dinadan, "thou shamest all knights." "As for that," said sir Tristram, "I care not, for I will waite upon you and bee under your protection, for because yee are so good a knight yee may save mee." "The divell deliver me of thee!" said sir Dinadan, "for thou art as goodly a man of armes and of thy person as ever I saw, and the most coward that ever I saw; what wilt thou doe with those great speares that thou cariest with thee?" "I shall give them," said sir Tristram, "to some good knight when I come to the turnament, and if I see you doe best, I shall give them to you." So thus as they rode talking, they saw where came a knight arraunt before them dressing him for to just. "Loe," said sir Tristram, "yonder is one will just; now dresse thee to him." "A! shame betide thee!" said sir Dinadan. "Nay, not so," said sir Tristram, "for that knight seemeth a shrew." "Then shall I," said sir Dinadan. And so they

dressed their shields and their speares, and they met together so hard that the other knight smote downe sir Dinadan from his horse. "Loe," said sir Tristram, "it had beene better that yee had left." "Fie on thee, coward!" said sir Dinadan. Then sir Dinadan start up, and gate his sword in his hand, and proffered to doe battaile on foote. "Whether in love or in wrath?" said the other knight. "Let us doe battaile in love," said sir Dinadan. "What is your name?" said that knight, "I pray you tell mee." "Wit yee well my name is sir Dinadan." "Ah, sir Dinadan," said that knight, "and my name is sir Gareth, the yongest brother unto sir Gawaine." Then either made of other great joy, for this sir Gareth was the best knight of all those bretheren, and he prooved a full good knight. Then they tooke their horses, and there they spake of sir Tristram, how he was such a coward. And every word sir Tristram heard and laugh them to scorn. Then were they ware where there came a knight before them well horsed and well armed. "Faire knights," said sir Tristram, "looke betweene you who shall just with yonder knight, for I warne you I will not have to doe with him." "Then shall I," said sir Gareth. And so they encountred together, and there that knight smote downe sir Gareth over his horse croupe. "How now?" said sir Tristram unto sir Dinadan, "dresse thee now and revenge the good knight sir Gareth." "That shall I not," said sir Dinadan, "for hee hath stricken downe a much bigger knight then I am." "A!" said sir Tristram, "now, sir Dinadan, I see and perceive full well that your heart faileth you, therefore now shall yee see what I shall doe." And then sir Tristram hurled unto that knight, and smote him quite from his horse. And when sir Dinadan saw that, hee mervailed greatly, and then hee deemed in himselfe that it was sir Tristram. Then the knight that was on foote dressed his shield and drew out his sword for to doe battaile. "What is your name?" said sir Tristram. "Wit you well," said the knight, "my name is sir Palo-

mides." "What knight hate ye most?" said sir Tristram. "Sir knight," said hee, "I hate sir Tristram to the death, for and I may meete with him the one of us shall die." "Yee say well," said sir Tristram, "and wit yee well that I am sir Tristram de Liones, and now doe your worst." When sir Palomides heard him say so, hee was astonied, and then hee said thus: "I pray you, sir Tristram, forgive mee mine evill will, and if I live I shall doe you service above all other knights that be living; and there as I have owed you evill will, me sore repenteth, I wot not what aileth mee, for mee seemeth that yee are a good knight, and none other knight that nameth himselfe a good knight should not hate you; therefore I require you and pray you, sir Tristram, take no displeasure at mine unkind words." "Sir Palomides," said sir Tristram, "ye say well, and well I wot ye are a good knight, for I have seene you prooved, and many great enterprises have yee taken upon you, and well have yee achieved them; therefore," said sir Tristram, "if ye have to me evill will, ye may right it, for I am ready at your hand." "Not so, my lord sir Tristram, I will doe you knightly service in all things as ye will commande me." "And so will I take you," said sir Tristram. And so they rode foorth on their way, talking of many things. "O my lord sir Tristram," said sir Dinadan, "foule have ye mocked me; for God knoweth I came into this countrey for your sake, and by the advise of my lord sir Launcelot, and yet would not sir Launcelot tell me the certaine of you, where I should find you." "Truly," said sir Tristram, "sir Launcelot wist well enough where I was, for I abode within his owne castle of Joyous-gard."

CHAP. CXLIII.—How they approached the castle of Lonazep, and of other devises of the death of sir Lamoracke.



HUS they rode untill they were ware of the castle of Lonazep,[1] and than were they ware of foure hundred tents and pavilions and mervailous great ordinance. "So God me helpe," said sir Tristram, "yonder I see the greatest ordeinance that ever I saw." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "me seemeth there was as great an ordinance at the castle of Maidens upon the roch, where yee wanne the price, for I saw my selfe where yee forejusted thirtie knights." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "and in Surluse, at that turneyment that sir Galahalt of the long iles made, the which lasted seven daies, was as great a gathering as is here, for there were many nations." "Who was the best?" said sir Tristram. "Sir, it was sir Launcelot du Lake and the noble knight sir Lamoracke de Galis; sir Launcelot wanne the degree." "I doubt not," said sir Tristram, "but he wan the degree, so that he had not beene overmatched with many knights. And of the death of sir Lamoracke," said sir Tristram, "it was over great pitie, for I dare say that hee was the cleanest mighted man and the best winded of his age that was on live, for I knew him that hee was the biggest knight that ever I met withall, but if it were sir Launcelot. Alas!" said sir Tristram, "full woe is me of his death, and, if they were all the cosins of my lord king Arthur that slew him, they should die for it, and all those that were consenting to his death. And for such things," said sir Tristram, "I feare to draw unto the court of my lord king Arthur. I will that yee wit it," said sir Tristram to sir Gareth. "Sir, I blame you not," said sir Gareth, "for wel I understand the vengeance of my brethren sir Gawaine, sir Agravaine, sir Gaheris, and sir Mordred; but for me," said Gareth,

[1] *Lonazep.*—It would appear by the narrative that Lonazep was at no great distance from Joyous-gard.

"I meddle not of their matters, therefore there is none of them that loveth me, and for I understand they be murtherers of good knights I left their company, and would God I had beene by," said sir Gareth, "when the noble knight sir Lamoracke was slaine." "Now as Jesu be my helpe," said sir Tristram, "it is well said of you, for I had leaver then all the gold betweene this and Rome I had beene there." "Truly," said sir Palomides, "I would I had beene there, and yet I had never the degree at no justs there as he was, but hee put mee to the worse on foote or on horsbacke, and that day that he was slaine he did the most deeds of armes the ever I saw knight doe all the daies of my life. And when the degree was given him by my lord king Arthur, sir Gawaine and his three bretheren, sir Agravaine, sir Gaheris, and sir Mordred, set upon sir Lamoracke in a privy place, and there they slew his horse, and so they fought with him on foote more then three houres, both before him and behind him. And sir Mordred gave him his death wound behind him at his backe, and all to-hewed him; for one of his squires told me that saw it." "Fie upon treason," said sir Tristram, "for it killeth my heart to heere this tale." "So doth it mine," said sir Gareth; "bretheren as they bee mine, I shall never love them nor draw me to their fellowship for that deed." "Now speake wee of other deeds," said sir Palomides, "and let him bee, for his life yee may not get againe." "That is the more pitty," said sir Dinadan, "for sir Gawaine and his bretheren (except you sir Gareth) hate all the good knights of the round table for the most part; for well I wote, and they might prively, they hate my lord sir Launcelot and all his kinne, and great privie despite they have at him, and that is my lord sir Launcelot well ware of, and that causeth him to have the good knights of his kinred about him."

CHAP. CXLIV.—How they came to Humber banke, and how they found there a ship, in which ship lay the dead body of king Hermance.

SIR," said sir Palomides, "let us leave off this matter, and let us see how we shall doe at this turneyment. By mine advise," said sir Palomides, "let us foure hold together against all that will come." "Not by my counsell," said sir Tristram, "for I see by their pavilions there will be foure hundred knights, and doubt yee not but there will bee many good knights, and bee he never so valiaunt and big, yet hee may bee overmatched, and so have I seene full oft, yea when they wend best to have wonne worship they lost it; for manhood is nought worth but if it bee medled[1] with wisdome, and as for mee, it may happen I shall keepe my head as well as another." Thus they rode till they came to Humber banke, where they heard a doleful crie. Then were they ware in the wind where came a rich vessell covered over with red silke, and the vessell landed fast by them. Therewith sir Tristram and his company alighted; so sir Tristram went before into the vessell. When he came within, he saw a faire bed richly covered, and thereupon lay a seemely dead knight, all armed save the head, all bebled[2] with deadly wounds upon him, which seemed to bee a passing good knight. "How may this bee," said sir Tristram, "that this knight is thus slaine?" Then hee was ware of a letter in the dead knights hand. "Masters mariners," said he, "what meaneth that letter?" "Sir," said they, "in that letter yee shall here and know how he was slaine, and of what cause, and what was his name. But wit yee well, no man shall take that letter and read it but if he be a good knight, and that hee will faithfully promise to revenge his death, else shall there no knight see that letter

[1] *Medled.*—Mixed.

[2] *Bebled.*—Covered with blood; bloody.

open." "Wit ye well," said sir Tristram, "we may revenge his death as well as others; and if it bee as yee say, it shall bee revenged." And therewith sir Tristram tooke the letter out of the knights hand, and it said thus: "Hermance, king and lord of the red citie, I send to all knights arraunt recommendation, and unto you, noble knights of king Arthurs court, I beseech them all among them to find one knight that will fight for my sake with two brethren, that I brought up of nought, and feloniously and traitourously they have slaine mee, wherefore I beseech one good knight to revenge my death; and hee that revengeth my death, I will that hee have my red citie and all my castels." "Sir," said the mariners, "wit yee well that this king and knight that here lyeth was a right worshipfull man, and of full great prowesse, and ful well he loved all manner of knights arraunt." "So God me helpe," said sir Tristram, "here is a piteous case, and full faine I would take this enterprise upon mee, but I have made such a promise, that needs I must be at this great turneyment or else I am shamed. For wel I wot for my sake my lord king Arthur let make these justs and turneyment in this countrey; and well I wot that many worshipfull estates will bee at that turneyment for to see mee. Therefore I feare me for to take this enterprise upon me, that I shall not come againe be times of these justs."

"Sir," said sir Palomides, "I pray you give me this enterprise, and yee shall see me atchieve it worshipfully, or else I shall die in this quarrell." "Well," said sir Tristram, "and this enterprise I give you, with this that yee bee with me at this turneyment that shall be as at this day seven dayes." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I promise you that I shall be with you at that day, if I bee unslaine or unmaimed."

CHAP. CXLV.—How sir Tristram with his fellowship came and were with an hoost, which after fought with sir Tristram, and of other matters.

AND then departed sir Tristram, sir Gareth, and sir Dinadan, and left sir Palomides in the vessell, and so sir Tristram beheld the marriners how they sayled overlong[1] Humber. And when sir Palomides was out of their sight, they tooke their horses, and beheld about them, and then were they ware of a knight that came riding against them unarmed, and nothing about him but a sword, and when this knight came nigh them he saluted them, and they him againe. "Faire knights," said that knight, "I pray you in so much as yee are knights arraunt, that yee will come and see my castle, and take such as yee find there, I pray you heartily." And so they rode with him to his castle; and there they were brought to the hall, that was well apparaled, and so they were unarmed and set at a bord. And when this knight saw sir Tristram, anon he knew him; and then this knight waxed pale and wroth at sir Tristram. When sir Tristram saw his hoost make such cheere, he marvailed greatly, and said, "Sir, mine hoost, what cheere make yee?" "Wit thou well," said he, "I fare much the worse for thee; for I know thee well, sir Tristram de Liones, thou slew my brother, and therefore I give thee summons that I will sley thee and I may get thee at large." "Sir knight," said sir Tristram, "I am not advised that ever I slew any brother of yours; and if yee say that I did it, I will make you amends unto my power." "I will none of your amends," said the knight, "but keepe thee from me." So when hee had dined, sir Tristram asked his armes and departed; and so they rode forth on their way. And within a little while sir Dinadan saw where came a knight riding all armed and well horsed without shield. "Sir Tristram,"

[1] *Overlong.*—A not very common word, but apparently equivalent to along over, or perhaps simply to along.

said sir Dinadan, "take heede to your selfe, for I undertake that yonder commeth your hoost that will have to doe with you." "Let him come," said sir Tristram, "I shal abide him as well as I may." Anon that knight when he came nigh sir Tristram he cried to him, and bad him abide and keepe him well. So they hurled together, but sir Tristram smote the other knight so sore that he bare him to the ground. And that knight arose lightly, and tooke his horse againe, and so rode fiersly to sir Tristram and smote him twice full hard upon the helme. "Sir knight," said sir Tristram, "I pray you to leave off and smite me no more, for I would bee loath to deale with you and I might choose, for I have your meate and your drinke within my body." For al that hee would not leave; and then sir Tristram gave him such a buffet upon the helme that he tumbled upside downe from his horse, that the blood brast out at the ventailes of his helme; and there hee lay still likely to have died. Then sir Tristram said, "Mee repenteth sore of this buffet that I smote so sore, for, as I suppose, he is dead." And so they departed and rode forth on their way. So they had not riden but a while but they saw comming against them two full likely knights, well armed and horsed, and goodly servants about them. The one was sir Berraunt le Apres,[1] and he was called the king with the hundred knights, and that other was sir Segwarides, which were renowmed[2] two noble knights. So as they came either by other, the king looked upon sir Dinadan, which at that time had sir Tristrams helme upon his shoulder, which helme the king had seene before with the queene of Northwales, and that queene the king loved as paramour, and that helme the queene of Northwales had given unto La beale Isoud, and the queene La beale Isoud gave it unto sir Tristram. "Sir knight," said sir Berraunt, "where had ye that helme?"

[1] *Sir Berraunt le Apres.—Berraunce*, and *Berraunt*, Caxton. On the king with the hundred knights, see before, vol. i. p. 15.

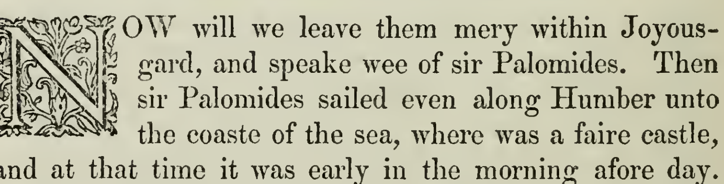
[2] *Renowmed.*—The old form of renowned; Fr. *renommé*.

"What would you therewith?" said sir Dinadan. "For I will have to doe with thee," said the king, "for the love of her that owed that helme, and therefore keepe thee." So they departed, and came together with all the might that their horses could runne, and so the king with the hundred knights smote sir Dinadan horse and all to the earth. And then hee commanded his servant to goe and take the helme off, and keepe it, and so the varlet went and unbuckled his helme. "What wilt thou doe?" said sir Tristram; "leave that helme." "To what entent," said the king, "will ye meddle, sir knight, with that helme?" "Wit ye well," said sir Tristram, "that helme shall not depart from mee or that it be dearer bought." "Then make you ready to just with mee," said sir Berraunt to sir Tristram. So they hurled together, and there sir Tristram smote him downe over his horse taile. And then the king arose lightly, and gat his horse againe lightly, and then he strooke fiersly at sir Tristram many sad strookes, and then sir Tristram gave sir Berraunt such a buffet upon the helme that he fel downe over his horse sore astonied.[1] "Lo," said sir Dinadan, "that helme is unhappie to us twaine, for I had a fall for it, and now, sir king, ye have another fall." Then sir Segwarides asked, "Who shall just with me?" "I pray thee," said sir Gareth to sir Dinadan, "let mee have this justs." "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "I pray you take it as for me." "That is no reason," said sir Tristram, "for this justs should bee yours." "At a word," said sir Dinadan, "I will non thereof." Then sir Gareth dressed him to sir Segwarides, and there sir Segwarides smote sir Gareth, that horse and man fell to the earth. "Now," said sir Tristram to sir Dinadan, "just with yonder knight." "I will not meddle," said sir Dinadan. "Then will I," said sir Tristram. And then sir Tristram ranne to him and gave him a fall, and so they left them on foote. And sir Tristram rode unto Joyous-gard, and there sir Gareth

[1] *Astonied.*—Stunned.

would not of his curtesie have gone into the castle, but sir Tristram would not suffer him to depart; and so they alighted, and unarmed them, and had there great cheere. But when sir Dinadan came afore La beale Isoud, hee cursed the time that ever he bare the helme of sir Tristram, and there hee told her how sir Tristram had mocked him. Then was there good laughing and sport at sir Dinadan, that they wist not what to doe to keepe them from laughing.

CHAP. CXLVI.—How sir Palomides went for to fight with two brethren for the death of king Hermaunce.



NOW will we leave them mery within Joyousgard, and speake wee of sir Palomides. Then sir Palomides sailed even along Humber unto the coaste of the sea, where was a faire castle, and at that time it was early in the morning afore day. Then the mariners went unto sir Palomides, that was fast on sleepe: "Sir knight," said the mariners, "yee must arise, for here is a castle into the which ye must goe." "I assent me therto," said sir Palomides. And therewithall hee arived; and then he blew his horne, the which the mariners had given him. And when they that were within the castle heard that horne, they put foorth many knights, and there they stood upon the wals and said with one voice, "Welcome be ye to this castle." And then it waxed cleere day, and sir Palomides entred into the castle; and within a while he was well served with many divers meates; and then sir Palomides heard about him much weeping and great dole. "What may this meane?" said sir Palomides; "I love not to heare such sorrow, and faine would I know what it meaneth." So there came before him one whose name was sir Ebell, that said thus: "Wit ye well, sir knight, this dole and sorrow is here made every day, and for this cause: we had a king that hight Hermaunce, and hee was king of the red citie, and this king, that was our

lord, was a noble knight, large and liberall of his expence; and in the world hee loved no thing so much as he did arraunt knights of king Arthurs court, and all justing, hunting, and all manner of knightly games. For so kind a king and knight had never the rule of poore people as he was; and because of his goodnesse and gentylnesse we bemone him and ever shall doe; and all kings and estates may be ware of our king, for hee was destroyed in his owne default, for had he cherished them of his blood he had yet lived with great richesse and rest, but all estates may be ware by our king. But alas!" said sir Ebell, "that we shall give all other warning by his death." "Tell me," said sir Palomides, "in what manner was your lord slaine, and by whome?" "Sir," said sir Ebell, "our king brought up of children two men that now are perillous knights, and these two knights our king had in so great favour that he loved no man nor trusted no man of his blood so well, nor none other that was about him, and by these two knights our king was governed; and so they ruled him and his land peasably; and never would they suffer none of all his blood for to have any rule with our king. And also he was so free and so gentle, and they so false and deceivable, that they ruled him as they list; and that espied the lords of our kings blood, and departed from him unto their owne livelode. Then when these two traitours understood that they had driven all the lords of his blood from him, they were not pleased with that rule, but then they sought to have more, as it is ever an old law, Give a churle rule, he will not therewith be sufficed. For whatsoever he be that is ruled by a vilaine borne, and the lord of the soile to be a gentleman borne, that same vilaine will destroy all the gentlemen about him. Therefore all estates and lords be well ware whome ye take about you. And if yee be a knight of king Arthurs court, remember this tale, for this is the end and conclusion. My lord and king rode unto the forrest by the advise of these false traitours, and there he

chased at the red dere, all armed of all peces, full like a good knight; and so for labour hee waxed dry, and then hee alighted and dranke at a well. And when hee was alighted, by the assent of these two false traitours, the one that hight Helius sodainly smote our king through the body with a speare, and so they left him there; and when they were departed, then by fortune I came unto the well and found my lord and king wounded unto the death; and when I heard his complaint, I let bring him to the water side, and in that same ship I put him alive. And when my lord king Hermaunce was in that vessel, he required mee for the true faith that I owed unto him for to write a letter in this manner :—

CHAP. CXLVII —The copy of the letter written for to revenge the kings death, and how sir Palomides fought for to have the battaile.

RECOMMENDING unto king Arthur and unto al the knights arraunt, beseeching them all in so much as I king Hermaunce, king of the red city, thus am slaine by fellony and treason, through two knights of mine owne, and of mine owne bringing up and of mine owne making, that some worshipfull knight will reveng my death, in so much as I have beene ever to my power well willing unto king Arthurs court; and who that will adventure his life with these two traitours for my sake in one battaile, I, king Hermaunce, king of the red citie, freely give all my lands and tenements that ever I possessed in all my life. This letter," said sir Ebell, "I wrote by my lords commandement, and then he received his maker.[1] And when he was dead, hee commanded mee, or ever he were cold, to put this leter fast in his hand; and then he commanded me to put foorth that same vessell downe Humber, and that I should give these mariners in command never to stint untill that they

[1] *Received his maker.*—i. e. received the communion.

came to Logris, where all the noble knights shall assemble at this time, and ther shall some good knight have pity upon me, and revenge my death; for there was never king falslyer nor traitorously slaine then I am heere to my death. This was the complaint of our king Hermaunce. Now," said sir Ebell, "yee know all how that our king was betrayed, wee require you for Gods sake have pitie on his death, and worshipfully reveng his death, and then may ye possesse all these lands; for we all wot well that, and yee may sley those two traitours, the red city and all that be theerin will take you for their lord." "Truly," said sir Palomides, "it grieveth my heart for to heere you tell this dolefull tale; and to say the truth, I saw the same letter that yee spake of, and one of the best knights of the world red that letter to mee; and by his command I am come hither to revenge your kings death, and therefore have done, and let me wit where I shall find those traitours, for I shall never be at my hearts ease till that I have beene in hand with them." "Sir," said sir Ebell, "then take your ship againe, and that shippe must bring you to the delectable ile, fast by the red cittie, and we that be here shall pray for you and abide your againe-comming;[1] for this same castle, and yee speede well, must needs be yours; for our king Hermaunce let make this castle for the love of the two false traitours, and so wee keepe it with strong hand, and therefore full sore are we threatned." "Wot yee what ye shall doe," said sir Palomides, "whatsoever come of me, looke that ye keepe well this castle; for and it misfortune me to bee slaine in this quest, I am sure there will come one of the best knights of the world for to revenge my death, and that is sir Tristram de Liones or else sir Launcelot du Lake." Then sir Palomides departed from the castle; and as hee came nigh unto the city, there came out of a ship a goodly knight all armed against him, with his shield upon his shoulder, and his hand upon his sword; and anon as hee

[1] *Againe-comming.*—Return.

came nigh sir Palomides, he said, "Sir knight, what seeke ye heere in this country? leave this quest for it is mine, and mine it was or it was yours, and therefore I will have it." "Sir knight," said sir Palomides, "it may well bee that this quest was yours or it was mine, but when the letter was taken out of the dead kings hand, at that time by likelyhood ther was no knight had undertaken to revenge the death of king Hermaunce; and so at that time I promise to revenge his death, and so I shall, or else I am shamed." "Ye say well," said the knight, "but wit yee well then will I fight with you, and he that is the better knight of us both let him take the battaile in hand." "I assent me," said sir Palomides. And then they dressed their shields, and drew out their swords, and lashed together many a sad strooke as men of might, and thus they fought more then an houre. And at the last sir Palomides wexed big and better winded, so that then hee smote that knight such a strooke that hee made him to kneele upon both his knees. Then that knight speake on high and said, "Gentle knight, hold thy hand." Sir Palomides was curteous and withdrew his hand. Then this knight said, "Wit ye well, sir knight, that ye be better worthy to have this battaile then I, and I require thee of thy knighthood to tell mee thy name." "Sir, my name is sir Palomides, a knight of king Arthurs court and of the round table, that hither am come to revenge the death of this dead king."

CHAP. CXLVIII.—Of the preparation of sir Palomides and the two brethren that should fight with him.

"AH, well be ye found," said the knight unto sir Palomides, "for of all knights that bee now living (except three) I had levest have you. The first is sir Launcelot du Lake, the second is sir Tristram de Liones, and the third is my nigh cosin sir Lamorake de Galis; and I am brother unto king Her-

maunce that is dead, and my name is sir Hermind." "It is well said," quoth sir Palomides, "and yee shall see how I shall speede; and if I bee there slaine, goe yee unto my lord sir Launcelot or unto my lord sir Tristram, and pray them to revenge my death, for as for sir Lamorake, him shall yee never see in this world." "Alas!" said sir Hermind, "how may that be?" "He is slaine," said sir Palomides, "by sir Gawaine and his bretheren." "So God me helpe," said sir Hermind, "there was not one for one that slew him." "That is truth," said sir Palomides, "for they were foure dangerous knights that slew him, as sir Gawaine, sir Agravaine, sir Gaheris, and sir Mordred, but sir Gareth the fift brother was not there, which is the best knight of them al." And so sir Palomides told sir Hermind all the manner, and how they slew sir Lamorake all only by treason. So sir Palomides tooke his ship, and arived up at the delectable ile. And in the meane while sir Hermind, the kings brother, arived up at the red citie, and there he told them how there was comming a knight of king Arthurs to revenge king Hermaunce death, and his name is sir Palomides the good knight, that for the most part he followeth the beast glatisant. Then all the cittie made great joy, for much had they hard of sir Palomides, and of his noble prowesse. So they let ordaine a messenger, and sent to the two bretheren, and bad them make them ready, for there was come a knight that would fight with them both. So the messenger went unto them where they were in a castle there beside; and there hee told them how there was a knight come of king Arthurs court for to fight with them both at once. "Hee is right welcome," said they all. "But tell mee, wee pray you, if it bee sir Launcelot or any of his blood." "Hee is none of his blood," said the messenger. "Then care we the lesse," said the two bretheren, "for with none of the blood of sir Launcelot we keepe not to have to doe withall." "Wit ye well," said the messenger, "that his name is sir Palomides, the

which is not yet christned, a noble knight." "Well," said they, "and if he be now unchristned, he shall never be christned." So they appointed for to bee at the cittie within two dayes. And when sir Palomides was come unto the cittie, they made passing great joy of him. And when they beheld him, and saw that hee was well made, clenly and bigly, and unmaimed of his limmes, and neither to yong nor to old, and so al the people praised him; and though he was not christned, yet hee beleeved in the best manner, and was faithful and true of his promise, and also wel conditioned; and because hee made his avow that hee would never bee christned unto the time that he had atchieved the beast glatisant, which was a wonderfull beast and a great signification, for Merlin prophesied much of that beast; and also sir Palomides avowed never to take full christendome unto the time that he had done seven battailes within the lists. So within the third day there came to this cittie these two bretheren, the one hight sir Helius, and that other hight sir Helake, the which were men of great prowesse, how be it they were false and ful of treason, and but poore men borne, yet were they noble knights of their hands.

And with them they brought fortie knights, to the entent they should be big enough for the red cittie. Thus come the two bretheren with great bobance[1] and pride, for they had put the red cittie in feare and domage. Then they were brought unto the lists; and sir Palomides came into the place, and thus he said, "Bee yee the two bretheren, sir Helius and sir Helake, that slew your king and lord sir Hermaunce by fellony and treason, for whom I am come hither for to revenge his death?" "Wit thou well," said sir Helius and sir Helake, "that wee are the same knights which slew king Hermaunce; and wit thou well, sir Palomides, sarasin, that we shall handle thee so or thou depart, that thou shalt wish that thou were christned."

[1] *Bobance.*—Boasting. The edition of 1634 has, erroneously, *bondance.*

"It may well be," said sir Palomides, "for yet I would not die or I were christned, and yet so am I not afeard of you both. But I trust to God that I shall die a better christian man then any of you both. And doubt ye not," said sir Palomides, "either ye or I shall be left dead in this place."

CHAP. CXLIX.—Of the battaile of sir Palomides and the two bretheren, and how the two bretheren were slaine.

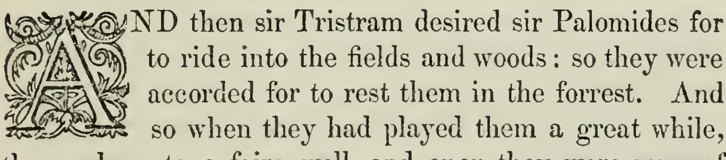
THEN they departed, and the two bretheren came against sir Palomides, and hee against them, as fast as ever their horses might runne; and by fortune sir Palomides smote sir Helake through his shield and through the brest more than a fadome. All this while sir Helius held up his speare, and for pride and presumption he would not smite sir Palomides with his speare; but when he saw his brother lye on the ground, and saw he might not helpe himselfe, then he said unto sir Palomides, "Helpe thy selfe." And therewith hee came hurling unto sir Palomides with his speare, and smote him quite from his saddle. Then Helius rode over sir Palomides two or three times, whereof sir Palomides was sore ashamed, and gat the horse of sir Helius by the bridle, and therewith the horse arered, and sir Palomides holpe after, and so they fell both to the ground; but anon sir Helius start up lightly, and smote sir Palomides a mightie strooke upon the helme, so that hee made him to fall upon one of his knees. Then they booth lashed together many sad strookes, and traced and traverced, now backward, now sideling, hurling together like two wilde boares; and that same time they fell both groveling on the earth. Thus they fought still without any resting two large houres, and never breathed them. And then sir Palomides waxed faint and weary, and sir Helius waxed passing strong, and doubled his strookes, and drove sir Palo-

mides overthwart and endlong all the field, that they of the cittie, when they saw sir Palomides in this case, they wept and cried and made a sorrowfull doale; and that other partie made great joy. "Alas," said the men of the cittie, "that this noble knight should thus be slaine for our kings sake." And as they were thus weeping and crying, sir Palomides that had endured well an hundred strookes, that it was wonder that hee stood upon his feete, and at the last sir Palomides beheld as well as hee might the common people how they wept for him. And then he said unto himselfe, "Ah, fie for shame, sir Palomides, wherefore hangest thou thy head so low?" And therewith hee beare up his shield, and looked sir Helius in the visage, and smot him a great strooke upon the helme, and after that another, and another. And then he smote sir Helius with such a might, that hee fell upon the ground groveling; and then hee start lightly to him, and rashed off his helme from his head, and there he smote him such a buffet that hee departed his head from the body. And then were the people of the cittie the joyfullest people that might bee. So they brought him unto his lodging with great solemnitie, and there all the people became his men; and then sir Palomides prayed them all for to take heede unto the lordshippe of king Hermaunce. "For, faire sirs, wit yee well, I may not at this time abide with you, for I must in all the hast be with my lord king Arthur at the castle of Lonazep, which I have promised." So then were the people full heavie of his departing; for all that cittie proffered sir Palomides the third part of their goods so that he would abide with them; but in no wise at that time hee would abide; and so sir Palomides departed. And then hee came unto the castle whereas sir Ebell was lieuetenant; and when they that were in the castle knew how sir Palomides had sped, there was a joyfull meyny.[1] And sir Palomides departed, and came to the castle of Lonazep.

[1] *Meyny.*—Household.

And when he wist that sir Tristram was not there, he tooke his way unto Humber and came unto Joyous-gard, whereas sir Tristram was and La beale Isoud. So sir Tristram had commanded that what knight arraunt came within Joyous-gard, as in the towne, that they should warne sir Tristram thereof. So there came a man from the towne, and told sir Tristram how ther was a knight in the towne that was a passing goodly knight. "What manner of man is hee?" said sir Tristram, "and what signe beareth hee?" So the man told sir Tristram all the tokens of him. "That is sir Palomides," said sir Dinadan. "It may well bee," said sir Tristram. "Goe yee to him," said sir Tristram unto sir Dinadan. So sir Dinadan went unto sir Palomides, and there either made of other great joy. And so they lay together that night, and on the morrow early came sir Tristram and sir Gareth, and there they tooke them in their beds, and so they arose and brake their fast.

CHAP. CL.—How sir Tristram and sir Palomides met with sir Breuse saunce Pittie, and how sir Tristram and La beale Isoud went to Lonazep.



AND then sir Tristram desired sir Palomides for to ride into the fields and woods: so they were accorded for to rest them in the forrest. And so when they had played them a great while, they rode unto a faire well, and anon they were ware of an armed knight that came riding against them, and there either saluted other. Then this armed knight spake unto sir Tristram, and asked him what were those knights that were lodged in Joyous-gard. "I wot not what they are," said sir Tristram. "What knights are ye?" said that knight; "for me seemeth that yee are no knights arraunt, because that yee ride unarmed." "Whether we be knights or not, we list not to tell thee our names." "Wilt thou not tell me thy name?" said that knight; "then keepe

thee, for thou shalt die of my hands." And therewith hee gat his speare in his hand, and would have runed through sir Tristram. That saw sir Palomides, and smote his horse ourthwart[1] the middest of the side, that man and horse fell to the ground. And therwithall sir Palomides alighted, and drew out his sword to have slaine him. "Let bee," said sir Tristram, "slay him not, the knight is but a foole, it were shame for to sley him; but take away his speare," said sir Tristram, "and let him take his horse and goe where he will." So when this knight arose, he groned sore of that fall, and so hee tooke his horse by the bridel. And when he was up, then he turned his horse and required sir Tristram and sir Palomides to tell him what knights they were. "Now wit yee well," said sir Tristram, "that my name is sir Tristram de Liones, and this knights name is sir Palomides." When he wist what they were, he smote his horse with the spurs because they should not aske him his name, and so rode fast away through thick and thin. Then came there by them a knight with a bended shield of asure,[2] whose name was sir Epinogris, and he came toward them a great gallop. "Whither are yee riding?" said sir Tristram. "My faire lords," said sir Epinogris, "I follow the falsest knight that now beareth life, wherefore I require your tell me if yee saw him, for he beareth a shield with a chase[3] of red over it." "So God me helpe," said sir Tristram, "such a knight departed from us not a quarter of an houre agoe; we pray you tell us his name." "Alas," said sir Epinogris, "why let yee him escape from you? and he is so great foe unto all arraunt knights, and his name is sir Breuse saunce Pittie." "A! fie for shame," said sir Palomides; "alas, that ever he escaped my hands, for he is the man in the world that I hate most." Then every knight mad great sorrow to other; and so sir Epino-

[1] *Ourthwart.*—Across. *Traverse,* Caxton.

[2] *A bended shield of asure.*—i. e. a shield, with bends, azure.

[3] *Chase.*—*Caas,* Caxton.

gris departed, and followed the chase after him. Then sir Tristram and his three fellowes rode to Joyous-gard, and there sir Palomides talked unto sir Tristram of his battaile, how he had sped at the red citie, and as yee have heard before, so was it ended. "Truly," said sir Tristram, "I am glad that yee have so well sped, for yee have done right worshipfully. Well," said sir Tristram, "wee must forward to morrow." And then he devised how it should be; and sir Tristram devised to send his two pavilions for to set them fast by the well of Lonazep, "and therein shall be the queene La beale Isoud." "It is well said," quoth sir Dinadan. But when sir Palomides heard of that, his heart was ravished out of measure, notwithstanding hee said but littell. So when they came to Joyous-gard, sir Palomides would not have gone into the castle, but as sir Tristram tooke him by the finger and led him into the castle. And when sir Palomides saw queene La beale Isoud, he was so ravished that unnethes hee might speake. So they went unto their meat; but sir Palomides might not eate, and there was all the cheare that might be had. And on the morrow they were apparaled to ride toward Lonazep. So sir Tristram had three squiers, and La beale Isoud had three gentlewomen; and so both La beale Isoud and they were richly apparalled, and other people had they none with them but varlets to beare their shields and their speares. And thus they rode forth. So as they rode, before them they saw a rowte of knights; it was the knight sir Galihodin with twentie knights with him. "Faire felowes," said sir Galihodin, "yonder cometh foure knights and a rich and a full faire lady, I am in will to take that lady from them." "That is not of the best counsaile," said one of sir Galihodins men, "but send yee to them and wit what they will say." And so it was done. So came a squire to sir Tristram, and asked them whether they would just or else leese their lady. "Not so," said sir Tristram; "tell your lord that I bid him come with as many as we be, and

winne her and take her." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "and it please you, let mee have this deed, and I shall undertake them all foure." "I wil that ye have it," said sir Tristram, "at your pleasure; now goe and tell your lord sir Galihodin that this same knight shall encountre with him and his fellowes."

CHAP. CLI.—How sir Palomides justed with sir Galihodin, and after with sir Gawaine, and smote them downe.

THEN the squire departed, and told sir Galihodin his answere. And then he dressed his shield, and put forth a speare, and sir Palomides another; and there sir Palomides smote sir Galihodin so hard, that he smote both horse and man to the earth, and there he had a great fall. And then there came another knight, and in the same wise he serveth him; and so hee served the third and the fourth, that hee smoote them over their horses croupes; and alwaies sir Palomides speare was whole. Then there came sixe knights moe of sir Galihodins men, and would have beene revenged upon sir Palomides. "Let bee," said sir Galihodin, "not so hardy none of you all to meddle with this knight, for he is a man of great bountie and honour; and if hee would, yee all were not able to medle with him." And so they held them still. And sir Palomides was alway ready to just; and when he saw they would no more, hee rode unto sir Tristram. "Right well have yee done," said sir Tristram, "and worshipfully have yee done as a good knight should doe." This sir Galihodin was nigh cosin unto sir Galahalt the haut prince, and this sir Galihodin hath beene a king within the countrey of Surluse. So as sir Tristram, sir Palomides, and La beale Isoud rode together, they saw before them foure knights, and every knight had his speare in his hand. The first was sir Gawaine, the second was sir Ewaine, the third was sir Sagra-

more le Desirous, and the fourth was sir Dodinas le Savage. When sir Palomides beheld them that they were ready to just, he prayed sir Tristram for to give him leave to have to doe with them as long as he might hold him on horsbacke, "and if I bee smitten downe I pray you revenge me." "Well," said sir Tristram, "I will as yee will, and yee are not so faine for to have worship, but I would as faine encrease your worship." And therewith sir Gawaine put forth his speare, and sir Palomides another, and so they came so egerly together that sir Palomides smote sir Gawaine to the ground horse and man; and in the same wise he served sir Ewaine, sir Dodinas, and sir Sagramore. All these foure knights sir Palomides smote downe with divers speares. And then sir Tristram departed toward Lonazep. And when they were departed, then came thither sir Galihodin, with his ten knights, unto sir Gawaine, and there hee told him all how he had sped. "I marvel me much," said sir Gawaine, "what knights they be that are so araied in greene." "And that knight upon the white horse smote me downe," said sir Galihodin, "and my three fellowes." "And so he did to mee," said sir Gawaine; "and well I wot," said sir Gawaine, "that either he that is upon the white horse is sir Tristram, or else sir Palomides, and that gay-beseene[1] lady is queene La beale Isoud." Thus they talked of one thing and of other; and in the meane while sir Tristram passed foorth on till hee came to the well where his two pavilions were set, and there they alighted, and there they saw many pavilions and great araie. Then sir Tristram left there sir Palomides and sir Gareth with La beale Isoud; and sir Tristram and sir Dinadan rode to Lonazep to heere tidings, and sir Tristram rode upon sir Palomides white horse. And when he came to the castle, sir Dinadan heard a horne blow, and by that horne drew many knights. Then sir Tristram asked a knight what ment the blast of that horne. "Sir," said

[1] *Gay-beseene.*—Gaily dressed.

that knight, "it is all those that shall hold against king Arthur at this turneyment; the first is the king of Ireland, and the king of Surluse, the king of Listnoyse, the king of Northumberland, and the king of the best part of Wales, and with many other countries; and all these draw them unto a counsaile to understand what governance they should be of." But the king of Ireland, whose name was Marhalt, and father unto the good knight sir Marhaus which sir Tristram slew, had all the speech that sir Tristram might heere it; he said, "Lords and fellowes, let us looke unto our selfe, or wit ye well that king Arthur is sure of many good knights, or else he would not with so few knights have to doe with us; therefore by my counsaile let every king have a standard and cognisance by himselfe, that every knight draw to his naturall lord, and then may every king and captaine helpe his knights, if they have need." And when sir Tristram had heard all their counsaile, he rode unto king Arthur for to heare of his counsaile.

CHAP. CLII.—How sir Tristram and his fellowship came unto the turneiment of Lonazep, and of divers other justs and matters.

BUT sir Tristram was not so soone come to the place, but sir Gawaine and sir Galihodin went unto king Arthur and told him that "the same greene knight in the greene harneis with the white horse smote us two downe and sixe of our fellowes this same day." "Well," said king Arthur. And then he called sir Tristram, and asked him what was his name. "Sir," said sir Tristram, "yee shall hold me excused as at this time, for ye shal not know my name." And then sir Tristram returned, and rode his way. "I mervaile me much," said king Arthur, "that yonder knight will not tell me his name; but goe thou, sir Griflet le fise de Dieu, and pray him to speak with me betweene us two."

Then sir Griflet rode after him, and overtooke him, and said unto him that king Arthur prayed him to speake with him secretly apart. " Upon that covenant," said sir Tristram, " I will speake with him, that I will returne againe, so that yee will ensure mee not to desire to here my name." " I shall undertake," said sir Griflet, " that hee wil not greatly desire of you." So they rode together till they came unto king Arthur. " Faire sir," said king Arthur, " what is the cause that yee will not tell mee your name ?" " Sir," said sir Tristram, " without a cause I will not hide my name." " Upon what partie will yee hold ?" said king Arthur. " Truly, my lord," said sir Tristram, " I can not tell you yet on what partie I wil be untill I come into the field, and there as my heart giveth me, there will I hold ; but to morrow yee shall see and prove on what part I shall come." And therewith he turned and went to his pavilion. And on the morrow they armed them all in greene, and came into the field, and their young knights began to just, and did many worshipfull deedes. Then spake sir Gareth unto sir Tristram, and prayed him to give him leave to break his spear, for he thought shame to beare his spere hole again. When sir Tristram heard him say so, hee laughed and said, " I pray you, doe your best." Then sir Gareth tooke his horse, and proffered to just. That saw a nephew unto the king of the hundred knights, his name was sir Selises, and a good man of armes ; so this knight sir Selises dressed him unto sir Gareth, and they two met together so hard that either smote other downe horse and all to the ground. So they were both brused and hurt, and there they lay till that the king with the hundred knights holpe sir Selises up, and sir Tristram and sir Palomides holpe up sir Gareth againe. And so they rode with sir Gareth to their pavilions, and then they unlaced his helme. And when La beale Isoud saw sir Gareth bruised in the face, shee asked him what ayled him. " Madame," said sir Gareth, " I had a great buffet, and as I suppose I gave him

another as good againe; but none of my fellowship, God thanke them, would not rescew mee." "Forsooth," said sir Palomides, "it belonged not to none of us as this day to just, for there have not this day justed no proved knights; and needs ye would just; and when the other partie saw that yee proffered your selfe to just, they sent one to you a passing good knight of his age, for I know him well, his name is sir Selises, and worshipfully yee met with him, and neither of you are dishonoured, and therefore refresh your selfe that yee may be ready and whole to just to morrow." "As for that," said sir Gareth, "I shal not faile you, and I may bestride my horse."

CHAP. CLIII.—How sir Tristram and his fellowship justed, and of the noble feates that they did in that turnement.

NOW upon what partie," said sir Tristram, "is it best we bee with as to morrow?" "Sir," said sir Palomides, "ye shal have mine advise to be against king Arthur as to morrow, for on his part will bee sir Launcelot and many good knights of his blood with him; and the more men of worship that they bee, the more worship shall we winne." "That is full knightly spoken," said sir Tristram, "and right so as yee counsaile me, so wil wee doe." "In the name of God!" said they all. So that night they were lodged with the best. And on the morrow, when it was day, they were araied in greene trappours, shields, and speares, and La beale Isoud was in the same colour, and her three damosells. And right so these foure knights came into the field endlong and through. And so they led La beale Isoud where shee should stand and behould all the justs in a bay window; but alway she was bewimpled that no man might see her visage. And then these three knights rode straight unto the partie of the king of Scotland. When king Arthur had seene them doe all this, he asked sir Launcelot

what were those knights and that queene. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "I can not shew you no certaintie, but if sir Tristram or sir Palomides be in this countrey, wit yee well of a certaine it beene they and La beale Isoud." Then king Arthur called sir Kay, and said, "Go and wit how many knights there be heere lacking of the round table, for by the sieges thou mayest know." So sir Kay went, and saw by the writing in the sieges that there lacked ten knights, and these be their names that be noted heere: sir Tristram, sir Palomides, sir Percivale, sir Gaheris, sir Epinogris, sir Mordred, sir Dinadan, sir La-cote-maile-taile, and sir Pelleas the noble knight. "Well," said king Arthur, "some of these I dare undertak are here this day against us." Then come there two bretheren, cosins unto sir Gawaine, that one hight sir Edward, and that other hight sir Sadocke, the which were two good knights. And they asked of king Arthur that they might have the first justs, for they were of Orkeney. "I am pleased," said king Arthur. Then sir Edward encountred with the king of Scots, on whose part was sir Tristram and sir Palomides; and sir Edward smote the king of Scots quite from his horse. And sir Sadock smote down the king of North-wales, and gave him a wonderous great fall, so that there was a great crie on king Arthurs part, and made sir Palomides passing wroth. And so sir Palomides dressed his shield and his speare, and with all his might he met with sir Edward of Orkeney, that hee smote him so hard that his horse might not stand on his feete, and so both his horse and he fell to the ground; and then with the same spear sir Palomides smot down sir Sadock over his horse croup. "O Jesus!" said king Arthur, "what knight is that arayd al in greene? he hath justed ful mightily." "Wit ye well," said sir Gawaine, "hee is a good knight, and yet shall yee see him just better or hee depart; and yet shall yee see," said sir Gawaine, "another bigger knight in the same colour then he is; for that same knight,"

said sir Gawaine, "that smote downe right now my two cosins, hee smote mee downe within these two dayes, and seaven of my fellowes moe." This meane while as they stood thus talking, there came into the place sir Tristram upon a black horse, and or ever hee stinted hee smote downe with one spear foure good knights of Orkeney, which were of the kin of sir Gawaine; and sir Gareth and sir Dinadan every each of them smote downe a good knight. "O Jesu!" said king Arthur, "yonder knight which rideth upon the blacke horse doeth mervailously well." "Abide you," said sir Gawaine, "that knight with the blacke horse began not yet." Then sir Tristram made to be set on horsbacke againe those two knights which sir Edward and sir Sadocke had unhorsed at the beginning. And then sir Tristram drew out his sword, and rode into the thickest of the presse against them of Orkeney, and there he smote downe many knights, and rashed off helmes, and pulled away their shields, and hurled downe many knights. He fared so that king Arthur and all other knights had great mervaile when they saw one knight doe so great deeds of armes. And sir Palomides failed not to doe his part on the other side, but did so mervailously well, that all men had wonder of him. And there king Arthur likned[1] sir Tristram, which rode at that time upon a blacke horse, like unto a wood lion; and he likned sir Palomides, that rode upon a white horse, unto a wood libbard;[2] and hee likned sir Gareth and sir Dinadan unto two eger wolves. But the custome was such among them, that none of the kings would helpe other; but all the fellowship of every standard to helpe other as they might. But ever sir Tristram did so many deeds of armes that they of Orkeney waxed weary of him, and so withdrew them unto Lonazep.

[1] *Likned.*—Compared. [2] *Libbard.*—A leopard.

CHAP. CLIV.—How sir Tristram was unhorsed and smitten downe by sir Launcelot, and after that sir Tristram smote downe king Arthur.

THEN was the crie of heraulds and all manner of common people, the greene knights had done right mervailously, and beaten all them of Orkeney. And there the heraulds numbred that sir Tristram, that sate upon the blacke horse, had smiten downe with speares and swords thirtie knights, and sir Palomides had smitten downe twenty knights ; and the most part of those fiftie knights were of the house of king Arthur, and proved knights. "So God me helpe," said king Arthur unto sir Launcelot, "this is a great shame to us to see foure knights to beate so many knights of mine, and therefore make you ready, for wee will have to doe with them." "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "wit yee well that there are two passing good knights, and great worship were it not to us now to have to doe with them, for they have this day sore travailed." "As for that," said king Arthur, "I will be revenged, and therefore take with you sir Bleoberis and sir Ector, and I will be the fourth," said king Arthur. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "ye shall find me ready, and my brother sir Ector, and my cosin sir Bleoberis." And when they were ready and on horsbacke, "Now choose," said king Arthur unto sir Launcelot, "with whom yee will encounter withall." "I will meete with the greene knight upon the blacke horse," that was sir Tristram, "and my cosin sir Bleoberis shall matche the greene knight upon the white horse," that was sir Palomides, "and my brother sir Ector shall match with the greene knight upon the white horse," that was sir Gareth. "Then must I," said king Arthur, "have to doe with the grene knight upon the grisild[1] horse," and that was sir Dinadan. "Now let every man take heede to his fellow," said sir Launcelot. And so they trotted forth together: and there encountred

[1] *Grisild.*—Grey.

sir Launcelot against sir Tristram, so that sir Launcelot smote sir Tristram so sore upon the shield that hee beare horse and man to the ground. But sir Launcelot wend it had beene sir Palomides, and so he passed forth. And then sir Bleoberis encountred with sir Palomides, and he smote him so hard upon the shield that sir Palomides and his white horse tumbled to the ground. Then sir Ector de Maris smote sir Gareth so hard that downe hee fell from his horse. And then king Arthur encountered with sir Dinadan, and hee smote him quite from his sadell, that hee fell downe to the earth. And then the noise turned a while how that the greene knights were slaine. When the king of Northgalis saw that sir Tristram had a fall, then hee remembred him how great deeds of armes sir Tristram had done; then hee made ready many knights, for the custome and crie was such, that what knight were smitten downe and might not be horsed againe by his fellowes or by his owne strength, that as that day he should be prisoner unto the partie that had smitten him downe. So came the king of Northgalis, and hee rode straight unto sir Tristram; and when hee came nigh him, hee alighted downe sodainly, and he tooke sir Tristram his horse, and said thus: "Noble knight, I know thee not of what countrey thou art, but for the noble deeds that thou hast done this day, take there my horse and let me doe as well as I may; for, as Jesu helpe me, thou art better worthy to have my horse then my selfe." "Gramercy," said sir Tristram, "and if I may I shall quite it you; looke that yee goe not farre from me, and, as I suppose, I shall winne you another horse." And therewith sir Tristram mounted upon his horse; and there he met with king Arthur, and hee gave him such a buffet upon the helme with his sword that king Arthur had no power to keepe his sadell; and then sir Tristram gave the king of Northgalis king Arthurs horse. Then was there great presse about king Arthur for to horse him againe; but sir Palomides would not suffer king Arthur

to bee horsed againe, but ever sir Palomides smote on the right hand and on the left hand mightely as a noble knight. And in the meane while sir Tristram rode through the thickest of the presse, and smote downe knights on the right hand and on the left hand, and rased off helmes, and so passed forth to his pavilions, and left sir Palomides on foote. And sir Tristram changed his horse and disguised himselfe all in red, horse and harneis.

CHAP. CLV.—How sir Tristram changed his harneis, and it was all red, and how hee demeaned him, and how sir Palomides slew sir Launcelots horse.

AND when the queene La beale Isoud saw sir Tristram was unhorsed, and wist not where hee was, then shee began to weepe. But sir Tristram, when hee was ready, came dashing lightly into the field, and then La beale Isoud espied him. And so he did great deeds of armes with a great speare, so that sir Tristram smote downe five knights or ever that hee stinted. Then sir Launcelot espied him readyly that it was Tristram, and then he repented him that hee had smitten him downe; and so sir Launcelot went out of the presse for to rest him, and lightly he came againe. And so when sir Tristram came to the presse, through his great force, he put sir Palomides upon his horse, and sir Gareth and sir Dinadan, and then they began to doe mervailous deeds of armes; but sir Palomides nor his two fellowes wist not who had holpen him on horsbacke againe. But ever sir Tristram was nigh them and succoured them, and they not him, because he was changed into red armour. And all this while Sir Launcelot was away. So when La beale Isoud knew that Sir Tristram was againe upon his horse, shee was passing glad, and then shee laughed and made good cheere. And so it hapned sir Palomides looked up toward her where shee laie in the window, and hee espied

how shee laughed, and therwith hee tooke such a rejoysing in himselfe that hee smote down, what with his speare and with his sword, all that ever hee met, for through the sight of her he was so enamoured in her love, that him seemed at that time that if both sir Tristram and sir Launcelot had beene both against him, they should have wonne no worship of him. And in his heart sir Palomides wished that with his worship he might have to do with sir Tristram before al men, because of La beale Isoud. Then sir Palomides began to double his strength, and he did so mervailously that all men had wonder at his deeds; and ever he cast up his eie to La beale Isoud, and when he saw her make such cheere, he fared like a lion, that there might no man withstand him. And then sir Tristram beheld how that sir Palomides bestured him, and then he said unto sir Dinadan: "So God me helpe," said hee, "Sir Palomides is a passing good knight and a well enduring, but such deedes I saw him never doe, nor never heard I tell that hee did so much in one day." "It is his day," said sir Dinadan; and hee would say noe more unto sir Tristram, but to him selfe he said, "and if yee knew for whose love hee doth all these deeds of armes, soone would sir Tristram abate his courage." "Alas!" said sir Tristram, "that sir Palomides is not christined." So said king Arthur, and so said all the people that beheld him. Then all people gave him the prise as for the best knight that day, that hee passed both sir Launcelot and sir Tristram. "Well," said sir Dinadan to him selfe, "all this worship that sir Palomides hath heere this day hee may thanke the queene Isoud, for had she beene away this day, sir Palomides had not gotten the prise this day." Right so there came in the field sir Launcelot du Lake, and saw and heard the noyse and crye and great worship that sir Palomides had; hee dressed him against sir Palomides with a great and mightie speare and a long, and thought to smite him downe. And when sir Palomides saw sir Launcelot come upon him

so fast, hee ranne upon sir Launcelot as fast with his sword as he might. And as sir Launcelot should have stricken him, he smote his spear aside, and smote it atwo with his sword; and sir Palomides rashed to sir Launcelot, and thought to have put him to a shame; and with his sword he smot of his horse necke that sir Launcelot rode upon, and then sir Launcelot fell unto the ground. Then was the crie huge and great, "See how sir Palomides the Sarasin hath smitten downe sir Launcelots horse!" Right so were there many knights wroth with sir Palomides, because he had done that deede; therfore many knights held there against that it was unknightly in a turneiment to kil a horse wilfully, but if it had beene done in a plaine battaile, body for body.[1]

CHAP. CLVI.—What sir Launcelot said unto sir Palomides, and how that the prise of that day was given unto sir Palomides.



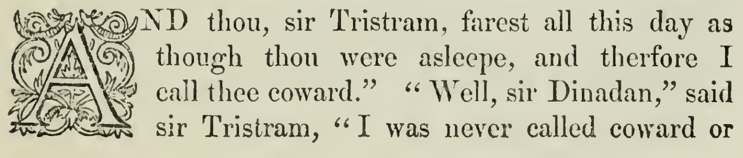
AND when sir Ector de Maris saw sir Launcelot his brother have such a despite, and so set on foote, then hee gat a speare egerly and ranne against sir Palomides, and hee smote him so hard, that he beare him quite from his horse. That saw sir Tristram, which was in red harneis, and he smote sir Ector de Maris quite and cleane from his horse. Then sir Launcelot dressed his shield upon his shoulder, and with his sword in his hand came straight upon sir Palomides right fiersly, and said, "Wit thou well that thou hast done mee this day the greatest despite that ever any knight did to mee in turnement or in justs, and therefore I will bee avenged upon thee, therefore take heede unto thy selfe." "Ah, mercy, noble knight," said sir Palomides, "and foregive me my unkind deede, for I have no power nor might to withstand you; and I have done so much this day, that wel I know that I never did so much, nor never wil

[1] *Body for body.—Lyf for lyf,* Caxton.

doe againe, in all my life dayes; and therefore, most noble knight, I require thee spare me as this day, and I promise you that I shall ever bee your knight while my life lasteth; and if ye put me from my worship as now, yee put me from the greatest worship that ever I had or ever shall have in my life dayes." "Wel," said sir Launcelot, "I see, for to say the truth, ye have done mervailously wel this day, and I understand a partie for whose love yee doe it, and well I wot that love is a great mistresse, and if that my lady were here, as shee is not, wit yee well," said sir Launcelot, "that ye should not have borne away the worship. But beware that your love bee not discovered, for and sir Tristram may know it, ye will repent it. And sith my quarell is not heere, ye shall have this day the worship; as for mee, considering the great travaile and paine that ye have had, it were no worship for me to put you from it." And therewith sir Launcelot suffered sir Palomides to depart. Then sir Launcelot, by great force and might, gat his owne horse mauger twentie knights. So when sir Launcelot was horsed, hee did many marveilous deeds of armes, and so did sir Tristram and sir Palomides in likewise. Then sir Launcelot smote downe with a speare sir Dinadan, and the king of Scotland, and the king of Wales, and the king of Northumberland, and the king of Listinoyse. So when sir Launcelot and his fellowes smote downe well fortie knights, then came the king of Ireland and the king of the Straight Marches to rescew sir Tristram and sir Palomides. Then began a great medle, and many knights there wer smitten downe on both parties, and alwayes sir Launcelot spared sir Tristram, and he spared him; and sir Palomides would not meddle with sir Launcelot. And so there was hurling here and there. And then king Arthur sent out many knights of the round table. And sir Palomides was ever in the formost front; and sir Tristram did so strongly and so well, that the king and the knights had great mervaile of him. And then the king

let blow to lodging. And because that sir Palomides began first, never hee went nor rode out of the field to rest him, but ever he was doing mervailously well, both on foote and on horsbacke, and longest duringe. King Arthur and all the kings gave sir Palomides the honour and the degree as for that day. Then sir Tristram commanded sir Dinadan to fetch the queene La beale Isoud, and bring her to his two pavilions that stood by the well; and so sir Dinadan did as hee was commanded. But when sir Palomides understood and wist that sir Tristram was in the red armour and upon the red horse, wit yee well that he was right glad, and so was sir Gareth and sir Dinadan, for they all wend that sir Tristram had beene taken prisoner. And then every knight drew to their inne; and then king Arthur and every knight speake of those knights, but above all other knights they gave sir Palomides the degree; and all the knights that knew sir Palomides had wonder of his deeds. "Sir," said sir Launcelot unto king Arthur, "as for sir Palomides, and hee bee the greene knight, I dare well say as for this day hee is best worthy to have the degree, for hee rested him never, nor never changed his weeds, and he began first and longest held on; and yet well I wote," said sir Launcelot, "that there was a farre better knight than hee, and that shall be well proved or wee depart, upon paine of my life." Thus they talked on either partie. And so sir Dinadan railed with sir Tristram, and said, "What divell is upon thee this day? for sir Palomides strength feebled never this day, but ever he doubled his strength.

CHAP. CLVII.—How sir Dinadan provoked sir Tristram to doe well.



ND thou, sir Tristram, farest all this day as though thou were asleepe, and therfore I call thee coward." "Well, sir Dinadan," said sir Tristram, "I was never called coward or

now of none earthly knight in all my life; and wit thou well, sir Dinadan, I call my selfe never the more coward, though sir Launcelot gave me a fall; for I outcept[1] him of all knights. And doubt ye not, sir Dinadan, and if sir Launcelot have a good quarell, he is over good for any knight that is now living; and yet of his suffrance, largnesse, bountie, and curtesie, I call him knight peerles." And so sir Tristram was in manner wroth with Sir Dinadan. But all this language sir Dinadan said because hee would anger sir Tristram, for to cause him to waken his spirits, and for to be wroth; for well knew sir Dinadan that, and sir Tristram were throughly wroth, sir Palomides should not get the prise on the morrow, and for this entent sir Dinadan said all this rayling and language against sir Tristram. "Truly," said sir Palomides, "as for sir Launcelot, of his noble knighthood, curtesie, prowesse, and gentlenesse, I know not his peere. For this day," said sir Palomides, "I did full uncurteously to sir Launcelot and full unknightly, and full knightly and curteously hee did to me againe; for and he had been as ungentle to me as I was to him, this day I had wonne no worship; and therefore," said sir Palomides, "I shall be sir Launcelots knight while I live." This talking was in the houses of kings; but all kings, lords, and knights said, of cleere knighthood and pure strength, of bountie and curtesie, sir Launcelot and sir Tristram beare the prise above all knights that ever were in king Arthurs dayes, and there were never knights in king Arthurs dayes did halfe so many deeds as they did, no ten knights did not halfe the deeds that they did; and there was never knight in their daies that required sir Launcelot or sir Tristram of any quest, so it were not to their shame, but they performed their desire.

[1] *Outcept.*—Except.

CHAP. CLVIII.—How king Arthur and sir Launcelot came to see the queene La beale Isoud, and how sir Palomides smote downe king Arthur.



SO on the morrow sir Launcelot departed, and sir Tristram and La beale Isoud were ready with sir Palomides and sir Gareth, and so they rode all in greene full freshly beseene unto the forrest. And sir Tristram left sir Dinadan sleeping in his bed. And so as they rode, it hapned that king Arthur and sir Launcelot stood in a window, and they saw sir Tristram and La beale Isoud. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "yonder rideth the fairest lady of the world, except your queene dame Guenever." "Who is that?" said king Arthur. "Sir," said hee, "it is queene Isoud, which outcept my lady your queene, shee is peerelesse." "Take your horse," said king Arthur, "and aray you at all points as I will doe, and I promise you," said the king, "I will see her." Then anon they were armed and horsed, and either tooke a speare and rode unto the forrest. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "it is not good that yee goe to nigh them, for wit yee well there are two as good knights as now are living, and therefore, sir, I pray you be not to hasty, for peradventure there will some knight bee displeased and we come sodeinly upon them." "As for that," said king Arthur, "I will see her, for I take no force[1] whom I greeve." "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "yee put your selfe in great jeopardy." "As for that," said the king, "wee will take the adventure." Right so anon the king rode and came unto her, and graciously saluted her, and said, "God save you, faire lady!" "Sir," said shee, "yee are welcome." Then the king beheld her, and liked her wonderous wel. With that came sir Palomides to king Arthur, and said, "Thou uncurteous knight, what seekest thou heer? thou art uncurteous to come upon a lady thus sodeinly, therefore withdraw thee."

[1] *I take no force.*—I care not.

King Arthur tooke no heed of sir Palomides words, but alway he looked upon queene Isoud. Then sir Palomides was wroth, and therwith hee tooke a speare and came hurling upon king Arthur, and smote him downe with his speare. When sir Launcelot saw the despite of sir Palomides, he said to himselfe, "I am loth to have to doe with yonder knight, and not for his owne sake, but for sir Tristrams sake; and one thing I am sure of, if I smite downe sir Palomides, I must have to doe with sir Tristram, and that were over much for me to match them both, for they are two noble knights. Notwithstanding, whether I live or die, needs must I revenge my lord, and so will I, whatsoever befall of me." And therewith sir Launcelot cried to sir Palomides, "Keepe thee from me." And then sir Launcelot and sir Palomides encountred together with two speares full strongly; but sir Launcelot smote sir Palomides so hard, that he went quit out of the sadle, and had a great fall. When sir Tristram saw sir Palomides have such a fall, he said unto sir Launcelot, "Sir knight, keepe thee, for I must needs just with thee." "As for to just with mee," said sir Launcelot, "I will not faile you, for no dread I have of you, but I am full loth to have to doe with you, and I might choose. For I will that yee wit that I must revenge my speciall lord, that was unhorsed unwarily and unknightly; and therefore, though I have revenged the fall, take yee no displeasure therein, for he is to me such a friend that I may not see him shamed." Anon sir Tristram understood full well, by his person and by his knightly words, that it was sir Launcelot du Lake; and verily sir Tristram deemed that it had beene king Arthur, he that sir Palomides had smitten downe. And then sir Tristram put his speare from him, and put sir Palomides againe on horsbacke, and sir Launcelot put king Arthur againe on horsbacke, and so departed. "So God mee helpe," said sir Tristram unto Palomides, "yee did not worshipfully when yee smote downe that knight so sodeinly as yee did.

And wit yee well yee did your selfe great shame; for the knights came hether of their gentlenesse for to see a faire lady, and that is every good knights part to behold a faire lady. And thou had not to doe to play such maistresse before my lady; wit thou well it will turne to anger, for he that thou smote downe was the king, and that other was the good knight sir Launcelot. But I shall not forget the words of sir Launcelot, when hee called him a man of great worship; thereby I knew that it was king Arthur. And as for sir Launcelot, and there had beene five hundred knights in the medow, he would not have refused none of them, and yet he said that he would refuse me; by that againe I wist that it was sir Launcelot, for ever he forbeareth me in every place, and showeth me great kindnesse. And of all knights I out-take none (say what men will say), he beareth the floure of all chivalry, tell it him who will; and he be well angred, and that him list to do his uttermost without favour, I know him not on live but that sir Lancelot is over hard for him, be it on horsbacke or on foote." "I may never beleeve," said sir Palomides, "that king Arthur will ride so prively as doth a poore arraunt knight." "I," said sir Tristram, "ye know not yet my lord king Arthur, for all knights may learne to be a good knight of him, and therefore yee may bee sory of your unkind deeds to so noble a king." "A thing that is done may not be undone," said sir Palomides. Then sir Tristram sent queene Isoud unto her lodging in the priorie, there to behold all the turneiment.

CHAP. CLIX.—How the second day sir Palomides forsooke sir Tristram, and went to the contrary part against him.


HEN there was a cry made unto all knights, that when they heard a horne blew, that they should make justs as they did the first day. And like as the brethren sir Edward and sir Sadoke began the justs the first day, sir Uwaine, the kings

sonne Urein, and sir Lucan [1] the butler began the justs the second day. And there at the first encounter sir Uwaine smote downe the kings sonne of Scotland; and sir Lucan ranne against the king of Wales, and they brake their speares all to peeces, and they were both so fierse that they hurled together that they fell both to the ground. Then they of Orkeney horsed againe sir Lucan, and then came there in sir Tristram de Liones, and then sir Tristram smote downe sir Uwaine and sir Lucan, and sir Palomides smote downe other two knights, and in like wise sir Gareth smote downe other two knights. Then said king Arthur unto sir Launcelot du Lake, "See yonder three knights doe passing well, and namely the first that justed." "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "that knight beginneth not yet, but ye shal see him doe this day mervailous deeds of armes." And then came into the place the dukes sonne of Orkeney, and then they began for to doe many deedes of armes. When sir Tristram saw him so begin, hee said unto sir Palomides, "How feele ye your selfe? may you doe this day as yee did yesterday?" "Nay," said sir Palomides, "I feele my selfe so weary, and so sore bruised of the deedes of yesterday, that I may not endure as I did yesterday." "That mee repenteth," said sir Tristram, "for I shall lack you this day." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "trust not to me, for I may not doe as I have done." All these words said sir Palomides for to deceive sir Tristram. "Sir," said sir Tristram unto sir Gareth, "then I must trust upon you; wherefore I beseech you be not farre from me to rescew me." "And if neede bee," said sir Gareth, "I shall not faile you in all that I may doe." Then sir Palomides rode by himselfe, and in despite of sir Tristram hee put himselfe in the thickest presse among them of Orkeney, and there he did soe mervailous deedes of armes, that all men had great wonder of him, for there might none stand him a strook. When sir Tristram saw sir Palomides do such deeds, he had great mervail of him, and said, "He is weary

[1] *Lucan.—Lucanere,* Caxton.

of my company." So sir Tristram beheld him a great while, and did but little else, for the noyse and crie was so huge and great, that sir Tristram mervailed greatly from whence came the strength that sir Palomides had there in the field. "Sir," said sir Gareth unto sir Tristram, "remember yee not of the words that sir Dinadan said unto you yesterday, when he called you coward? For sooth, sir, he said it for none evill, for ye are the man in the world that he most loveth, and all that hee said was for your worship; and therefore," said sir Gareth unto sir Tristram, "let me know this day what ye be; and wonder yee not so upon sir Palomides, for he enforceth himselfe for to winne all the worship and honour from you." "I may well beleeve," said sir Tristram; "and sith I understand his evill will and his envie, yee shall see if that I enforce my self, that the noyse shal be left which now is upon him." Then sir Tristram rode into the thickest of all the presse, and then he did mervailously well, and did so great deeds of armes, that all the people there said that sir Tristram did double the deeds of armes that sir Palomides had done afore hand. And then the noyse went plaine from sir Palomides, and all the people cryed upon sir Tristram. "Oh Jesu!" said the people, "see how sir Tristram smiteth downe with his speare so many knights! And see," said they all, "how many knights he smiteth downe with his sword, and of how many knights hee rasheth off their helmes and their shields!" And so hee beate all those of Orkeney afore him. "How now?" said sir Launcelot unto king Arthur; "I told you that this day there should a knight play his pagent.[1] Yonder rideth a knight, ye may see how he doth knightly, for hee hath strength and wind." "So God mee helpe," said king Arthur to sir Launcelot, "yee say sooth, for I saw never a better knight, for he passeth farre sir Palomides." "Sir, wit ye well," said sir Launcelot, "it needes must be so of

[1] *Pagent.*—The *pageant* was properly the scaffold, or stage, and machinery of the play, but the term was not uncommonly applied to the play itself—it is here equivalent to "act his part."

right, for it is himselfe that noble knight sir Tristram." "I may right well beleeve it," said king Arthur. But when sir Palomides heard that the noyse and the crie was returned from him, hee rode out apart and beheld sir Tristram; and when sir Palomides saw sir Tristram doe so marvailous wel, he wept passing sore for dispite, for hee wist well that he should winne no worship that day. For wel knew sir Palomides, when sir Tristram put forth his strength and his manhood, he should get but little worship that day.

CHAP. CLX.—How sir Tristram departed out of the field and awaked sir Dinadan, and changed his aray all into blacke.

THEN came there king Arthur, and the king of Northgalis, and sir Launcelot du Lake, and sir Bleoberis, sir Bors de Galis, and sir Ector de Maris, these three knights came into the field with the noble knight sir Launcelot. And then sir Launcelot with the three knights of his kin did so great deeds of armes, that all the noyse began upon sir Launcelot. And so they beate the king of Wales and the king of Scots farre aback, and made them to avoide the fielde. But sir Tristram and sir Gareth abode still in the fielde, and endured all that ever there came, that all men had great wonder that any knights might endure so many strooks. But ever sir Launcelot and his three kinsemen, by the commandement of sir Launcelot, forbare sir Tristram. Then said king Arthur, "That is sir Palomides that endureth so well." "Nay," said sir Launcelot, "wit yee well it is the good knight sir Tristram de Liones, for yonder yee may see how sir Palomides beholdeth and hoveth, and doth little or nought; and, sir, yee shall understand that sir Tristram weeneth in this day to beate us all out of the field; and as for me," said sir Launcelot, "I shall not beate him, beate him who so will. Sir," said sir Launcelot unto king Arthur, "ye may see how sir Palomides hoveth yonder as though hee were in a dreame; wit yee well he is full heavie

that sir Tristram doth such deeds of armes." "Then is hee but a foole," said king Arthur, "for never was sir Palomides, nor never shall be, of such prowesse as sir Tristram is of. And if hee have any envie at sir Tristram, and commeth in with him upon his side, hee is a false knight." As king Arthur and sir Launcelot thus spake, sir Tristram rode privily out of the presse, that none espied him but La beale Isoud and sir Palomides, for they two would not let their eyes goe from sir Tristram. And when sir Tristram came to his pavilions, he found sir Dinadan in his bed asleepe. "Awake," said sir Tristram, "yee ought for to bee ashamed so to sleepe when knights have adoe in the field." Then sir Dinadan arose lightly, and said, "What will yee that I shall doe?" "Make you ready," said sir Tristram, "for to ride with mee into the field." So when sir Dinadan was armed, hee looked upon sir Tristrams helme and upon his shield, and when hee saw so many strookes upon his helme and upon his shield, hee said, "In good time was I thus asleepe, for had I beene with you I must needs for shame there have followed you, more for shame then for any prowesse that is in me, that I see well now by the strookes that I should have beene truly beaten as I was yesterday." "Leave your japes," said sir Tristram, "and come off, that we were in the field again." "What!" said sir Dinadan, "is your heart plucked up now? yesterday yee fared as though yee had dreamed." So then sir Tristram was arayed all in black harneis. "Oh Jesu!" said sir Dinadan, "what ayleth you this day? me seemeth that yee bee wilder now then ye were yesterday." Then sir Tristram smiled, and said unto sir Dinadan, "Awaite well upon me; if ye see me overmatched, looke that ye be ever behind me, and I shall make you ready way, by Gods grace." So sir Tristram and sir Dinadan tooke their horses. All this espied sir Palomides, both their going and their comming, and so did La beale Isoud, for shee knew sir Tristram above all other.

CHAP. CLXI.—How sir Palomides changed his shield and his armour for to hurt sir Tristram, and what sir Launcelot did to sir Tristram.

SO when sir Palomides saw that sir Tristram was disguised, then he thought to doe him a shame. So sir Palomides rode unto a knight that was sore wounded which sat under a faire well from the field. "Sir knight," said sir Palomides, "I pray you that you will lend mee your armour and your shield, for mine is over well knowne in this field and that hath done mee great domage, and yee shall have mine armour and my shield, that is sure as yours." "I will well," said the knight, "that yee have mine armour and my shield, if they may doe you any availe." So sir Palomides armed him hastily in that knights armour, and tooke his shield that shined as bright as any cristal or silver, and so hee came riding into the field. And then there was neither sir Tristram nor none of king Arthurs partie that knew sir Palomides; and right so as sir Palomides was coming into the field, sir Tristram smote downe three knights even in the sight of sir Palomides. And then sir Palomides rode against sir Tristram, and either met with other with great speares and brake them unto their hands, and then they dressed them together with swords full egerly; then sir Tristram mervailed much what knight hee was that did battaile with him so knightly. Then was sir Tristram passing wroth, for he felt him passing strong, so that he deemed he might not have to doe with the remnant of the knights because of the strength of sir Palomides. So they lashed together, and gave many sad strookes the one to the other, and many knights mervailed what hee might bee that so encountred with the black knight sir Tristram. Full well knew La beale Isoud that it was sir Palomides that fought with sir Tristram, for shee espied all in her window where that shee stood as sir Palomides changed his harneis

with the wounded knight, and then shee began to weepe for the despite of sir Palomides, that there she sowned. Then came in sir Launcelot with the knights of Orkeney. And when the other partie espied sir Launcelot, they cryed, "Returne, returne, heere commeth sir Launcelot du Lake." So there came knights that said unto him, "Sir Launcelot, ye must needs fight with yonder knight in the black harneis," which was sir Tristram, "for hee hath almost overcome that good knight that fighteth with the silver shield," and that was sir Palomides. Then sir Launcelot rode betweene sir Tristram and sir Palomides, and sir Launcelot said unto sir Palomides, "Sir knight, let me have the battaile, for yee have neede to rest you." Sir Palomides knew sir Launcelot well, and so did sir Tristram, but because that sir Launcelot was a farre hardier knight then himselfe, therefore hee was glad, and suffered sir Launcelot to fight with sir Tristram; for well wist he that sir Launcelot knew not sir Tristram. And there hee hoped that sir Launcelot should beate or shame sir Tristram, whereof sir Palomides was full well apaied.[1] And sir Launcelot gave sir Tristram full many sad strookes, but sir Launcelot knew not that he was sir Tristram, but sir Tristram knew well that hee was sir Launcelot; and thus fought they long together, that La beale Isoud was well out of her mind for sorrow. Then sir Dinadan told sir Gareth how that knight in the blacke harneis was sir Tristram, "and this is sir Launcelot that fighteth with him, which needes must have the better of him; for sir Tristram hath had to much travaile this day." "Then let us smite him downe," said sir Gareth. "So it is better that wee doe," said sir Dinadan, "rather then sir Tristram should bee shamed. For yonder hoveth the strong knight with the silver shield for to fall upon sir Tristram if neede bee." Then forthwithall sir Gareth rashed upon sir Launcelot and gave him a great strooke upon his helme so hard that hee was all stonied. And then

[1] *Apaied.*—Satisfied; glad.

came sir Dinadan with a great speare, and hee smote sir Launcelot such a buffet that horse and all fell to the ground. "Oh, Jesu!" said sir Tristram to sir Gareth and to sir Dinadan; "fie for shame, why have ye smitten downe so good a knight as hee is, and namely when I had to doe with him? Now ye doe your selfe great shame, and him no disworship, for I held him reasonable hot though yee had not holpen mee." And then came sir Palomides, that was disguised, and smote downe sir Dinadan from his horse. Then sir Launcelot, because that sir Dinadan had smitten him downe afore hand, he assayled sir Dinadan passing sore, and sir Dinadan defended him mightily. But well understood sir Tristram that sir Dinadan might not endure sir Launcelot, wherefore sir Tristram was sorry. Then came sir Palomides fresh upon sir Tristram, and when sir Tristram saw him comming, he thought to deliver him at once, because he would helpe sir Dinadan, for he stood in great perill with sir Launcelot. Then sir Tristram hurled unto sir Palomides and gave him a great buffet, and sir Tristram gat sir Palomides and pulled him downe underneath him, and so fell sir Tristram with him, and sir Tristram lept up lightly, and left sir Palomides, and went betweene sir Launcelot and sir Dinadan, and then they began to doe battaile together. Right so sir Dinadan gat sir Tristrams horse, and said on high, so that sir Launcelot might heare it, "My lord sir Tristram, take your horse." And when sir Launcelot heard him name sir Tristram: "Oh, Jesu," said sir Launcelot, "what have I done? I am dishonoured. Ah! my lord sir Tristram," said sir Launcelot, "why were yee disguised? ye have put your selfe in great perrill this day. But I pray you, noble knight, pardon me, for and I had knowne you, wee had not done this battaile." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "this is not the first kindnesse ye have shewed me." And so they were both horsed againe. Then all the people on the one side gave sir Launcelot the honour and the degree, and on the other side all the

people gave unto the noble knight sir Tristram the honour and the degree. But sir Launcelot said nay thereto, "For I am not worthy to have this honour, for I will report me unto all knights that sir Tristram hath beene longer in the field then I, and hee hath smitten downe many moe knights this day then I have done. And therefore I will give sir Tristram my voice and my name, and so I praie you all, my lords and fellowes, so to doe." And then was there the hole voice of dukes and earles, barons and knights, that sir Tristram this day is prooved the best knight.

CHAP. CLXII.—How sir Tristram departed with La beale Isoud, and how sir Palomides followed and excused him.

THEN they blew unto lodging, and queene Isoud was led into her pavilions; but wit you well that shee was wonders wroth out of measure with sir Palomides, for shee had seen all his treason from the beginning unto the ending. And all this while neither sir Tristram, neither sir Gareth, nor sir Dinadan, knew not of the treason of sir Palomides; but afterward ye shall here that there befell the greatest debate betweene sir Tristram and sir Palomides that might be. So when the turneiment was done, sir Tristram, sir Gareth, and sir Dinadan rode with La beale Isoud unto their pavilions, and alway sir Palomides rode with them in their company disguised as hee was. But when sir Tristram had espied him, that hee was the same knight with the shield of silver the which held him so hot that same day: "Sir knight," said sir Tristram, "wit yee well that heere is none of us that hath any neede of your fellowship, and therefore I pray you depart from us." Sir Palomides answered againe, as though he had not knowen sir Tristram, "Wit yee well, sir knight, that from this fellowship will I not depart, for one of the best knights of the world commanded me to bee in this company, and till he discharge me of my service I will not be discharged." By that sir Tristram

knew that it was sir Palomides. "Sir Palomides," said sir Tristram, "are yee such a knight? yee have beene named wrong, for yee have beene called a gentle knight, and as this day yee have shewed mee great ungentlenesse, for yee had almost brought me unto my death. But as for you, I suppose I should have done wel enough; but sir Lancelot with you was overmuch for mee, for I know no knight living, but sir Launcelot is over good for him, and hee wil doe his uttermost." "Alas!" said sir Palomides, "are ye my lord sir Tristram?" "Ye, sir, and that ye know well enough." "By my knighthood," said sir Palomides, "untill now I knew you not, for I wend that yee had beene the king of Ireland, for I wote well that yee beare his armes." "His armes I bare," said sir Tristram, "and that will I stand by, for I wan them once in a field of a full noble knight, whose name was sir Marhaus, and with great paine I wan that good knight, for there was none other recovery, but sir Marhaus died through false leeches, and yet never hee yelded him to me." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I wend yee had beene turned upon sir Launcelots partie, and that caused me to turne." "Ye say well," said sir Tristram, "and so I take you, and I forgive it you." So then they rode unto their pavilions, and when they were alighted they unarmed them, and washed their faces and hands, and so set them at their table, and went to meate; and when La beale Isoud saw sir Palomides shee changed her colour, and for wrath she might not speake. Anon sir Tristram espied her countenance, and said, "Madame, for what cause make yee us such cheere? wee have beene sore travailed this day." "My deare lord," said La beale Isoud, "for Gods sake be yee not displeased with mee, for I may none otherwise doe, for I saw this day how yee were betraied and nigh brought unto your death. Truly, sir, I saw every deale, how and in what wise, and therefore, sir, how should I suffer in your presence such a felon and traitour as sir Palomides is, for I saw him with mine eye how

hee beheld you when yee went out of the field; for alway hee hoved still upon his horse till hee saw you come in againeward. And then foorthwith I saw him ride to the hurt knight, and changed harneys with him, and then straight I saw him how hee rode into the field. And anon as hee had found you, hee encountred with you, and thus wilfully sir Palomides did battaile with you, and as for him, sir, I was not greatly afeard, but I dread sir Launcelot that knew you not." "Madame," said sir Palomides, "yee may say what ye will, I may not contrary you, but by my knighthood I knew not sir Tristram." "Sir Palomides," said sir Tristram, "I will hold you excused, but well I wote yee spared me but little, but all is pardoned on my part." Then La beale Isoud held downe her head, and said no more.

CHAP. CLXIII.—How king Arthur and sir Launcelot came into their pavilions as they sate at supper, and of sir Palomides.

AND therewithall two knights armed came into their pavilions, and there they alighted both, and came in armed at all peeces. "Faire knight," said sir Tristram, "ye are too blame to come thus armed at all peeces upon us while wee are at our meat; if yee would anything when we were in the field, yee might have eased your hearts." "Not so," said the one of those knights, "wee come not for that entent; but wit yee well, sir Tristram, we be come hither as your friends; and I am come here," said the one, "sir, to see you, and this knight is come for to see La beale Isoud." "Then," said sir Tristram, "I require you doe off your helmes that I may see you." "That will we doe at your desire," said the knights. And when their helmes were off, sir Tristram thought that he should know them. Then said sir Dinadan prively unto sir Tristram, "Sir, that is sir Launcelot du Lake that spake unto you first, and the other is my lord king Arthur." Then said sir Tristram unto La beale

Isoud, "Madame, arise, for heere is my lord king Arthur." Then the king and the queene kissed, and sir Launcelot and sir Tristram embraced either other in armes, and then there was joye without measure, and at the request of La beale Isoud king Arthur and sir Lancelot were unarmed, and then was there mery talking. "Madame," said king Arthur, "it is many a day sith that I have desired to see you; for yee have beene praised for so faire, and now I dare say yee are the fairest that ever I saw, and sir Tristram is as faire and as good a knight as any that I doe know, therfore me seemeth ye are right well beset together." "Sir, God thanke you," said sir Tristram and La beale Isoud, "of your great goodnesse and largenesse, for yee are pearles." And thus they talked of divers things, and of all the whole justing. "But for what cause," said king Arthur, "were yee, sir Tristram, against us? yee are a knight of the round table, of right yee should have beene with us." "My lord," said sir Tristram, "heere is sir Dinadan and sir Gareth of Orkeney, your owne nephew, caused me to be against you." "My lord king Arthur," said sir Gareth, "I may well beare the blame, but it was sir Tristrams owne deeds." "That may I repent," said sir Dinadan, "for this unhappy sir Tristram brought us to this turneyment, and many great buffets hee caused us to have." Then king Arthur and sir Launcelot laughed that they might not sit. "What knight was that," said king Arthur, "that held you so short? he with the shield of silver." "Sir," said sir Tristram, "heere hee sitteth at this boord." "What," said king Arthur, "was it sir Palomides?" "Wit yee well it was hee," said La beale Isoud. "So God me helpe," said king Arthur, "that was unknightly done of you of so good a knight, for I heard much people call you a curteous knight." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "I knew not sir Tristram, because hee was so disguised." "So God me helpe," said sir Launcelot, "it may well be, for I knew not sir Tristram." "But I marvaile why yee turned on our partie." "That

was done for the same cause," said sir Launcelot. "As for that," said sir Tristram, "I have pardoned him, and I would bee right loth to leave his fellowship, for I love his company." So they left off, and talked of other maters, and in the evening king Arthur and sir Launcelot departed unto their lodging. But wit yee well sir Palomides had great envie, for all that night he had no rest in his bed, but wailed and wept out of measure. So on the morrow sir Tristram, sir Gareth, and sir Dinadan arose early, and then went unto sir Palomides chamber, and there they found him fast on sleepe, for hee had all night watched, and it was seene upon his cheekes that hee had wept full sore. "Say nothing," said sir Tristram, "for I am sure hee hath taken anger and sorrow for the rebuke that I gave him and La beale Isoud."

CHAP. CLXIV.—How sir Tristram and sir Palomides did the next day, and how king Arthur was unhorsed.

AND then sir Tristram let call sir Palomides, and bad him make him ready, for it was time to goe unto the field. When they were ready, they were armed and clothed all in red, both La beale Isoud and they all, and so they led her passing freshly through the field into the priory where was her standing. And then they heard three blasts blow, and every king and knight dressed him unto the field. And the first that was ready to just was sir Palomides, and sir Kainus le Strange, a knight of the round table; and so they two encountred together, but sir Palomides smote sir Kainus so hard that hee smote him quite over his horse croupe. And forthwith sir Palomides smote downe another knight, and then hee brake his speare and drew out his sword and did wonderous well. And then the noyse began greatly upon sir Palomides. "Loe," said king Arthur, "yonder sir Palomides beginneth to play his pagent; so God me

helpe," said king Arthur, "hee is a passing good knight." And right as they stood thus talking, in came sir Tristram as thunder, and hee encountred with sir Kaye the seneshall, and there smote him downe quite from his horse, and with the same speare sir Tristram smote downe three knights moe, and then hee drew out his sword and did mervailously. And then the noise and crie changed from sir Palomides and turned unto Tristram, and all the people cried: "Oh! Tristram, oh! Tristram." And then was sir Palomides cleane forgotten. "How now?" said sir Launcelot unto king Arthur; "yonder rideth a knight that plaieth his pagents." "So God me helpe," said king Arthur to sir Launcelot, "yee shall see this day that yonder two knights shall doe heere many wonders." "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "the one knight waiteth upon the other, and enforceth himselfe through envy to passe the noble knight sir Tristram, and yee know not the privy envy that sir Palomides hath unto him. For all that the noble sir Tristram doth is through cleane knighthood." And then sir Gareth and sir Dinadan did wonderous deeds of armes as two noble knights, so that king Arthur spake of them great honour; the kings and knights of sir Tristrams side did passing well, and held them truely together. Then king Arthur and sir Launcelot tooke their horses, and dressed them, and gate them into the thickest of the presse, and there sir Tristram unknowing smote down king Arthur; and then sir Lancelot would have rescewed him, but ther were so many upon him that they pulled him downe from his horse. And then the king of Ireland and the king of Scotland did there paine to take king Arthur and sir Launcelot prisoners. When sir Launcelot heard them say so, hee fared as it had beene an hungrey lyon, for hee fared so that no knight durst come nigh him. Then came sir Ector de Maris, and hee beare a speare against sir Palomides and brake it upon him all to shevers; and then sir Ector came againe, and gave sir Palomides such a dash with his sword that hee stouped downe

upon his sadle bow, and forthwithal sir Ector pulled downe sir Palomides under his feet, and then sir Ector gat sir Lancelot an horse, and brought him the horse, and bad him mount upon him; but sir Palomides stept before him, and gate the horse by the bridell and lept into the sadell. "So God me helpe," said sir Launcelot, "yee are better worthy to have that horse then I." Then sir Ector brought sir Launcelot another horse. "Gramercy, gentle brother," said sir Launcelot. And so when hee was horsed againe, with one speare he smote downe foure knights; and then sir Launcelot brought unto king Arthur one of the best of the foure horses. Then sir Launcelot, with king Arthur and with a few of his knights of sir Launcelots kinn, did mervailous deeds of armes; for that time sir Launcelot smote downe and pulled downe thirtie knights. Notwithstanding, the other partie held them so fast together that king Arthur and his knights were overmatched. And when sir Tristram saw what labour king Arthur and his knights did, and most specially the noble deeds that sir Launcelot did with his owne hands, hee mervailed greatly thereof.

CHAP. CLXV.—How sir Tristram turned to king Arthurs side, and how sir Palomides would not.

THEN sir Tristram called unto him sir Palomides, sir Gareth, and sir Dinadan, and said thus unto them: "My faire fellowes, wit yee well that I will turne unto king Arthurs partie, for I saw never so few men doe so well; and it will be shame to us knights that be of the round table to see our lord king Arthur, and that noble knight sir Launcelot, to bee dishonoured." "It will be well done," said sir Gareth and sir Dinadan. "Doe your best," said sir Palomides, "for I will not change my part that I come in withall." "That is for my sake," said sir Tristram; "God speed you well in your journey." And so departed sir Palomides from them.

Then sir Tristram, sir Gareth, and sir Dinadan turned to sir Launcelot. And then sir Launcelot smote downe the king of Ireland quite from his horse, and after that sir Launcelot smote downe the king of Scotland and the king of Wales. And then king Arthur ranne unto sir Palomides, and smote him quite from his horse; and then sir Tristram beare downe all that he met; sir Gareth and sir Dinadan did there as noble knights. Then all the parties began to flee. "Alas!" said sir Palomides, "that ever I should see this day, for now have I lost all the worship that I wanne." And then sir Palomides went his way wailing, and so withdrew him till hee came to a well, and there he put his horse from him and did off his armour, and wailed and wept like as hee had beene a wood man. Then many knights gave the price unto sir Tristram, and there were many that gave the price unto sir Launcelot. "Faire lords," said sir Tristram, "I thanke you of the honor that ye would give me, but I pray you hartely that ye wil give your voice unto sir Launcelot, for by my faith," said sir Tristram, "I will give sir Launcelot my voice." But sir Launcelot would not have it, and so the prise was given betweene them both. Then every man rode unto his lodging; and sir Bleoberis and sir Ector de Maris rode with sir Tristram and queene La beale Isoud unto their pavilions. Then as sir Palomides was at the well wailing and weeping, there came to him the king of Wales and the king of Scotland, and when they saw sir Palomides in that rage, "Alas!" said they, "that so noble a man as ye be should be in this araie." And then those two kings gat sir Palomides horse againe, and made him to arme him and mount upon his horse, and so hee rode with them making great dole. So when sir Palomides came nigh the pavilions there as sir Tristram and La beale Isoud were, then sir Palomides praied the two kings to abide there a while till hee had spoken with sir Tristram. And when hee came unto the gate of the pavilions, there sir Palomides said all on

high, "Where art thou, sir Tristram de Lyones?" "Sir," said sir Dinadan, "that is sir Palomides." "What, sir Palomides!" said sir Tristram, "will yee not come in heere among us?" "Fie on thee, traitour!" said sir Palomides, "for wit thou well, and it were day light as it is night, I would sley thee with mine own hands; and if ever I may get thee," said sir Palomides, "thou shalt die for this daies deed." "Sir Palomides," said sir Tristram, "ye blame me wrongfully, for had ye donne as I did, yee had wonne worship; but sith yee give me so large warning, I shall be well ware of you." "Fie on thee, traitour!" said sir Palomides, and therewith departed. Then on the morrow sir Tristram, sir Bleoberis, and sir Ector, sir Gareth, and sir Dinadan, what by water and what by land, they brought La beale Isoud unto Joyous-gard, and there rested them seven dayes, and made all the mirths and disports that they could devise. And king Arthur and his knights drew unto Camelot. And sir Palomides drew with the two kings, and ever hee made the greatest dole that any can thinke; for hee was not all onely so dolorous for the departing from La beale Isoud, but hee was a part as sorrowfull to depart from the fellowship of sir Tristram, for sir Tristram was so kind and so gentle, that when sir Palomides remembred him thereof, he might not be merry.

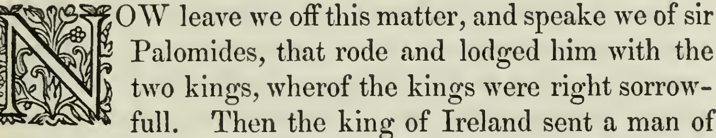
CHAP. CLXVI.—How sir Bleoberis and sir Ector reported to queene Guenever the beauty of La beale Isoud.

AND so at the seven nights end sir Bleoberis and sir Ector departed from sir Tristram and from the queene La beale Isoud, and these two knights had great gifts; and sir Gareth and sir Dinadan abode with sir Tristram. And when sir Bleoberis and sir Ector were come there as queene Guenever was lodged in a castle by the sea side, and through the grace of God the queene was recovered of her malady, then she

asked the two knights from whence they came. They said that they came from sir Tristram and from La beale Isoud. "How doth sir Tristram," said queene Guenever, "and La beale Isoud?" "Truly," said those two knights, "hee doth as a noble knight should doe; and as for the queene La beale Isoud, shee is pearelesse of all ladies, for to speake of her beautie, bountie, and mirth, and of her goodnesse, we saw never her match as far as we have riden and gone." "Oh, mercy, Jesu!" said queene Guenever, "so saith all the people that hath seene her and spoken with her; I would to God that I had part of her conditions, and it misfortuned mee of my sicknesse while that turnement endured; and, as I suppose, I shal never see in all my life such an assemble of knights and ladies as ye had there." Then the knights told her how sir Palomides wan the degree at the first day with great noblenesse, and the second day sir Tristram wan the degree, and the third day sir Launcelot wan the degree. "Well," said queene Guenever, "who did best of all these three daies?" "So God me helpe," said the knights, "sir Launcelot and sir Tristram had least dishonour. And wit yee well sir Palomides did passing well and mightily, but he turned against the partie that he came withall, and that caused him to leese [1] a great part of his worship, for it seemeth that sir Palomides is passing envious." "Then shall hee never win worshippe," said queene Guenever, "for and it happen an envious man to win worship, he shall bee dishonoured twice therefore. And for this cause all men of worship hate an envious man and will shew him no favour, and hee that is curteous, kind, and gentle, hath favour in every place."

[1] *To leese.*—To lose.

CHAP. CLXVII.—How sir Palomides complained by a well, and how sir Epinogris came and found him, and of both their sorrowes.



NOW leave we off this matter, and speake we of sir Palomides, that rode and lodged him with the two kings, wherof the kings were right sorrowfull. Then the king of Ireland sent a man of his unto sir Palomides, and gave him a great courser; and the king of Scotland gave him great gifts, and faine they would have had sir Palomides to have abiden with them, but in no wise hee would not abide, and so hee departed and rode as adventures would guid him, till it was nigh noone. And then in a forrest by a well sir Palomides saw where lay a wounded knight, and his horse bound by him, which made the greatest dole that ever he heard man make, for ever hee wept and sighed as though hee would die. Then sir Palomides rode neere him, and saluted him mildly, and said, "Faire knight, why waile you so? let mee lye downe and waile with you, for doubt ye not I am much more heavier then ye are; for I dare say," said sir Palomides, "that my sorrow is an hundred fold more then yours is, and therefore let us complaine either to other." "First," said the wounded knight, "I require you to tell me your name, for and ye be none of the noble knights of the round table, ye shall never know my name, whatsoever come of me." "Faire knight," said sir Palomides, "such as I am, be it better or bee it worse, wit yee well that I am sir Palomides, sonne and heire unto sir Astlabor, and sir Safire and sir Segwarides are my bretheren, and wit ye well as for my selfe I was never christned, but my two bretheren be truly christined." "Oh, noble knight," said that knight, "well is me that I have met with you, and wit ye wel that my name is sir Epinogris, the kings sonne of Northumberland. Now sit ye downe," said sir Epinogris, "and let us either complaine unto other." Then sir Palomides began his complaint. "Now shall I tell you,"

said sir Palomides, "what woe I endure. I love the fairest queene and lady that ever beare life, and wit yee well her name is La beale Isoud, king Markes wife of Cornewaile." "That is great folly," said sir Epinogris, "for to love queene Isoud, for one of the best knights in the world loveth her, that is sir Tristram de Liones." "That is truth," said sir Palomides, "for none knoweth that better then I doe, for I have beene in sir Tristrams fellowship this moneth, and La beale Isoud together. Alas!" said sir Palomides, "unhappie man that I am, now have I lost the fellowship of sir Tristram for ever, and the love of La beale Isoud for ever, and am never like to see her more; and sir Tristram and I bee either to other mortall enemies." "Well," said sir Epinogris, "sith that ye loved La beale Isoud, loved she you ever againe by any thing that ye could thinke or wit, or else did ye ever rejoyce[1] her in any pleasure?" "Nay, by my knighthood," said sir Palomides, "I never espied that ever shee loved mee more then all the world, nor never had I pleasure with her; but the last day she gave me the foulest rebuke that ever I had, the which shall never goe from my heart, and yet I well deserved that rebuke, for I had not done knightly, and therefore I have lost the love of her and of sir Tristram for ever. And I have many times enforced myselfe to do many deeds for La beale Isouds sake, and she was the causer of my worship wining. Alas!" said sir Palomides, "now have I lost al the worship that ever I wan, for never shall befall mee such prowes as I had in the felowship of sir Tristram."

CHAP. CLXVIII.—How sir Palomides brought unto sir Epinogris his lady, and how sir Palomides and sir Safire were assailed.



NAY, nay," said sir Epinogris, "your sorrow is but japes[2] to my sorrow, for I rejoyced my lady and wan her with my hands, and lost her againe; alas, the day! Thus first I wan her," said sir

[1] *Rejoyce.*—Enjoy. [2] *Japes.*—Jests.

Epinogris; "my lady was an earles daughter; and as this earle and two of his knights came from the turnement of Lonazep, and for her sake I set upon this earle and upon his two knights, my lady then being present, and so by fortune there I slew the earle and one of the knights, and the other knight fled, and so that night I had my lady; and on the morrow as shee and I tooke our rest by this well side, there came here unto me an arraunt knight, his name was sir Helior le Pruse, an hardy knight, and this same sir Helior chalenged mee for to fight for my lady. And then we went to battaile, first on horseback and then on foote; but at the last sir Helior wounded mee so sore that he left me for dead, and so hee tooke my lady with him. And thus my sorrow is farre more then yours, for I have rejoyced and yee rejoyced never." "That is truth," said sir Palomides, "but sith that I can never recover my selfe, I shall promise you if I can meete with sir Helior, I shall get you your lady againe or else he shall beate me." Then sir Palomides made sir Epinogris to take his horse, and so they rode unto an hermitage, and there sir Epinogris tooke his rest. And in the meane while sir Palomides walked privily for to rest him underneth the leaves; and there beside hee saw a knight come riding with a shield that hee had seene sir Ector de Maris beare afore hand, and there came after him about ten knights, and so these ten knights hoved under the leaves for heate. And anon after there came a knight with a greene shield and therein a white lyon, leading a lady upon a palfrey. Then this knight with the greene shield, the which seemed to be master of the ten knights, rode fiersly after sir Helior, for it was he that had hurt sir Epinogris, and when he came nigh sir Helior hee bad him defend his lady. "I will defend her," said sir Helior, "unto my power." And so they ranne together, so that either of these two knights smote other downe horse and all unto the ground, and then they gat up lightly and drew out their swords, and they lashed together mightily more then

an houre. All this sir Palomides saw and beheld, but ever the knight with sir Ectors shield was bigger, and at the last this knight smote sir Helior downe, and then that knight unlaced his helme for to have stricken off his head; and then he cried mercy, and prayed him to save his life. Then sir Palomides dressed him upon his feete, for hee wist well that that said lady was sir Epinogris lady, and hee had promised him for to get her againe. Then sir Palomides went straight unto that lady, and tooke her by the hand, and asked her whether she knew one that hight sir Epinogris. "Alas!" said she, "that ever he knew me, or I him, for I have for his sake lost my lordship, and also his life that hee hath lost greeveth me most of all." "Not so, lady," said sir Palomides, "come on with me, for here is sir Epinogris in this hermitage." "Well is me," said the lady, "and he be on live." "Whether wilt thou with that lady?" said the knight with sir Ectors shield. "I will doe with her what mee list," said sir Palomides. "Wit thou wel," said that knight, "thou speakest over largely, as though thou seemest to have me at a vantage because thou sawest me doe battaile but late. Wenest thou, knight, to have that lady away from me so lightly? nay, thinke it never, and thou were as good a knight as sir Launcelot, or sir Tristram, or sir Palomides, but thou shalt winne her dearer then ever did I." And so they went to battaile on foote, and there they gave many sad strooks, and each wounded other passing sore, and thus they fought still more then an houre. Then sir Palomides had marvaile what knight he might be that was so strong and so wel breathed, and thus said sir Palomides, "Knight, I require thee tell me thy name." "Wit thou wel," said that knight, "I dare tel thee my name, so that thou wilt tell me thy name." "I will," said sir Palomides. "Truly," said that knight, "my name is sir Safire, sonne unto king Astlabor, and sir Palomides and sir Segwarides are my bretheren." "Now wit you well my name is sir Palomides." Then sir Safire kneeled downe upon both his knees, and prayed him

of mercie; and then they unlaced their helmes, and either kissed other weeping. And in the meane while sir Epinogris arose out of his bed, for hee heard them by the strookes; and so he armed him for to helpe sir Palomides if neede were.

CHAP. CLXIX.—How sir Palomides and sir Safire conducted sir Epinogris to his castle, and of other adventures.

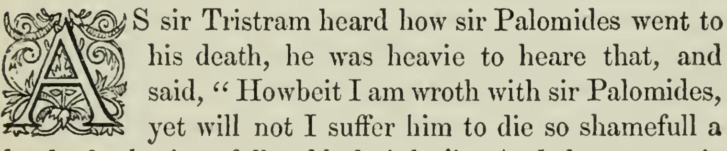
AND then sir Palomides tooke the lady by the hand and brought her unto sir Epinogris, and there was great joy betweene them, for either sowned for joy when they were met. "Faire knight and lady," said sir Safire, "it were pittie to depart you; Jesu send you joy either of other." "Gramercy, gentle knight," said sir Epinogris, "and much more thanke be unto my lord sir Palomides, the which thus hath through his prowesse made mee to get my lady." Then sir Epinogris required sir Palomides and his brother sir Safire for to ride with them unto his castle for the safegard of his person. "Sir," said sir Palomides, "we will be ready for to conduct you, for because that yee are so sore wounded." And so was sir Epinogris horsed, and his lady behind him, upon a soft ambling horse. And then they rode straight unto his castle, where they had good cheere, and were in joy as great as ever sir Palomides and sir Safire ever had in their life dayes. So on the morrow sir Palomides and sir Safire departed, and rode as fortune would lead them, and so they rode all that day untill after noone; and at the last they heard a great weeping and a great noise down in a manor. "Sir," said sir Safire, "let us wit what noyse this may be." "I wil wel," said sir Palomides. And so they rode forth till they came to a faire gate of a manor, and ther sat an old man saying his prayers on beades. Then sir Palomides and sir Safire alighted downe, and left their horses and went within the gates, and there they saw full goodly men weeping.

"Faire fellowes," said sir Palomides, "wherfore weepe ye and make this sorrow?" And one of the knights of the castle beheld sir Palomides and knew him, and then he went to his fellowes and said, "Faire fellowes, wit ye well all, we have in this castle the same knight that slew our lord at Lonazep, for I know him well, it is sir Palomides." Then they went to harneis all that might beare harneis, some on horsebacke and some on foote, to the number of threescore. And when they were ready, they came freshly upon sir Palomides and upon sir Safire, with a great noyse, and said thus, "Keepe thee, sir Palomides, for thou art knowne, and by right thou must be dead, for thou hast slaine our lord, and therefore wit thou well we will slay thee, therefore defend thee." Then sir Palomides and sir Safire, the one set his backe unto other, and gave many great strookes, and also took many great strookes; and thus they fought with twentie knights and fortie gentlemen and yeomen nigh two houres, but at the last, though they were loth, sir Palomides and sir Safire were taken and yeelded and put in a strong prison. And within three dayes twelve knights passed upon them, and they found sir Palomides guilty and sir Safire not guilty of their lords death. And when sir Safire should bee delivered, there was great dole betweene sir Palomides and him, and many pitteous complaints sir Safire made at his departing, that there is no maker[1] can rehearse the tenth part. "Faire brother," said sir Palomides, "let bee thy dolour and thy sorrow, and if I bee ordained for to die a shamefull death, welcome be it, but and I had wist of this death that I am deemed unto, I should never have yeelded me." So sir Safire departed from his brother with the greatest dolour and sorrow that ever made knight. And on the morrow they of the castle ordained twelve knights to ride with sir Palomides unto the father of the same knight that sir Palomides slew, and so they bound his leggs under an old steeds belly. And then they rode

[1] *Maker.*—A poet.

with sir Palomides unto a castle by the sea side, which castle hight Pelownes, and there sir Palomides should have justice done on him ; thus was their ordenance. And so they rode with sir Palomides fast by the castle of Joyous-gard, and as they passed by that castle there came rideing out of that castle by them one that knew sir Palomides. And when that knight saw sir Palomides bound upon a crooked courser, the knight asked sir Palomides for what cause hee was so led. "Ah ! my faire fellow and knight," said sir Palomides, "I ride toward my death for sleying of a knight at the turnement of Lonazep, and if I had not departed from my lord sir Tristram, as I ought not to have done, now might I have beene sure to have had my life saved. But I pray you, sir knight, recommend mee unto my lord sir Tristram and unto my lady queene La beale Isoud, and say to them, if I ever trespassed unto them I aske them forgivenesse ; and also I beseech you recommend mee unto my lord king Arthur, and unto all the fellowship of the round table unto my power." Then that knight wept for pittie of sir Palomides, and therewith hee rode to Joyous-gard as fast as his horse might runne. And lightly that knight descended downe from his horse, and went unto sir Tristram, and there hee told him all as yee have heard before. And ever the knight wept as he had beene mad.

CHAP. CLXX.—**How sir Tristram made him ready for to rescew sir Palomides, but sir Launcelot rescewed him or he came.**



AS sir Tristram heard how sir Palomides went to his death, he was heavie to heare that, and said, "Howbeit I am wroth with sir Palomides, yet will not I suffer him to die so shamefull a death, for he is a full noble knight." And then anon sir Tristram was armed, and tooke his horse and two squires with him, and rode a great pace unto the castle Pelownes, where sir Palomides was judged to death. And these

twelve knights which led sir Palomides passed by a well where as sir Launcelot was, which was alighted there, and had tied his horse unto a tree, and tooke his helme to drinke of that water. And when hee saw these knights come, hee put on his helme, and suffered them to passe by him; and then hee was ware how sir Palomides was bound, and led shamefully to death. "Oh, Jesu!" said sir Launcelot, "what misadventure is befallen him that hee is thus led toward his death? For soth," said sir Launcelot, "it were shame to mee to suffer this noble knight to die, and I might helpe him, therefore I will helpe him whatsoever come of it, else I shall die for sir Palomides sake." And then sir Launcelot mounted upon his horse, and gat his speare in his hand, and rode after the twelve knights that led sir Palomides. "Faire knights," said sir Launcelot, "whether lead yee that knight? it beseemeth him full ill to ride bound." Then these twelve knights sodeinly turned their horses, and said to sir Launcelot, "Sir knight, we counsell thee not to medle with this knight, for hee hath deserved death, and unto the death hee is judged." "That mee repenteth," said sir Launcelot, "that I may not borrow him with fairenesse, for hee is over good a knight to die such a shamefull death; and therefore, faire knights," said sir Launcelot, "keepe your selves as well as ye can, for I will rescew that knight, or else die for him." And then they began for to dresse their speares, and sir Launcelot smote the formost downe horse and man; and so hee served three moe with one speare, and then that speare breake. And therewithall sir Launcelot drew out his sword, and then hee smote on the right hand and on the left hand, and within a while he left none of those knights but that they were laid unto the earth, and the most part of them were sore wounded. And then sir Launcelot tooke the best horse that he found, and loosed sir Palomides of his bands, and set him upon that horse, and so they returned againe unto Joyous-gard. Then was sir Palomides ware of sir

Tristram, how he came riding. And when sir Launcelot saw him, he knew him right well, but sir Tristram knew not him, because that sir Launcelot had upon his shoulder a golden shield. So sir Launcelot made him ready to just with sir Tristram, because that sir Tristram should not wend that he were sir Launcelot. Then sir Palomides cried out aloud unto sir Tristram, "O my lord, I require you just not with this knight, for this good knight hath saved me from the death." When sir Tristram heard him say so, hee came a soft trotting pace toward them. And then sir Palomides said, "My lord sir Tristram, much am I beholden unto you, that of your great goodnesse that yee would proffer your noble body to rescew me undeserved, for I have greatly offended you. Notwithstanding," said sir Palomides, "here met we with this noble knight, that worshipfully and manly rescewed me from twelve knights, and smote them all downe and wounded them sore."

CHAP. CLXXI.—How sir Tristram and sir Launcelot, with sir Palomides, came to Joyous-garde, and of sir Palomides, and of sir Tristram.

FAIRE knight," said sir Tristram unto sir Launcelot du Lake, "of whence be ye?" "I am knight arraunt," said sir Launcelot, "that rideth to seeke adventures." "What is your name?" said sir Tristram. "Sir," said sir Launcelot, "as at this time I will not tell you." Then sir Launcelot said unto sir Tristram and unto sir Palomides, "Now either of you are met together, I will depart from you." "Not so," said sir Tristram; "I pray you of your knighthood to ride with me unto my castle." "Wit ye well," said sir Launcelot, "I may not ride with you, for I have many deeds to doe in other places, that at this time I may not abide with you." "A! mercy, Jesu!" said sir Tristram, "I require you, as yee bee a true knight unto the order of knight-

hood, that ye will sport you with mee this night." Then sir Tristram had a graunt of sir Launcelot, how be it, though hee had not desired him, he would have ridden with them, or else soone he would have come after them; for sir Launcelot came for none other cause into that countrey but for to see sir Tristram. And when they were come within Joyous-gard, they alighted, and their horses were led into a stable, and then they unarmed them. And when sir Launcelot had put off his helme, sir Tristram and sir Palomides knew him. Then sir Tristram tooke sir Launcelot in his armes, and in likewise did La beale Isoud; and sir Palomides kneeled downe upon his knees and thanked sir Launcelot. When sir Lancelot saw sir Palomides kneele, he lightly tooke him up, and said, "Wit thou well, sir Palomides, I and any knight in this land of worship ought of very right to succour and rescew so noble a knight as yee are proved and renowned throughout all this realme, endlong and overthwart."[1] And then was there great joy among them. And the oftner that sir Palomides saw La beale Isoud, the hevier hee waxed day by day. Then sir Launcelot within three or foure dayes departed, and with him rode sir Ector de Maris. And sir Dinadan and sir Palomides were left there with sir Tristram a two monethes and more. But ever sir Palomides faded and mourned, that all men had great marvaile wherefore he faded so away. So upon a day in the dawning sir Palomides went to the forrest by himselfe alone, and there he found a well, and then he looked into the well, and in the water he saw his visage, how hee was disturbed and faded, and nothing like as he was wont to bee.

"What may this meane?" said sir Palomides; and thus he said to himselfe: "A! Palomides, Palomides! why art thou diffaded,[2] thou that was wont to be called one of the fairest knights of the world? now I will no more leade this

[1] *Endlong and overthwart.*—i. e. in length and breadth, far and wide.

[2] *Diffaded.*—Dwindled, or faded away. The edition of 1634 has substituted *defamed,* which destroys the sense.

life, for I love that the which I may never get nor recover." And therewith hee laide him downe by the well, and then he began to make a rime of La beale Isoud and him. And in the meane while sir Tristram was that same day ridden into the forrest to chace the hart of greese;[1] but sir Tristram would never more ride on hunting unharmed, because of sir Breuse saunce Pitie.[2] And so as sir Tristram rode into that forrest up and downe, hee heard one sing mervailously loud, and that was sir Palomides that lay by the well. And then sir Tristram rode softly thither, for he deemed that there was some knight arraunt that was at the well. And when sir Tristram came nigh him, hee descended downe from his horse, and tied his horse fast unto a tree, and then hee came neere him on foote, and anon hee was ware where as lay sir Palomides by a well, and sung loud and merrily, and ever the complaints were of the queene La beale Isoud, the which were marvailously well made, and ful and dolefully and pitiously sad; and all the whole song the noble knight sir Tristram hard from the beginning unto the ending, the which grieved him right sore. But then at the last, when sir Tristram had heard all sir Palomides complaints, he was wroth out of measure, and had thought to have slaine him there as hee lay. But sir Tristram remembred himselfe that sir Palomides was unarmed, and of the noble name that sir Palomides had, and the name that he had himselfe, and then he made a restraint of his anger; and so he went unto sir Palomides a soft pace and said: "Sir Palomides, I have hard al thy complaints and al thy treason that thou hast owed mee so long, and wit thou well therefore thou shalt die; and, if it were not for shame of knighthood, thou

[1] *The hart of greese.*—This appears to have been the technical term among hunters for a fat hart.

[2] *Sir Breuse saunce Pitie.*—This bad knight, who acts a conspicuous part in our romance, was the paramour of Morgan-le-Fay, and is said to have vowed hostility to all good knights and to all ladies, in revenge for the general dislike towards that princess. According to another account, his cruelty towards women was the result of his indignation at the treachery of a damsel towards sir Morhault of Ireland.

shooldest not escape my hands, for now I know well thou hast awaited me with treason. Tell mee," said sir Tristram, "how thou wilt aquite thee." "Sir," said sir Palomides, "thus I will aquite me: as for queene La beale Isoud, ye shall wit that I love her above all other ladies of the world; and well I wot it shall befal me for her love, as it befell to the noble knight sir Kay Hedious,[1] that died for the love of La beale Isoud. And now, sir Tristram, I wil that ye wit that I have loved the queene La beale Isoud many a day, and she hath beene the causer of all my worship, or else I had beene the most simplest knight in the world, for by her and because of her I have won the worship that I have; for when I remembred me of La beale Isoud, I wanne the worship where soever I came, for the most part. And yet I had never reward nor bounty of her dayes of my life, and yet have I been her knight guardonlesse,[2] and therefore, sir Tristram, for any death I dread not, for I had as rather die as live; and if I were armed as thou art, I should lightly doe battaile with thee." "Well have ye uttered your treason," said sir Tristram. "I have done you no treason," said sir Palomides, "for love is free for all men, and though I have loved your lady, shee is my lady as well as yours; how be it I have wrong, if any wrong be, for ye rejoyce her, and have your desire of her, and so had I never, nor never am like to have, and yet shall I love her to the uttermost daies of my life as well as yee."

CHAP. CLXXII.—How there was a day set betweene sir Tristram and sir Palomides for to fight, and how sir Tristram was hurt.


HEN," said sir Tristram, "I will fight with you unto the uttermost." "I graunt," said sir Palomides, "for in a better quarell keepe I never to fight, for and I die of your hands, of a better

[1] *Sir Kay Hedious.*—See a former part of the present volume, p. 110.

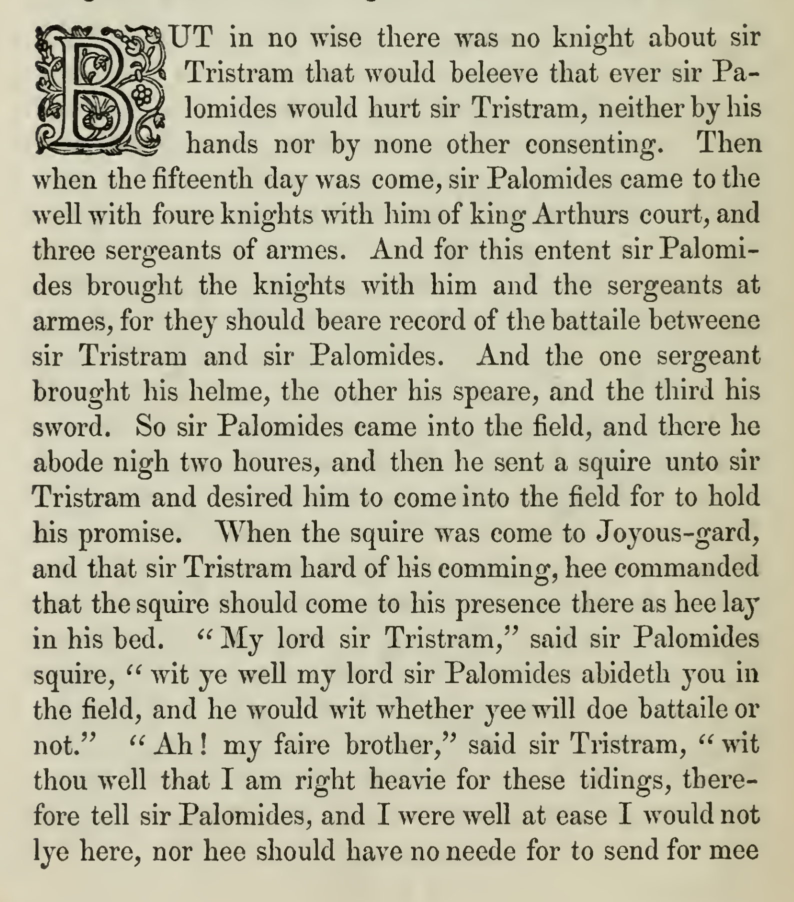
[2] *Guardonlesse.*—Without guerdon, or reward.

knights hands may I not be slaine. And sithen I understand that I shall never rejoyce the queene La beale Isoud, I have as good a will to die as to live." "Then set yee a day of battaile," said sir Tristram. "This day fifteene dayes," said sir Palomides, "will I meete with you hereby in the medow under Joyous-gard." "Fie for shame!" said sir Tristram, "will yee set so long a day? let us fight to morrow." "Not so," said sir Palomides, "for I am feeble and leane, and have beene long sick for the love of La beale Isoud, and therefore I will rest mee till that I have my strength againe." So then sir Tristram and sir Palomides promised faithfully to meete at the well as that day fifteene dayes. "I wel remember," said sir Tristram to sir Palomides, "that yee brake me a promise when that I rescewed you from sir Bruse saunce Pitie and the nine knights, and then yee promised me to meete at the peron and the grave beside Camelot, where at that time yee failed of your promise." "Wit ye well," said sir Palomides unto sir Tristram, "I was as that day in prison, so that I might not hold my promise." "So God mee helpe," said sir Tristram, "and ye had kept your promise, this work had not beene here at this time." Right so departed sir Tristram and sir Palomides; and so sir Palomides tooke his horse and his harneis, and rode unto king Arthurs court, and there sir Palomides gat him foure knights and three sergeants of armes; and so hee returned againe toward Joyous-gard. And in the meane while sir Tristram chaced and hunted at all manner of venery[1]; and about a three dayes afore that the battaile should be, as sir Tristram chaced an hart, ther was an archer shot at the hart, and by misfortune he smote sir Tristram in the thickest of the thigh and wounded him right sore, and the arrow slew sir Tristrams horse; and when sir Tristram was so sore hurt, hee was passing heavie, and wit yee well hee bled sore. And then hee tooke another horse, and rode unto Joyous-gard with full great heavinesse, more

[1] *Venery.*—Game.

for the promise that hee had made with sir Palomides, as to doe battaile with him within three dayes after, then for any hurt that hee had in his thigh. Wherefore there was neither man nor woman that might cheere him with any thing that they could make unto him, neither queene La beale Isoud; for ever sir Tristram deemed that Palomides had smitten him so because hee should not be able to doe battaile with him at the day set.

CHAP. CLXXIII.—**How that sir Palomides kept his day for to have foughten, but sir Tristram might not come, and of other matters.**



BUT in no wise there was no knight about sir Tristram that would beleeve that ever sir Palomides would hurt sir Tristram, neither by his hands nor by none other consenting. Then when the fifteenth day was come, sir Palomides came to the well with foure knights with him of king Arthurs court, and three sergeants of armes. And for this entent sir Palomides brought the knights with him and the sergeants at armes, for they should beare record of the battaile betweene sir Tristram and sir Palomides. And the one sergeant brought his helme, the other his speare, and the third his sword. So sir Palomides came into the field, and there he abode nigh two houres, and then he sent a squire unto sir Tristram and desired him to come into the field for to hold his promise. When the squire was come to Joyous-gard, and that sir Tristram hard of his comming, hee commanded that the squire should come to his presence there as hee lay in his bed. "My lord sir Tristram," said sir Palomides squire, "wit ye well my lord sir Palomides abideth you in the field, and he would wit whether yee will doe battaile or not." "Ah! my faire brother," said sir Tristram, "wit thou well that I am right heavie for these tidings, therefore tell sir Palomides, and I were well at ease I would not lye here, nor hee should have no neede for to send for mee

and I might either ride or goe; and because thou shalt say that I am no lyer;" (sir Tristram shewed him his thigh that the wound was sixe enches deepe;) "and now thou hast seene my hurt, tell thy lord that this is no fained matter, and tell him that I had rather then all the gold of king Arthur, that I were whole and sound. And tell sir Palomides that as soone as I am whole I shall seeke him endlong and overthwart, and that I promise you as I am true knight; and if ever I may meete with him he shall have battaile of me his fill." And when sir Palomides wist that sir Tristram was hurt, hee was glad, and said: "Now am I sure I shall have no shame, for I wot well I would have had no handling of him, and by likelyhood I must needes have had the worse; for hee is the hardiest knight in battaile that is now living except sir Lancelot." And then departed sir Palomides wher as fortune would lead him. And within a moneth sir Tristram was whole of his hurt, and then he tooke his armour, and rode from countrey to countrey, and all the strange adventures he achieved wheresoever he rode. And alwaies hee enquired after sir Palomides, but of all that quarter of sommer sir Tristram could never meete with sir Palomides; but thus as sir Tristram sought and enquired after sir Palomides, sir Tristram achieved many great battailes, wherethrough all the noyse fell to sir Tristram, and it seased of sir Launcelot. And therefore sir Launcelots bretheren and his kinsmen would have slaine sir Tristram, because of his great fame. But when sir Launcelot wist how his kinsmen were set, he said to them openly: "Wit ye well that, and the envie of you all be so hardy to waite upon my lord sir Tristram with any hurt, shame, or vilany, as I am true knight, I shall slay the best of you with mine owne hands. Fie for shame! would ye for his noble deeds awaite upon him to slay him? Jesu defend," said sir Launcelot, "that ever any noble knight as sir Tristram is should be destroyed with treason." Of this the noyse and fame sprang into Cornewaile, and

among them of Liones, whereof they were passing glad and made great joy. And then they of Lyones sent letters unto sir Tristram of recommendation, and many great gifts to maintaine sir Tristrams estate. And ever now and then sir Tristram resorted unto Joyous-gard, where as La beale Isoud was, that loved him as her selfe.

END OF VOL. II.

CHISWICK PRESS:—PRINTED BY C. WHITTINGHAM,
TOOKS COURT, CHANCERY LANE.


d'Arthure. v. 2
27803